



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

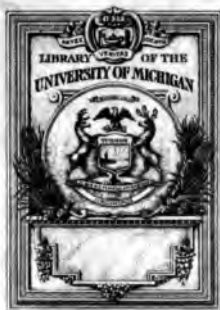
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

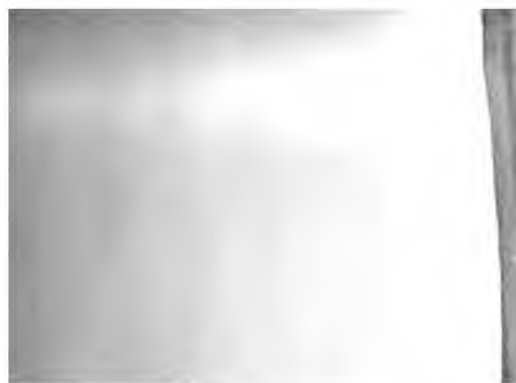
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A 765,484











This image shows a blank white page. There are several small, dark specks scattered across the surface, which appear to be scanning artifacts or dust particles. No text, figures, or tables are present.

11

12

13



RENOWNED HISTORY
of the
SEVEN CHAMPIONS
OF
CHRISTENDOM.



London



**THE
RENOWNED HISTORY
OF THE
VEN CHAMPIONS
OF
CHRISTENDOM,**

OF ENGLAND,	ST. ANDREW OF SCOTLAND,
OF FRANCE,	ST. PATRICK OF IRELAND,
OF SPAIN,	AND
OF ITALY,	ST. DAVID OF WALES:

AND THEIR SONS.



LONDON:

Baynes and Son; A. B. Dulau and Co.; J. H. B. ;
Westley and Parrish; Whitmore and Feun;
C. Smith; Smith and Elder; B. Hey; J. Bain;
Quick; W. Crawford; R. Beckley; T. Lester;
ffiman; Wilson and Sons; H. Mozley; M. Keene;
and J. Anderson, jun.

1824.



J. F. Dove, Printer, St. John's Square.

CONTENTS.

i, &c. Page xi

THE FIRST PART.

CHAP. I.

and wonderful birth of St. George of England.
er of his being cut out of his Mother's womb,
ard stolen from his nurse, by Kalyb, the Lady
ods. Her love to him, and her gifts. He en-
in a rock of stone, and redeems six Christian
at of prison 13

CHAP. II.

mentation in the rock; her last will and testa-
is torn to pieces by Spirits; with other passages
e 20

CHAP. III.

slays the burning Dragon in Egypt, and redeems
e King's Daughter, from death. Is betrayed by
the black King of Morocco, and sent to the Sof-
ersia; where he slew two lions, and remained
rs in prison 22

CHAP. IV.

he Champion of France, lives seven years in the
a Hart: and proud Eglantine, the King of Thea-
ighter, is transformed into a Mulberry-Tree; but
eir former shapes by means of St. Denis's Horse 36

CHAP. V.

mes, the Champion of Spain, continued seven
ab for the love of the fair Jew, and how he
ve been shot to death by the Maidens of Jerusa-
ther things which happened in his travels . . . 43

CHAP. VI.

ttle between St. Anthony, the Champion of
e Giant Blanderon; and afterward of his

CONTENTS.

trange entertainment in the Giant's Castle, by a Thracian Lady, and what happened to him in the same Castle, Page 53

CHAP. VII.

How St. Andrew, the Champion of Scotland, travelled into a vale of walking Spirits; and how he was set at liberty by a going fire: after his journey into Thracia, where he recovered the six Ladies to their natural shapes that had lived seven years in the likeness of Milk-white Swans; with other accidents that befel the most noble Champion 63

CHAP. VIII.

How St. Patrick, the Champion of Ireland, redeemed the six Thracian Ladies out of the hands of thirty bloody-minded Satyrs, and of their purposed travel in a pursuit after the Champion of Scotland 70

CHAP. IX.

How St. David, the Champion of Wales, slew the Count Palatine in the Tartarian Court; and after how he was sent to the enchanted Garden of Ormandine, wherein by magic art he slept seven years 73

CHAP. X.

How St. George escaped out of prison at Persia, and how he redeemed the Champion of Wales from his enchantment, with the tragical tale of the Necromancer Ormandine 76

CHAP. XI.

How St. George arrived at Tripoly in Barbary, where he stole away Sabra, the King's Daughter of Egypt, from the Blackmoor King; and how she was known to be a pure Virgin by the means of a Lion; and what happened to him in the same adventure 79

CHAP. XII.

How the Seven Champions arrived in Grecia at the Emperors nuptials, where they performed many noble achievements; and how, after, open wars were proclaimed against Christendom by the discovery of many Knights and how every Champion departed into his own Country 82

CHAP. XIII.

How the Seven Champions of Christendom, arrived with their troops in the Bay of Portugal. The number of their Christian armies. And how St. George made an army of the Soldiers 85

CHAP. XIV.

Of the dissension and discord that happened in the army of the Pagans in Hungary. The Battle of 88

CONTENTS.

the Moors in Barbary; and how Almidor,
of Morocco, was scalded to death in a
molting lead and brimstone Page 109

CHAP. XV.

Christians arrived in Egypt, and what happened to
the. The tragedy of the lustful Earl of Coventry.
Sabra was bound to a stake to be burnt: and how St.
George redeemed her. Lastly, how the Egyptian King
threw himself from the top of a tower and broke his neck 117

CHAP. XVI.

How St. George, in his journey towards Persia, arrived in
a Country inhabited only by Maids, where he achieved
many strange and wonderful adventures; also of the ra-
vishment of seven Virgins in a wood; and how Sabra
preserved her honour from a terrible Giant 139

CHAP. XVII.

St. George and his Lady lost themselves in a wilder-
ness, where she was delivered of three goodly Boys. The
Fairy Queen's prophecy upon the Children's fortune. Of
St. George's return into Bohemia, where he christened
his Children; and of finding his Father's grave, over
which he built a stately tomb

CHAP. XVIII.

How St. George with his Lady arrived in Egypt; of their
royal entertainment in the city of Grand Cairo; and also
how Sabra was crowned Queen of Egypt

CHAP. XIX.

The bloody Battle betwixt the Christians and Persians; and
how the Necromancer, Osmond, raised up, by his mag-
ic art, an army of Spirits to fight against the Christians; how
the six Champions were enchanted, and recovered by
St. George; the misery and death of the Conjuror; and how
the Soldan brained himself against a marble pillar

THE SECOND PART.

CHAP. I.

How St. George's three Sons were entertained in the
city of London; and after how their Mother was
swept away with the prick of a thorny brake. Her
death gave her Sons. St. George's lamentation
on his bleeding body. And likewise of the journey
the Champions intended to Jerusalem, to visit the
Holy Sepulchre

78

ere he
rom the
a pure
d to him
89

he Empe-
e achieve-
roclaimed
Knights;
Country 98

ved with all
mber of the
an oration 104

ngst the
reen the

strange entertainment in the Giant's Castle, by a Thracian Lady, and what happened to him in the same Castle, *Page*

CHAP. VII.

How St. Andrew, the Champion of Scotland, travelled into a vale of walking Spirits; and how he was set at liberty by a going fire: after his journey into Thracia, where he recovered the six Ladies to their natural shapes that had lived seven years in the likeness of Milk-white Swans; with other accidents that befel the most noble Champion

CHAP. VIII.

How St. Patrick, the Champion of Ireland, redeemed the six Thracian Ladies out of the hands of thirty bloody-minded Satyrs, and of their purposed travel in a pursuit after the Champion of Scotland

CHAP. IX.

How St. David, the Champion of Wales, slew the Count Palatine in the Tartarian Court; and after how he was sent to the enchanted Garden of Ormandine, wherein by magic art he slept seven years

CHAP. X.

How St. George escaped out of prison at Persia, and how he redeemed the Champion of Wales from his enchantment, with the tragical tale of the Necromancer Ormandine

CHAP. XI.

How St. George arrived at Tripoly in Barbary, where he stole away Sabra, the King's Daughter of Egypt, from the Blackmoor King; and how she was known to be a pure Virgin by the means of a Lion; and what happened to him in the same adventure

CHAP. XII.

How the Seven Champions arrived in Grecia at the Emperor's nuptials, where they performed many noble achievements; and how, after, open wars were proclaimed against Christendom by the discovery of many Knights; and how every Champion departed into his own Country

CHAP. XIII.

How the Seven Champions of Christendom, arrived with all their troops in the Bay of Portugal. The number of the Christian armies. And how St. George made an oration to the Soldiers

CHAP. XIV.

Of the dissension and discord that happened amongst the army of the Pagans in Hungary. The Battle between the

CONTENTS.

Christians and the Moors in Barbary; and how Almidor, the black King of Morocco, was scalded to death in a cauldron of boiling lead and brimstone Page 109

CHAP. XV.

How the Christians arrived in Egypt, and what happened to them there. The tragedy of the lustful Earl of Coventry. How Sabra was bound to a stake to be burnt: and how St. George redeemed her. Lastly, how the Egyptian King cast himself from the top of a tower and broke his neck 117

CHAP. XVI.

How St. George, in his journey towards Persia, arrived in a Country inhabited only by Maids, where he achieved many strange and wonderful adventures; also of the ravishment of seven Virgins in a wood; and how Sabra preserved her honour from a terrible Giant 139

CHAP. XVII.

St. George and his Lady lost themselves in a wilderness, where she was delivered of three goodly Boys. The Fairy Queen's prophecy upon the Children's fortune. Of St. George's return into Bohemia, where he christened his Children: and of finding his Father's grave, over which he built a stately tomb 150

CHAP. XVIII.

How St. George with his Lady arrived in Egypt; of their royal entertainment in the city of Grand Cairo; and also how Sabra was crowned Queen of Egypt 159

CHAP. XIX.

The bloody Battle betwixt the Christians and Persians; and how the Necromancer, Osmond, raised up, by his magic art, an army of Spirits to fight against the Christians; how the six Champions were enchanted, and recovered by St. George; the misery and death of the Conjuror; and how the Soldan brained himself against a marble pillar . . . 162

THE SECOND PART.

CHAP. I.

How St. George's three Sons were entertained in the famous city of London; and after how their Mother was slain in a wood with the pricks of a thorny brake. Her blessings she gave her Sons. St. George's lamentation over her bleeding body. And likewise of the journey the Seven Champions intended to Jerusalem, to visit the Sepulchre of Christ 176

CONTENTS.

CHAP. II.

Of the strange gifts that St. George's Sons offered at their Mother's Tomb, and what happened thereupon. How her Ghost appeared to them, and counselled them to the pursuit of their Father. Also how the King of England installed them with the Honour of Knighthood, and furnished them with habiliments of war Page 182

CHAP. III.

How St. George's Sons, after they were knighted by the English King, travelled towards Barbary; and how they redeemed the Duke's Daughter of Normandy from ravishment, that was assailed in a wood by three tawny Moors 185

CHAP. IV.

Of the Adventures of the Golden Fountain in Damasco. How six of the Christian Champions were taken prisoners by a mighty Giant; and how, after, they were delivered by St. George. And also how he redeemed fourteen Jews out of prison. With divers other strange accidents that happened 189

CHAP. V.

Of the Champions' return to Jerusalem, and after how they were almost famished in a wood; and how St. George obtained them food by his valour in a Giant's house . . 199

CHAP. VI.

What happened to the Champions after they had found an image of fine crystal in the form of a murdered Maiden; where St. George had a golden Book given him, wherein was written the true Tragedies of two Sisters. And likewise how the Champions intended a speedy revenge upon the Knight of the Black Castle for the Deaths of the two Ladies 204

CHAP. VII.

A wonderful and strange Adventure that happened to St. George's Sons, in the pursuit of their Father, by finding certain drops of blood, with Virgin's hair scattered in the field; and how they were certified of the injurious dealings of the Knight of the Black Castle against the Queen of Armenia 212

CHAP. VIII.

Of the preparations that the Knight of the Black Castle made by magic art to withstand his enemies; and how the Seven Champions entered the same Castle, where they were enchanted into a deep sleep so long as seven lamps burned; which could not be quenched but by the water of an enchanted Fountain 221

CONTENTS.

ix

CHAP. IV.

The great Battle betwixt the three English Knights and the Sicilians on the one side, and the three Giants and Count Brandamil on the other side; the finishing the Adventure of the enchanted Castle; with the Story of the wicked Sir Vuylon Page 330

182

CHAP. V.

How Sir Guy conducted the Army of Sicilians into their own Country, and Sir Alexander that of the Thessalians; how, hearing of the great preparation of the Infidels, they returned into Christendom, to raise forces to withstand them 340

185

CHAP. VI.

How the Christian army assembled together in Naples: the oration of Sir Guy unto the Soldiers; and how they marched against the Pagan army 344

CHAP. VII.

How the Seven Champions, being raised from their graves, resolved to follow the Christian army; how by tempest they were cast upon the coast of Thessaly. The great Battle fought betwixt the Thessalians and Thracians. How afterward they went to the Christian army, and of the great Battle fought betwixt the Christians and Pagans . . 348

99

99

CHAP. VIII.

How Sir Turpin of France, Sir Pedro of Spain, Sir Phelim of Ireland, and Sir Owen of the Mountains, arrived in Cyprus; how they put down the Tyrant Isakius, and restored the rightful Prince Amadeus to the throne . . . 359

CHAP. IX.

The famous Adventures of the two renowned Captains, Sir Orlando of Italy, and Sir Ewin of Scotland; how they redeemed the Duke of Candy's Daughter from her enchantment, with other things that happened 368

14

CHAP. X.

How the Seven Champions came to a land where the Men for their sins were changed into the shape of Beasts; and how, by finishing the Adventure of the Golden Cave, they returned to their shapes again 375

2

CHAP. XI.

How St. George's three Sons were separated by a tempest; and how Sir Alexander lighted on the ship wherein the Seven Champions were. How he was married to the Princess Mariana, and crowned King of Thessaly. The tract of Ursini, and Death of the Seven 382

9

382

CHAP. XII.

What happened to St. George's eldest Son, Sir Guy, after he was parted from his two Brothers. The woful Story of Selindus; how he was deprived of his Barony by Euphemius, and restored again by the valour of Sir Guy and Captain Bolus Page 39

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Guy arrived in Sicily, where he overcame the rebels, which, after the King of Sicily's death, had rebelled against the Queen Urania; how he was married to her, and afterward crowned King of Sicily 40

CHAP. XIV.

How Sir David and his company were almost famished with hunger; how he came to the Isle Fortuna, where Sir David slew a Dragon, and delivered the Island Ancona from enchantment 40

CHAP. XV.

Sir David is married to Queen Rosetta, and overcomes the remains of the Pagan army. Sir Pandrasus, with his Men, lands in Ancona 41

CHAP. XVI.

The taking of the Horse-faced Tartar, as also of the Necromancer Orpine. The relation of Sir Pandrasus, concerning his strange Adventures after his departure from the Seven Champions of Christendom 42

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Pandrasus, in his return homewards, came to an Island where Sir Phelim and Sir Owen had killed a great Giant, and taken his Castle, and what torments the Giant inflicted on his prisoners 43

CHAP. XVIII.

How Sir Phelim and Sir Owen, with Sir Pandrasus, fought with the Giant Curio, who came to be revenged for the death of his Brother Briomart 43

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir David sailed to the precious Fountain, and rescued Sir Wonder. How he put to death the Tyrant Almantor, and settled aged Pandion in his estate 44

CHAP. XX.

How Sir Guy, Sir Alexander, Sir David, as also Sir Turpin of France, Sir Pedro of Spain, Sir Orlando of Italy, Sir Ewin of Scotland, Sir Phelim of Ireland, and Sir Owen of Wales, met at great justs at Constantinople 44

CONTENTS.

vii

CHAP. IX.

How St. George's three Sons, after their departure from the Queen of Armenia's sepulchre, in company of her Daughter Rosana, met with a wild Man, with whom there happened a strange Adventure Page 233

CHAP. X.

How St. George's three Sons and Rosana entered the Black Castle; where they quenched the lamps, and awakened the Seven Champions of Christendom after they had slept seven days upon an enchanted bed 237

CHAP. XI.

How, after the Christian Knights were gone to bed in the Black Castle, St. George was awakened from his sleep in the dead time of the night, after a most fearful manner; and likewise how he found a Knight lying upon a tomb that stood over a flaming fire 244

CHAP. XII.

Of a tragical discourse pronounced by a Lady in a tomb, and how her enchantment was finished by St. George . . 246

CHAP. XIII.

How the Knight of the Black Castle, after conquest of the same by the Christian Champions, wandered up and down the world in great terror of conscience; and how after he was found in a wood by his own Daughter, in whose presence he desperately slew himself 254

CHAP. XIV.

How the Magician found Leoger's armour hanging upon a pine-tree, kept by Rosana, the Queen's Daughter of Armenia, betwixt whom happened a terrible Battle; also of the desperate Death of the Lady 260

CHAP. XV.

How the Seven Champions of Christendom restored the Babylonian King unto his kingdom; and after how honourably they were received at Rome, where St. George fell in love with the Emperor's Daughter 265

CHAP. XVI.

Of the triumphs, tilts, and tournaments, that were solemnly held in Constantinople by the Grecian Emperor; and of the honourable Adventures that were there achieved by the Christian Champions 273

CHAP. XVII.

How a Knight with two heads tormented a beautiful Maiden, that had betrothed herself to the Emperor's Son of Constantinople; and how she was rescued by St. George's

Sons ; and how they were brought by a strange Adventure
into the company of the Christian Champions . . . Page 280

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the praise-worthy Death of St. Patrick ; how he buried
himself ; and for what cause the Irishmen to this day do
wear the Red Cross upon St. Patrick's Day 291

CHAP. XIX.

Of the honourable Victory won by St. David in Wales ; of
his Death, and the cause why Leeks are by custom, of
Welshmen, worn on St. David's Day 293

CHAP. XX.

How St. Denis was beheaded in his own Country, and by a
miracle shewed at his Death, the whole Kingdom of France
received the Christian faith 296

CHAP. XXI.

Of the tyrannous Death that the Spanish Champion was put
unto 298

CHAP. XXII.

Of the honourable and worthy Death of the Italian Cham-
pion 300

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Martyrdom of St. Andrew, the Scottish Champion . . 301

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Adventure performed by St. George ; how he received
his Death by the sting of a venomous Dragon 303

THE THIRD PART.

CHAP. I.

The great joy of the Infidels for the Death of the Seven
Champions. The Soldan of Persia's letter for the muster-
ing up of an Army ; with the effects thereupon 306

CHAP. II.

How St. George's three Sons left England to seek Adven-
tures in foreign Countries ; how they arrived in Sicily,
and killed a terrible Monster, named Pongo ; how Urania,
the King of Sicily's Daughter, fell in love with Sir Guy ;
with other things which happened 311

CHAP. III.

How Sir Guy took his leave of the Princess Urania ; the
Battle betwixt the Sicilians and Thracians ; the message of
the Princess Mariana to the enchanted Castle, and how
Sir Alexander courted the Princess 323

" To all courteous Readers

" RICHARD JOHNSON

" Wisheth Encrease of Vertuous Knowledge.

" GENTLE Readers, in kindness accept of my labours, and is not like the chattering cranes, nor Momus' mates, that carp at every thing. What the simple say, I care not: what the rightfull speak, I passe not: only the censure of the conceited I send unto; that is the mark I aim at: whose good likings if I obtain, I have won my race; if not, I flint in the first attempt, and so leave the quiet of my happy goal.

" Yours in kindness to command,

" R. J."

" THE AUTHOR'S MUSE UPON THE HISTORY.

" The famous facts, O Mars, deriv'd from thee,
By weary pen, and painful Author's toyl,
Enrol'd we find such feats of chivalry,
As hath been seldom seen in any soyl.

" Thy ensignes here we find in field displaid,
The trophies of thy victories erected;
Such deeds of armes, as none could have assaid,
But knights whose courage feay hath ne'er dejected.

" Such ladies saved, such monsters made to fall,
Such gyants slain, such hellish furies quell'd:
That human forces, few or none at all,
In such exploits their lives could safely shield.

" But vertue stirring up their noble minds,
By valliant conquest to enlarge their fames,
Hath caused them such adventures forth to find,
Which registreth their never dying names:
Then Fortune, Time, and Fame agree in this,
That honour's gain the greatest glory is."

DEDICATION TO THE SECOND PART.

*" To the Right Honourable**" THE LORD WILLIAM HOWARD,**" RICHARD JOHNSON**" Wisheth Encrease of all Prosperity.*

" AS it hath, Right Honourable, of late pleased your Most Noble Brother in kindness to accept of this History, and to grace it with a favourable countenance; so I am now emboldened to dedicate the Second Part unto your Honour; which I here humbly offer to your Lordship's hands, not because I think it a gift worthy the receiver, but rather that it should be as it were a witness of the love and duty which I bear to your right noble house.

" And when it shall please you to bestow the reading of these discourses, my humble request is, that you would think I wish your Honour as many happy days as there be letters contained in this History.

" Thus praying for your Honour's chief happiness,

" I remain

" Your Honour's in all dutiful love,

" To his poor power,

" R. J."

" TO THE GENTLE READER.

" I Have finished the Second Part of the Seven Champions of Christendom, for thy delight; being thereto encouraged by the great acceptance of my First Part. I will not boast of eloquence nor invention, thereby to invite thy willingness to read: only thy courtesy must be my buckler against the carping malice of mocking jesters, that being worse able to do well, scoff commonly at that they cannot mend, censuring all things, doing nothing, but (monkey-like) make apish jests at any thing they see in print: and nothing pleaseth them, except it savour of a scoffing or invective spirit. Well, what these say of me, I do not care: thy delight only is my desire. Accept it, and I am satisfied; reject it, and this shall be my penance, never again to come in print. But having better hope, I boldly lead thee to the mayn, for this doubtful flood of suspicion, where I rest. Walk on in the History, as in an over-grown and ill-husbanded garden: if among all the weeds thou finds one pleasing flower, I have my wish.

" RICHARD JOHNSON."

THE
SEVEN CHAMPIONS
OF
CHRISTENDOM.

PART I.—CHAP. I.

AFTER the angry gods had ruined the capital city of Phrygia, and turned king Priam's glorious buildings to a waste and desolate wilderness, duke Æneas, driven from his native habitation, with many of his distressed countrymen, wandered about the world, like pilgrims, to find some happy region where they might erect the Palladium, or image of their subverted Troy : but before that labour could be accomplished, Æneas ended his days in the confines of Italy, and left hisson Ascanius to govern in his stead. Ascanius dying, left the sovereign power to Sylvius ; from whom it descended to the noble and adventurous Brute, who, being the fourth in lineal descent from Æneas, first conquered this island of Britain, then inhabited with monsters, giants, and a kind of wild people, without any form of government. He had no sooner subdued these, but he established good and wholesome laws, and then first laid the foundation of New Troy, which he named Troynovant, but, in process of time, it came to be called London.

Thus began the island of Britain to flourish, not only in magnificent and sumptuous buildings, but in courageous and valiant knights, whose most noble and adventurous attempts in the truly heroic feats of chivalry, Fame shall draw forth, and rescue from the dark and gloomy mansions of oblivion.

The land was now replenished with cities, and divided into shires or counties: dukedoms, earldoms, and lordships, were the rewards of merit, and noble services performed in martial fields, and not bestowed as bribes to enslave the state, or given to indulge the slothful pride and effeminacy of the panders to their *princes' lust*.

The ancient city of Coventry gave birth to the first Christian hero of England and the first who ever sought adven-

the nature yet, and the due course of time, had called from the safe recesses of his mother's womb, she med that she had conceived a dragon, which should bring her death. This frightful dream she long kept secret, the painful burden grew so heavy, that her womb was unable to endure it; so taking an opportunity to disclose it to her lord and husband, then lord high steward of the land, she spoke to him in this manner:

My honourable lord,

"You know I am by birth the daughter of a king, of the king's king, and that I have been, for one-and-twenty years, your true and loyal wife, and yet, till now, had never hoped of having child, whereby your name might survive when you shall be no more; therefore I conjure you, by the pleasure of your youth, and by the dear and natural love you bear the infant in my womb, that you will seek, by some artful means, to unfold the mysterious indications of my frightful dreams, which for thirty nights together have vexed my soft slumbers; when methought I had conceived a dreadful dragon, that would cause its parent's death. Iecuba, the beautiful queen of Troy, when Paris was

lent speed shall be essayed ; for never will I close my eyes till I have found some skilful person, who will undertake to unfold the mystic meaning of these terrific dreams."

This noble lord, leaving the delightful partner of his bed in company with other ladies, who came to comfort her in her melancholy condition, took his journey to the solitary walks of Kalyb, the wise lady of the woods, attended only by a single knight, who bore under his arm a white lamb, which they intended to offer as a sacrifice to the enchantress. Thus travelling, for the space of two days, they came to a thicket beset about with old withered and hollow trees, where they were entertained with such dismal croakings of the night raven, hissing of serpents, bellowing of bulls, and roaring of monsters, that it seemed to be rather the habitation of furies than a mortal dwelling ; but here was the dark and dreary mansion of the enchanting Kalyb, lady of the woods, in the midst of which she took up her abode, in a lonely cave, which had a strong iron gate at its entrance, whereon there hung a brazen trumpet for those to sound, who wanted audience of the sorceress.

The lord and knight, first offering their lamb with all humility before the postern of the cave, then casting off all fear, and the trumpet, the sound of which, with one blast, seemed to shake the very foundation of the earth. After which, the knight heard a loud and hollow voice utter the following words :

" Sir Knight, from whence thou cam'st return :
Thou hast a son most strangely born ;
A dragon, that shall split in twain
Thy lady's womb with racking pain ;

' Champion bold, from thence shall spring,
Who'll practice many a wondrous thing :
Return, therefore, make no delay,
For all is true that here I say."

The dark riddle, or rather mystic oracle, being thrice repeated in this order, so much amazed them, that they stood at a loss whether it were best to return, or sound the brazen trumpet a second time ; but the lord high steward, being persuaded by the knight not to move the impatience of Kalyb, contented with the answer she had given them, and

quitting the enchanted cave, made all the speed he could to his native habitation : but in the mean time his lady, being overcharged with the extreme pain and anguish of her labouring womb, was forced either to give up her own life, or destroy that of the infant ; but she, regarding more the benefit of her country, than her own safety, and for the preservation of her own offspring, most willingly committed her tender womb to be opened, that the infant might be taken out alive.

Thus after a learned consultation of many of the most eminent surgeons, to try if there was any possibility of saving her, which being found impracticable, this noble and magnanimous lady was cast into a deep sleep, at which time her womb being laid open by the proper instruments of incision, the infant was taken alive from the bed of its creation. Nature, on his breast, had pictured the lively image of a dragon ; upon his right hand a blood-red cross, and a gold garter on his left leg. He was named George, and three nurses were provided for him ; one to give him suck, another to lull and rock him asleep, and the third to prepare his food. Not many days after his nativity, the fell enchantress Kalyb, being an utter enemy to all true nobility, by the help of charms and witchcraft, found means to steal away the infant from its careless nurses.

The lord high steward of England, at this time returning, how were his expectations frustrated ! when, instead of the safe delivery of his lady, and the comfort of a son, he found the one in her cold grave, and the other carried he knew not whither. The news of these disasters for a while bereaved him of his wits, and he stood senseless, like weeping Niobe ; but at last he broke forth into these bitter exclamations :

“ O heavens ! why cover ye not the earth with everlasting night ? Why do these eyes accursed behold the sun ? O that the waves of Cœnopus would end my days ; or yon high mountains crush me with their fall ! Or, heavens ! let me rove a wretched exile and forlorn, in solitary woods to make my moan ; the senseless trees, the savage and untamed beasts, would grieve at miseries like mine. What *monster has bereaved me of my child ? What tyrant's gluttony with his blood ?* O that the winds would bring me *tidings of him, though from the most distant quarters of*

the world, thither would I fly to see him ; or were he hid beneath the ocean's deepest floods, thither would I dive to bring him forth ; or if, like feathered fowls, he winged the liquid air, thither would I mount to catch him in my arms, and embrace him that never yet mine eyes beheld. But why do I rave, and vainly thus exclaim, when neither earth, nor air, or seas, or any thing in earth, air, or seas, can bring me comfort ?

Thus complained he many months for the loss of his son, and sent messengers into every circuit of the land to make inquiry after him ; but no man was fortunate enough to return with happy tidings. He, therefore, storing himself with gold and many precious jewels of an inestimable value, resolved to travel the world over, to find what he wanted, or to leave his bones in some remote region. So leaving his native country, he wandered from place to place, without success, till, through care and age, his locks were turned to silver gray, and his venerable beard became like down upon a thistle : till at length, quite wearied out with grief, and fruitless toil, he laid himself down close by the ruined walls of a decayed monastery in the kingdom of Bohemia, and there finished his inquiry and his life together. The common people of the country coming to the knowledge of his name, by a jewel he wore in his bosom, caused it to be engraven on a marble stone, right over the place where he was buried. And there we will leave him to sleep in peace, and return to his son, still kept by Kalyb, the lady of the woods, in her enchanted cave.

And now twice seven times the sun had run his annual course, and passed through every sign of the zodiac, since Kalyb had first in keeping the noble St. George of England, whose mind many times thirsted after honourable adventures, and who many times attempted to set himself at liberty ; but the fell enchantress, tendering him as the apple of her eye, appointed twelve sturdy Satyrs to attend his person, so that neither force nor policy could further his intent. She kept him not to insult over as a slave, nor triumph in his wretchedness, but daily fed his fancy with all the delights that art or nature could afford ; for she placed her whole felicity in him, and lusted after his beauty. *But he, seeking glory from martial discipline and knightly achievements, utterly refused her proffered embraces, and*

highly disdained so wicked a creature. She, seeing how much he neglected her love, drawing him to a private part of the cave, began thus to court him to her arms:

"Thou knowest, divine youth, how eagerly I have sought thy love, and how I dote upon thy manly charms; yet thou, more cruel than the Lybian tiger, canst reject my sighs and tears. But now, my dear knight, if thou wilt make me happy in thy wished embrace, for thy sake I will shew all the power of my magic charms, move heaven, if thou requestest it, to rain down stones in showers upon thy enemies, I will convert the sun and moon to fire and blood, depopulate whole regions, and lay the face of nature waste."

Our noble knight St. George, considering that love might blind the wisest, and guessing, by these fair promises, that he might find an opportunity to obtain his liberty, made her this answer:

"Most wise and learned Kalyb, thou wonder of the world, I will condescend to all thy heart desires upon these conditions—That I may be sole governor and protector of this enchanted cave, and that thou discoverest to me my birth, my name, and parentage."

She very willingly consented to these terms; and began to answer his demands as follows; "Thou art by birth," said she, "son to the lord Albert, high steward of England; and from thy birth to this day have I kept thee, as my own child, within these solitary woods." So taking him by the hand, she led him into a brazen castle, wherein remained prisoners six of the bravest knights of the whole world. "These," said she, "are six worthy champions of Christendom; the first is St. Denis of France, the second St. James of Spain, the third St. Anthony of Italy, the fourth St. Andrew of Scotland; the fifth St. Patrick of Ireland, the sixth St. David of Wales; and thou art born to be the seventh, thy name St. George of England, for so shalt thou be named in times to come."

Then leading him a little farther, she brought him into a magnificent building, where stood seven of the beautifullest steeds that ever eye beheld. "Six of these," said she, "belong to the six champions, and the seventh, whose name is Bayard, will I bestow on thee." Then she led him to another apartment, where hung the richest armour in the world; there choosing out the strongest coralet from her ar-

moury, she with her own hands buckled it upon his breast, laced on his helmet, and dressed him in the armour: afterward bringing forth a mighty falchion, she likewise put it in his hand, and said to him; "Thou art now clothed in richer armour than Nimus the first monarch of the world. Thy steed is of such force and invincible power, that whilst thou art mounted on his back, no knight in the world shall be able to conquer thee. Thy armour is of the purest Lydian steel, that no battle-axe can bruise, nor any weapon can pierce. Thy sword, which is called Ascalon, was made by the Cyclops; it will hew in sunder the hardest flint, or cut the strongest steel; and in its pummel there lies such magic virtue, that neither treason, witchcraft, nor any other violence, can be offered to thee as long as thou wearest it."

Thus the lascivious Kalyb was so blinded by the love, or rather the lust, she had for him, that she not only bestowed all the riches of her cave upon him, but gave him power and authority, by putting a silver wand in his hand, to work her own destruction. For coming by a huge rock of stone, he struck it with this enchanted wand, whereupon it immediately opened, and laid in his view a vast number of young infants, whom the enchantress had murdered by her witchcraft and sorceries. "This," said she, "is a place of horror, where nought is heard but shrieks and groans of dying men and babes; but if your ears can endure to hear, and eyes behold them, I will lead you that way." So the lady of the woods, boldly stepping in before, and little suspecting any danger from the secret policy of St. George, was deceived in her own practices; for no sooner was she entered the rock, but he struck the silver wand thereon, and it closed in an instant; and there confined her to bellow forth her lamentable complaints to senseless stones, without any hope of being released.

Thus this noble knight deceived the wicked enchantress Kalyb, and likewise set the other six champions at liberty, who rendered him all knightly courtesies, and gave him thanks for their safe delivery. So providing themselves with all things suiting their generous purposes, they took their journey from the enchanted grove. Their proceedings, fortunes, and heroical adventures, shall be shewn in the following chapters.

CHAP. II.

AFTER the departure of the seven worthy champions, Kalyb, finding herself close imprisoned in the rock, by the policy of the English knight, grew into such extreme passion of the mind, that she cursed the hour of her creation, and bitterly inveighs against all the horrid powers of her barbarous and bloody art. The earth she wearied with her cries, and even the flinty stones seem to weep in pity of her anguish. The oaks were blasted round the enchanted rock, and hollow winds re-echo murmurs to her hideous groans. "O miserable Kalyb," cried she, "cursed be thy destiny, for now thou art enclosed within a desolate and darksome den! where neither sun can lend thee comfort with his enlivening beams, nor the cool breath of air refresh thy parched and burning body; thou art thyself, by magic art, empaled and rooted in the centre of earth, who wert thyself the wonder of the times for magic. I, that by art have made my journey to the lowest depths of hell, where multitudes of black and ugly spirits have trembled at my charms; I that have bound the Furies in my iron chains, and caused them to attend my pleasure through the wilds of Egypt, or where the tawny Moor inhabits, am now myself constrained to languish in eternal darkness. Woe to my soul! woe to my charms! and woe to all my magic spells! for they have bound me in this hollow rock. Let the sun grow pale, and the earth be covered with eternal darkness. Let the firmament be turned to pitch; roar hell! quake earth! swell seas! and all ye stars and planets burst from your spheres! Let all nature be convulsed and tortured with the misery of wretched Kalyb!"

Thus wearied she the hours, one while accusing fortune of tyranny, another blaming the falsehood and treachery of the English knight; sometimes tearing her curled locks, that, like wreathing snakes, hung dangling down her deformed neck; then, beating her breasts, and rending her garments, she thunders forth these terms of conjuration: "Come! come, ye princes of the elements, fire, air, earth, and water, come, tear this rock in pieces; this rock that holds confined in adamant chains the limbs and

body of exorcised Kalyb. Appear, ye shadows of black Night; Magol, Camoth, Helvosa, Zontoma, come when I call." At which words the earth began to quake, and all the elemental spirits were obedient to her voice; some from the fire, in the resemblance of burning dragons, breathing flaming sulphur from their nostrils; some from the water, in the shape of hideous and unwieldy fish; some from the air, the purest of the elements, like the shadows of human beings; and others from the gross earth, most ugly, black, and dreadful to behold. Now when these legions of spirits had encompassed the wicked enchantress about, hell began to bellow forth such harsh and jarring sounds, that the enchanted rock was burst asunder with the very noise thereof, and then lost Kalyb's charms were gone for ever. The hundred years her magic was to last, were now completely finished; and the bond subscribed with her own precious blood, and sealed with her own hands, was brought in witness against her, by which she knew her life was at an end. Therefore in this most fearful manner she began to make her last will and testament:

"First, welcome," said she, "my sad executors. Welcome, my grave and everlasting tomb, which are prepared in the fiery lakes of Phlegeton. The winding-sheet, wherein is to be wrapped my foul body and condemned soul, is melted lead and boiling brimstone. No worms shall consume this horrid carcass, but it shall be tossed about with fiery forks, from place to place, and from one furnace to another. Therefore attend to Kalyb's woful testament, and engrave the legacies she gives in rolls of brass upon the burning banks of Acheron.

"First, these eyes, that now begin too late to weep with hapless tears, I give unto the watery spirits, for they have ransacked all the treasures of the hidden deep to satisfy my insatiable desires; next I bequeath these hands, which did subscribe the bloody obligation of my perpetual banishment from joy, unto those spirits that hover in the air; my tongue, that did conspire against the majesty of heaven, I give to those spirits that have their being in the fire; my earthly heart I bequeath to those gross demons that dwell in the dark dungeons of the earth; and the rest of my condemned body to the torments due to my demerits."

This strange and dreadful testament was no sooner made

than all the spirits seized upon the enchantress, and tore her body into a thousand pieces, scattering her members among the four elements ; some to the spirits of the air, some to the water, others to the fire and earth ; and these carried them away with such terrible noises, that all nature seemed amazed, and all things within hearing of them died instantly away ; birds, beasts, and even the reptile worms that crawled upon the ground ; trees, which but just before were flourishing and green, were blasted all at once ; and the grass faded away for want of that natural moisture, that the clouds denied to shed on so vile a place.

Thus, by the judgment of Heaven, was Kalyb punished for her wickedness, whom we leave to endless torments, and return to the seven worthy champions of Christendom, whose laudable adventures fame has enrolled in the records of eternity.

CHAP. III.

AFTER the seven champions departed from the enchanted cave of Kalyb, they made their abode in the city of Coventry, for the space of nine months ; in which time they erected a sumptuous monument over the hearse of St. George's mother. And at that time of the year when Flora had embroidered the green mantle of the spring, they armed themselves like knights-errant, and took their journey to seek for foreign adventures, accounting nothing more dishonourable than to spend their time in idleness, and not achieve somewhat that might make their names memorable to posterity. So travelling thirty days without any adventures worth noting ; at length they came to a broad plain, where stood a brazen pillar, and where seven several ways met, which the worthy knights thought a proper place to take leave of each other, and every one went a contrary road ; in which we will, for this time, likewise take leave of six, that we may accompany the fortunes of our English knight, who, after many months' travel, by sea and land, happily arrived within the territories of Egypt, which country was then *greatly annoyed* by a dangerous dragon. But before *he had journeyed far in this kingdom*, the silent night outspread *his* ~~able~~ wings, and a still horror seemed to cover every part

of nature. At length, he came to a poor old hermitage ; wherein he purposed to seek some repose for himself and horse, till the rosy-fingered morning should again reluminate the vault of heaven, and light him on his destined course. But entering the cottage, he found an ancient hermit, bowing under the weight of age, and almost consumed with holy watching and religious tears, to whom he thus addressed himself :

" Father, may a traveller, for this night, crave shelter with you for himself and horse ; or can you direct me to any town or village to which I may proceed on my journey with safety ? "

The old man, starting at the sudden approach of St. George, made him answer :

That he need not inquire of his country, for he knew it by his burgonet (for indeed thereon were engraved the arms of England). " But I sorrow," continued he, " for thy hard fortune, and that it is thy destiny to arrive in this our country of Egypt, wherein those alive are scarce sufficient to bury the dead ; such cruel devastation is made through the land by a most terrible and dangerous dragon, now ranging up and down the country ; the raging appetite of which must every day be appeased with the body of a real virgin, whom he swalloweth down his envenomed throat : and the day on which this horrid sacrifice is omitted, he breathes such a pestiferous stench as occasions a mortal plague. And this having been practised for twenty-four years, there is not now one true virgin left throughout all Egypt but the king's daughter ; and she, to-morrow, is to be made an offering to the dragon, unless there can be any brave knight found who shall have courage enough to encounter with him, and kill him : and then, the king hath promised to give such knight his daughter, whose life he shall have saved, in marriage, with the crown of Egypt after his decease. "

This royal reward so animated the English knight, that he vowed he would either redeem the king's daughter, or lose his own life in so glorious an enterprise. So taking his repose that night in the old man's hermitage, till the cheerful cock, the true messenger of day, gave him notice of the sun's uprise, which caused him to buckle on his armour, and harness his steed with all the strong caparisons of war, he took his journey, guided only by the old hermit, to the valley,

where the king's daughter was to be offered up in sacrifice. When he approached within sight of the valley, he saw at a distance the most amiable and beautiful virgin that ever eyes beheld, arrayed in a pure white Arabian silk, leading to the place of death, accompanied by many sage and modest matrons. The courage of the brave English knight was so stimulated by this melancholy scene, that he thought every minute a whole day till he could rescue her from the threatened danger, and save her from the insatiable jaws of the fiery dragon; so advancing towards the lady, he gave her hopes that her deliverance was at hand, and begged her to return to her father's court.

The noble knight, like a bold and daring hero, then entered the valley where the dragon had his abode, who no sooner had sight of him, but his leathern throat sent forth a sound more terrible than thunder. The size of this fell dragon was fearful to behold, for, from his shoulders to his tail, the length was fifty feet, the glittering scales upon his body were as bright as silver, but harder than brass; his belly was of the colour of gold, and larger than a tun. Thus weltered he from his hideous den, and so fiercely assailed the gallant champion with his burning wings, that at the first encounter he had almost felled him to the ground; but the knight, nimbly recovering himself, gave the dragon such a thrust with his spear, that it shivered in a thousand pieces! upon which, the furious dragon smote him so violently with his venomous tail, that then, indeed, he brought both man and horse to the ground, and sorely bruised two of St. George's ribs in the fall; but he, stepping backwards, chanced to get under an orange-tree, which had that rare virtue in it that no venomous creature durst come within the compass of its branches; and here the valiant knight rested himself, till he had recovered his former strength. But he no sooner felt his spirits revived, than, with an eager courage, he smote the burning dragon under his yellow burnished belly, with his trusty sword Ascalon; and from the wound there came such an abundance of black venom, that it spouted on the armour of the knight, which, by the mere force of the poison, burst in two, and he himself fell on the ground, where he lay for some time quite lifeless, but had rolled himself under the orange-tree; in which place the dragon had not power to offer him any farther violence. The fruit of this tree was

of that excellence, that whoever tasted it was immediately cured of all manner of wounds and diseases.

Now, it was the noble champion's good fortune to recover himself a little by the pure effluvia of the tree, and then he chanced to espy an orange which had lately dropped from it, by tasting of which he was so refreshed, that in a short time he was as sound as when he began the encounter. Then kneeled he down and made his humble supplication, that Heaven would send him such strength and agility of body as might enable him to slay the fell monster; which being done, with a bold and courageous heart, he smote the dragon under the wing, where it was tender and without scale, whereby his good sword Ascalon, with an easy passage, went to the very hilt, through the dragon's liver and heart; from whence there issued such an abundance of reeking gore, as turned all the grass in the valley to a crimson hue; and the ground, which was before parched up by the burning breath of the dragon, was now drenched in the moisture that proceeded from his venomous bowels, the loss of which forced him to yield his vital spirit to the champion's conquering sword.

The noble knight St. George for England, having performed this, first paid due honour to the Almighty for his victory; and then with his sword cut off the dragon's head, and fixed it on a truncheon made of that spear which, at the beginning of the battle, shivered in pieces against the dragon's scaly back. During this long and dangerous combat, his trusty steed lay, as it were, in a swoon, without any motion; but the English champion now squeezing the juice of one of the oranges in his mouth, the virtue of it immediately expelled the venom of the poison, and recovered his former strength.

There was then in the Egyptian court, and had been for some time, Almidor, the black king of Morocco, who had long sought the love of Sabra, the king's daughter; but by no policy, means, or manhood, could he accomplish what his heart desired. And now having less hopes than ever, by the successful combat of St. George with the dragon, he resolved to try the utmost power of art, and treacherously despoil the victor of his laurels, which he falsely designed to crown his own temples with, and thereby obtain the grace of the lady, who loathed his company, and more detested his person than the crocodile of Nile. But, even as the wol

barks in vain against the moon, so shall this fantastical and cowardly Almidor attempt to seize in vain the glory won by the English knight; although he had hired, by gifts and promises, twelve Egyptian knights to beset the valley where St. George slew the burning dragon, who were to bereave him, by force, of the spoils of his conquest. Thus, when the magnanimous champion came riding in triumph, from the valley, expecting to have been received as a conqueror, with drums and trumpets, or to have heard the bells throughout the kingdom ringing with the joyful peals of victory, and every street illuminated with bonfires and blazing tapers; contrary to his expectation, he was met with troops of armed knights, not to conduct him in triumph to the Egyptian court, but, by insidious baseness and treachery, to bereave him of his life, and the glory he had that day so nobly acquired by his invincible arms: for, no sooner had he passed the entrance of the valley, but he saw the Egyptian knights brandishing their weapons, and dividing themselves, to intercept him in his journey to the court. So, tying his horse to a tree, he resolved to try his fortune on foot, there being twelve to one; yet did St. George, at the first onset, so valiantly behave himself with his trusty sword Ascalon, that, at one stroke, he slew three of the Egyptian knights, and before the golden chariot of the sun had gone another hour in its diurnal course, some he had dismembered of their heads and limbs, and some he had cut in two, so that their entrails fell to the earth, and not one was left alive to carry home the news of their defeat. Almidor, the black king, stood the whole time of the battle on the top of a mountain, to behold the success of his hired champions; but when he saw the dismal catastrophe of these mercenary knights, and how the good fortune of the English champion had carried the honour of the day, he cursed his destiny, and accused blind chance of cruelty in thus disappointing the hopes of his treacherous enterprise: but having a heart full fraught with malice and envy, he secretly vowed to himself that he would practise some other treachery to bring St. George to destruction. So running before to the court of king Ptolemy, and, without relating what had happened to the twelve Egyptian knights, he cried out, "*Victoria, Victoria, the enemy of Egypt is slain!*" Upon which Ptolemy ordered every street of the city of Memphis to be hung with



rich arras and embroidered tapestry, and likewise provided a sumptuous chariot of massive gold, the wheels and other timber work whereof were of the purest ebony, the covering silk embossed with gold; this, with a hundred of the noblest peers of Egypt, attired in crimson velvet, mounted on milk-white coursers, richly caparisoned, attended the arrival of St. George, who was conducted in the most solemn manner into the city, all the loftiest as well as sweetest instruments of music both going before and following after the resplendent chariot in which he was drawn to the court of king Ptolemy; where he surrendered up the trophies of his conquest into the hands of the beauteous Sabra, who was so ravished with the noble person and princely presence of the English knight, that, for a time, she was scarce able to speak; but having recovered herself, she took him by the hand, and led him to a rich pavilion, where she unarmed him, and with the most precious salves embalmed his wounds, and with fine linen cloths wiped off the blood; after which she conducted him to a rich repast, furnished with all manner of delicate meats, where the king her father was present, who inquired of his country, parentage, and name. After the banquet was over, he installed him with the honour of knighthood, and put upon his feet a pair of golden spurs. But the lovely princess, his daughter, could feast on nothing but the hopes of the champion's love; and, having attended him to his night's repose, she sat near his bed, and striking the melodious strings of her lute, lulled him to rest with the sweetest harmony that ever was heard. No sooner had the blushing morn displayed her beauties in the east, and gilded with her radiant beams the mountain tops, but Sabra repaired to the English champion's lodgings; and, at his first uprising, presented him with a diamond of inestimable value, which she prayed him to wear on his finger, not only as an ornament, but as it was endued with many most excellent and occult virtues. The next who entered the room was Almidor, the treacherous black king of Morocco, having a bowl of Greek wine in his hand, which he offered to the noble champion St. George of England; but when he stretched forth his arm to accept the same, the diamond, which fair Sabra had made him a present of, waxed pale, and from his nose fell just three drops of blood, which the king's daughter observing, suspected some secret poison to be infused in the

wine; whereupon she shrieked out so loudly, and so suddenly, that it alarmed the whole court, and carried her suspicions to the ears of her father; but so great was his love for the black king, that he would not give credit to any thing that could be suggested against him.

Thus was Almidor a second time prevented in his evil designs, which made him more enraged than a chased boar; yet, resolving the third should pay for all, he impatiently expected another opportunity to put his hellish purposes in execution.

St. George remained many days in the Egyptian court, sometimes revelling among the gentlemen, dancing and sporting among the ladies, at other times in tilts, tournaments, and other noble and heroic exercises; and all that time was the breast of the beauteous Sabra inflamed with the most ardent love for him, of which the treacherous Almidor had intelligence by many secret practices, and many times his own ears were witnesses to their discourses. One evening in particular, after the glorious sun was set in Thetis's lap, it was his fortune to wander near a garden wall, to taste the cooling air, where the two lovers, without seeing him, were seated in a bower of jessamine, and after much talk, he heard the love-sick Sabra thus complain:

"My soul's delight, my noble George of England, dearer than all the world beside, why art thou more obdurate than the flint, since all my falling tears can never mollify thy heart? Nor all the sighs, the many thousand sighs, I have sent as messengers of my true love, were ever yet requited with a smile. Refuse not her, my dear-loved lord of England, refuse not her, that, for thy sake, would leave her parents, country, and inheritance, although that inheritance be the crown of Egypt, and would follow thee as a pilgrim through the wide world. The sun shall sooner lose its splendour, the pale moon drop from her orb, the sea forget to ebb and flow, and all things change the course ordained by nature, than Sabra, heiress of Egypt, prove inconstant to St. George of England; let, then, the priests of Hymen knit that Gordian knot, the knot of wedlock, which death alone has power to untie."

These words so fired the champion's heart, that he was almost entangled in the snares of love, he, who before had never given way to any passion but the love of arms.

Yet, to try her patience a little more, he made her this answer :

"Lady of Egypt, art thou not content that I have risked my own life to preserve yours, but you would have me also sacrifice my honour, give over the chase of dawning glory ; lay all my warlike trophies in a woman's lap, and change my truncheon for a distaff.—No! Sabra, George of England is a knight, born in a country where true chivalry is nourished, and hath sworn to see the world, as far as the lamp of heaven can lend him light, before he is fettered in the chains of wedlock. Therefore think no more of one that is a stranger, a wanderer from place to place, but cast your eyes on one more worthy your own high rank. Why do you decline the suit of Almidor, who is a king, and would think no task too arduous to obtain your love?"

At which words, she instantly replied :

"The fell king of Morocco is more bloody-minded than a serpent, but thou as gentle as a lamb ; his tongue more ominous than the screeching night-owl, but thine sweeter than the morning-lark ; his touch more odious than the biting snake, but thine more pleasant than the curling vine. What if thou art a stranger to our land, thou art more precious to my heart, and more delightful to my eyes, than crowns and diadems."

"But stay," replied the English champion, "I am a Christian, madam ; thou a Pagan. I honour God in heaven ; you, shadows earthly of a vile impostor here below. Therefore, if you would obtain my love, you must forsake your Mahomet, and be baptized into the Christian faith." "With all my soul," replied the Egyptian lady ; "I will forsake my country's gods, and for thy love become a Christian." And thereupon she broke a ring, and gave him one half as a pledge of her love, and kept the other half herself ; and so, for that time, went out of the garden.

The treacherous Almidor, who had listened during all this discourse, was galled to the very heart to hear how much his mistress despised him and his proffered love ; but was now resolved to strike a bold stroke with the king her father, to separate her from his too successful rival ; and accordingly hastened away to the Egyptian king, and prostrating himself before him, he spoke in the following manner :

"Know, great monarch of the east, that I am come to

unfold a secret which nearly concerns the welfare of your country. It was my chance this evening, when Titan had withdrawn his radiant beams, to seek the cool refreshing air close by your private garden wall, where, being myself unseen, I overheard a deep concerted plan of treason, laid between your daughter and the English knight; for she hath given him a solemn pledge of love, and with that pledge a promise to forsake the faith of Egypt, sets the great prophet at defiance, and will embrace the Christian doctrine. Nay, she forsakes not only Mahomet, but her father, and her native land, to wander with this stranger knight, who, for being so highly honoured in your court, thus robs you of your daughter."

"Now, by our holy prophet," replied the king, "this damned Christian shall not reap the harvest of our daughter's love, for he shall lose his head, though not in our court, where we have heaped such honours on him. But, Almidor, be secret, and I'll acquaint you with my purpose: I will send him to my kinsman, the soldan of Persia; from whom he shall never more return to Egypt, except his ghost bring tidings of his fate in that country." And to answer this purpose they contrive between them the following letter:

"To the soldan of Persia.

"I Ptolemy, king of Egypt, and the eastern territories, send greeting to thee, the mighty soldan of Persia, great emperor of the provinces of the larger Asia. I make this my request, trusting to the league of friendship between us, that thou put the bearer hereof, thy slave, to death; for he is an utter enemy to all Asia and Africa, and a proud contemner of our religion. Therefore fail not hereof, as thou tenderest our mutual friendship. So we bid thee farewell.

"Thy kinsman,

"Ptolemy, king of Egypt."

As soon as this letter was signed and sealed with the great seal of Egypt, St. George was sent in embassy with the bloody sentence of his own destruction; and was sworn, by the honour of knighthood, to deliver it safe; leaving *behind him, as a pledge of his fidelity, his good steed, and trusty sword Ascalon, in the keeping of Ptolemy, tal*

a only one of that king's horses, for his easy tra-

was the innocent lamb betrayed by the subtle fox, to the hunger-starved lion's den; not being suffered the least notice to the fair Sabra of his sudden departure, but travelled day and night, through many a solitary dismal wilderness, without any adventure worth only hearing the sad cry of the night raven creaks ear, and the fearful sound of screeching owls from the oak, and such like ominous messengers of ill-fortune, which foretold some dreadful accident at Yet no fear could daunt his noble mind, nor danger his intended journey, and so at length he arrived sight of the soldan's palace, which looked more like a than any earthly habitation. For as history relates walls and towers of the palace were of the purest; the windows crystal, set in work of carved silver and with oriental pearl; the outward walls, the gates and were of brass; and the building gilt with gold. The palace was a river of great depth and breadth, in which stood a bridge erected on arches adorned with carvings in alto and basso relievo; under these were hung a hundred silver bells, so that no creature came into the palace, but they gave warning to the guard. At the end of the bridge was built a tower taller, on the top of which stood an eagle of gold, with such precious stones, that all the palace glittered with splendour of them.

On the day that St. George entered the soldan's court, as a solemn procession in honour of the false prophet, with which the English champion was so moved, tore down their ensigns and streamers, and trampled under his feet: whereupon the infidels presently fled to the soldan for succour, and shewed him how a strange and despised their Mahomet, and trod their banners under foot. Whereupon he sent a hundred of his armed men to know the cause of that sudden uproar, and to bring the Christian champion bound before his majesty: but he retained these Persian knights with such a bloody battle; that some of their heads were tumbled in the dirty streets, and the channels overflowed with streams of their blood; so that the pavement before the palace was almost covered

with slaughtered men, and the walls were besprinkled with purple gore. So victoriously he behaved himself, that ere the sun declined in the west, he had brought to the ground most part of the soldan's knights, and forced the rest, like frightened sheep, to fly to their soldan for aid, who then remained in his palace with a guard of a thousand men; but at the report of this unexpected tumult, he furnished his soldiers with all the proper habiliments of war, and came marching from his palace with such a mighty force, as if he had apprehended all the powers of Christendom had been coming to invade the territories of Asia. But such was the invincible courage of St. George, that he encountered with them all, and made such a massacre in the soldan's court, that the whole area was covered, and the gates stopped up with heaps of slaughtered Persians. At last the alarm-bell was rung, and the beacons set on fire; upon which the populace rose in arms, and came flocking about the English champion like swarms of bees: whereat, through his long fatigue, and the multitude of his enemies, his undaunted courage was forced to yield, and his restless arm, wearied with the fight, constrained to let his weapon fall to the ground. And thus he, whose fortitude had sent thousands to wander on the banks of Acheron, stood now obedient to the mercy of his enemies, who, with their brandished weapons and sharp-edged falchions, environed him about.

"Now, bloody-minded monster," said the soldan, "what countryman soe'er thou art, Jew, Pagan, or misbelieving Christian, look for a sentence of severe punishment for every drop of blood thy unhappy hand hath here shed: first, thy skin shall be flayed from off thy flesh alive; next, thy flesh shall be torn with red-hot pincers from thy bones; and lastly, thy limbs parted from each other by wild horses." This bloody sentence being pronounced by the soldan, St. George answered in the following manner:

"Great potentate of Asia, I crave the liberty and law of arms, whereto all the kings of the earth are by oath for ever bound. First, in my native country my descent is of royal blood, and therefore I challenge a combat: secondly, I am an ambassador from the mighty Ptolemy, king of Egypt; therefore is my person sacred: lastly, the laws of Asia, and *indeed all nations*, grant me a safe conduct back; and *Ptolemy is answerable for every thing I have done.*"

upon he delivered the letter, sealed with the great Egypt, which was no sooner broke open and read, soldan's eyes sparkled with fire, and upon his brow image of wrath and indignation.

the report of Ptolemy," said the soldan, "thou art contemner of our holy prophet, and his laws; therefore pleasure is, that you be put to death. Which, by it, I swear shall be fulfilled."

upon this he gave him up to the safe custody of a l of his guards, till the time of execution, which was to be in thirty days. Hereupon they disrobed him rich apparel, and clothed him in base and servile his arms, that were lately employed in supporting ghty target, and wielding the weighty battle-axe, ow strongly fettered up in iron bolts; and those which were wont to be garnished with steel gaunt- sy bound with hempen cords, till the purple blood from his fingers' ends; and being thus despoiled of ghtly dignity, he was conveyed to a dark dungeon, the light of heaven was never seen, nor the glorious ld send one gladdening ray, to shew a difference be- ay and night. All his comfort was to reckon up the of the Persians he had slain; and sometimes his thoughts were pondering on ungrateful Ptolemy; nes running on the charms of lovely Sabra, distracted flecting how she would take his sudden departure. n sketched out her picture on the wall, and to the ss form would often thus complain:

cruel destiny! Why am I punished in this sort? [conspired against the majesty of heaven, that it has such vengeance on my head? O! shall I never my former liberty, that I may be revenged on those ave imprisoned me? Frown, angry heavens, on these -minded infidels, these daring rebels against the truth divinity; these professed enemies of Christ. And he plagues of Pharaoh light upon their country, and series of Oedipus upon their princes. Let them be ses of their daughters' ravishments, and behold their laming like the burning battlements of Troy."

s lamented he the loss of his liberty, accursing the 'his birth, and the hour of his creation, wishing it e never numbered in the year, but be accounted omi

abode, shew me in sleep the shadow of his lovely form, give me to know the reason of his sudden departure, and of his long and painful absence."

After this exclamation, she closed her radiant eyes in sleep, when presently the very image, as she thought, of her dear-loved knight, St. George, appeared; not as he was wont, in shining arms, and with his burgonet of glittering steel, nor mounted on his stately steed, decked with a crimson plume of spangled feathers, but in over-worn and simple attire, with pale looks and emaciated body, like a ghost new risen from the hollow grave, breathing, as it were, these sad and woful expressions:

Sabra, I am betrayed for love of thee,
 And lodg'd in cave as dark as night;
 From whence I never more, ah woe is me!
 Shall have the pleasure of thy beauteous sight:
 Remain thou true and constant for my sake,
 That of my absence none may 'vantage make.

Let tyrants know, if ever I obtain
 What now is lost by treason's faithless guile,
 False Egypt's scourge I ever will remain,
 And turn to streaming blood Morocco's soil.
 That hateful prince of Barbary shall rue,
 The fell revenge that is his treason's due.

The Persian towers shall smoke with fire,
 And lofty Babylon be tumbled down:
 The cross of Christendom shall then aspire,
 To wear the proud Egyptian triple crown,
 Jerusalem and Judah shall behold
 The fall of kings by Christian champions bold.

Thou maid of Egypt, still continue chaste,
 A tiger seeks thy virgin's name to spill,
 Whilst George of England is in prison plac'd,
 Thou shalt be forc'd to wed against thy will:
 But after this shall happen mighty things,
 For from thy womb shall spring three wond'rous kings.

This strange and woful speech was no sooner ended, but *she* awaked from her sleep, and presently reached out her *ivory arms*, thinking to embrace him, but met with nothing

but empty air, which caused her to renew her former complaints.

"Oh! wherefore died I not in this my troublesome dream," said the sorrowful lady, "that my ghost might have haunted those inhuman monsters who have thus betrayed the bravest champion that the eye of Heaven or the sons of earth have e'er beheld? For his sake will I exclaim against the ingratitude of Egypt, and, like ravished Philomel, fill every corner of the land with echoes of his wrong. My woes are greater, and by far exceed the sorrows of Dido, queen of Carthage, mourning for *Æneas*."

With such-like plaintive words wearied she the time away, till twelve months were fully finished: at last her father, understanding what ardent affection she bore to the English champion, spoke to her in this manner:

"Daughter, I charge thee, on the obedience and duty which thou owest to me, both as thy father and thy king, to banish from thy thoughts all fond affection for the wandering knight; whom thou hast made unworthily the object of thy love, for he hath neither home nor habitation. Thou seest he has forsaken thee, and in his travels is wedded to another. Therefore, as you value my love, or dread my displeasure, I charge thee again to think of him no more; but cast your eyes on the black king of Morocco, who is deserving of thee, and whose nuptials with thee I intend to celebrate in Egypt shortly, with all the honours due to my own and his high rank."

Having said these words, he departed, without waiting for an answer; by which fair Sabra knew, he was not to be thwarted in his will. Therefore she poured forth these sad words:

"O unkind father! to cross the affection of thy child, and thus force love where there is no liking: yet shall my mind continue true to my dear-loved lord; although my body be forced against nature to obey, and Almidor have the honour of my marriage-bed, yet shall English George only have my heart, and my virginity, if ever he return to Egypt."

Hereupon she pulled forth a chain of gold, and wrapped it seven times about her alabaster neck. "This," said she, "*hath been seven days steeped in tiger's blood, and seven nights in dragon's milk, whereby it hath obtained such ex-*

cellent virtue, that so long as I wear it about my neck, no man on earth can enjoy my virginity: though I should be forced to the state of marriage, and lie seven years in the bed of wedlock, yet, by the virtue of this chain, shall I still continue a true virgin."

Which words were no sooner ended, but Almidor entered her sorrowful chamber, and presented her with a wedding-garment, which was of the purest Median silk, embossed with pearl and glittering gold, perfumed with sweet Syrian powders; it was of the colour of the lily, when Flora had bedecked the fields in May with nature's ornaments; glorious and costly were her vestures, and so stately were the nuptial rites solemnized, that Egypt admired the grandeur of her wedding, which for seven days was held in the court of Ptolemy, and then moved to Tripoly, the chief city in Barbary, where Almidor's forced bride was crowned queen of Morocco; at which coronation the conduits ran with Greek wines, and the streets of Tripoly were beautified with pageants and delightful shows. The court resounded such melodious harmony, as though Apollo with his silver harp had descended from the heavens: such tilts and tournaments were performed betwixt the Egyptian knights, and the knights of Barbary, that they exceeded the nuptials of Hecuba, the beauteous queen of Troy. Which honourable proceedings we leave for this time to their own contentments, some masking, some dancing, some revelling, some tilting, some banqueting. Leave we also the champion of England, St. George, mourning in the dungeon in Persia, as you heard before, and return to the other six champions of Christendom, who departed from the brazen pillar, every one his several way, whose knightly and noble adventures, if the Muses grant me their assistance, I will most amply discover, to the honour of Christendom.

CHAP. IV.

CALLING now to mind the long and weary travels St. Denis, the champion of France, endured, after his departure from the other six champions at the brazen pillar, as you heard in the beginning of the former chapter, from

which he wandered through many a desolate grove and wilderness, without any adventure worth noting, till he arrived upon the borders of Thessaly (being a land, as then, inhabited only with wild beasts); wherein he endured such a scarcity of victuals, that he was forced, for the space of seven years, to feed upon the herbs of the field, and the fruits of trees, till the hairs of his head were like eagles' feathers, and the nails of his fingers like birds' claws: his drink, the dew of heaven, which he licked from the flowers in meadows; his attire, the bay leaves and broad docks, that grew in the wood; his shoes, the bark of trees, in which he travelled through many a thorny brake. But at last, as it was his fortune, or cruel destiny (being overprest with the extremity of hunger), to taste and feed upon the berries of an enchanted mulberry-tree, whereby he lost the lively form and image of his human substance, and was transformed into the shape and likeness of a wild hart; which strange and sudden transformation this noble champion little mistrusted, till he espied his misshapen form in a clear fountain, which nature had made in a cool and shady valley: but when he beheld the shadow of his deformed body, and how his head, late honoured with a burgonet of steel, was now disgraced with a pair of Sylvan horns; his countenance, which was the index of his noble mind, now covered with the likeness of a brute; and his body, which was erect, tall, smooth, and fair, now bending to earth on four feet, and clothed in a rough hairy hide of a dusky brown colour; having his reason still left, he ran again to the mulberry-tree, supposing the berries he had eaten to be the cause of his transformation, and there laying himself upon the bare ground, he thus began to complain:

"What magic charms, or what bewitching spells," said he, "are continued in this cursed tree, whose poisonous fruit hath confounded my future fortunes, and reduced me to this miserable condition? O thou celestial Ruler of the world! O merciful Power of heaven! look down with pity on my hapless state; incline thine ears to listen to my woes; I, who was late a man, am now a horned beast; a soldier, once my country's champion, now a timorous deer, the prey of dogs; my glittering armour changed into a hairy hide, and my brave array now vile as common earth: henceforth, instead of princely palaces, these shady woods must be m

sole retreat, wherein my bed of down must be a heap of sun-dried moss ; my sweet delighting music, blustering winds, that with tempestuous gusts make the whole wilderness tremble ; the company I am obliged henceforth to keep, must be the Sylvan Satyrs, Dryades, and airy Nymphs, who never appear to human eyes, but at twilight, or the midnight moon ; the stars that beautify the crystal vault, and wide expanse of heaven, shall hereafter serve as torches to light me to my woful bed ; the scowling clouds shall be my canopy ; and my clock, to give me notice how time runs stealing on, the dismal sounds of hissing snakes or croaking toads !"

Thus described he his own misery, till the bitter tears of wretchedness gushed out in such abundance from the conduits of his eyes, and his heavy sighs so violently forced their passage from his bleeding breast, that they even seemed to constrain the savage bears and merciless tigers to relent in pity of his moan, and like harmless lambs to sit bleating in the woods, to hear his mournful exclamations.

Long and many days continued this champion of France in the shape of a hart, in greater misery than the unfortunate English champion in Persia, not knowing how to recover his former shape, and human substance. But on a day as he lamented the loss of his natural form, under the branches of that enchanted mulberry-tree which was the cause of his transformation, he heard a most grievous and terrible groan, which he supposed to portend that something extraordinary was to ensue ; upon which, suspending his sorrows for a time, he heard a hollow voice breathe from the trunk of the mulberry-tree the following words :

The Voice in the mulberry-tree.

Cease to lament, thou famous man of France,
 With gentle ears come listen to my moan,
 In former time it was my fatal chance
 To be the proudest maid that e'er was known ;
 By birth I was the daughter of a king,
 Though now a breathless tree, and senseless thing.

*My pride was such that heav'n confounded me,
 A goddess in my own conceit I was :*

What nature lent, too base I thought to be,
 But deem'd myself all others to surpass,
 And therefore nectar and ambrosia sweet
 The food of heav'n, for me I counted meet.

My pride despis'd the finest bread of wheat,
 And purer food I daily sought to find ;
 Refin'd gold was boil'd still in my meat,
 Such self-conceit my senses all did blind :
 For which the gods above transformed me,
 From human substance to this senseless tree.

Seven years in shape of hart thou must remain,
 And then the purple rose, by heav'n's decree,
 Shall bring thee to thy former shape again,
 And end at last thy woful misery :
 When this is done, be sure you cut in twain
 This fatal tree wherein I do remain.

After he had heard these words from the mulberry-tree, he was so much amazed at the strangeness thereof, that he for some moments was deprived of speech ; and the thoughts of his long-appointed punishment bereaved him of his understanding : but at last, recovering his senses, though not his human form, he bitterly complained of his misfortunes.

" Oh ! unhappy creature," said the distressed champion, " more miserable than Progne in her transformation, and more unfortunate than Acteon, whose perfect picture I am made ! His misery continued but a short time ; for his own dogs, the same day tore him into a thousand pieces, and buried his transformed carcass in their hungry bowels : but mine is appointed by the angry destinies, till seven times the summer's sun shall yearly replenish his radiant brightness, and seven times the winter's rain shall wash me with the showers of heaven."

Such were the complaints of the transformed knight of France, sometimes remembering his former fortunes, how he had spent his days in the honour of his country ; at other times thinking upon the place of his nativity, renowned France, the nurse and mother of his youth ; and again treading with his foot (for hands he had none) in sandy ground the print of the words which he had heard from the mulberry-tree, and many times numbering the minutes

of his tedious punishment with the flowers of the field thousand sighs he daily breathed from his breast still, when the sable mantle of the dark and gloomy had overspread the azure firmament, and drawn her tairs before the brighter windows of the heavens, all tures took their sweet repose, and closed their eyes in but him: and when all things else were silent but the muring brooks and rills, the distressed champion made music his only comfort. The queen of night was many dred times a witness to his lamentations. The wand owl, that ventures not abroad but in the dark, sat he o'er his head; and the sad, but sweetly complaining l mel, with mournful melody, joined in the chorus of sighs. But during the whole term of his seven year sery, his trusty steed never once forsook him, but wi love and diligence attended on him day and night, straying from his side; and if extreme heat in summ pinching cold in winter, grew troublesome to him, his would shelter and defend him.

At last when the term of seven years was fully ex when he was to recover his former substance, and h shape, his good horse, which he regarded as the apple eye, clambered a high and steep mountain, which n had beautified with all kind of fragrant flowers, as od rous as the gardens of the Hesperides; from when pulled a branch of purple roses, and brought them be his teeth to his distressed master, being still in the sam order and discontent, under the mulberry-tree. The c pion of France no sooner beheld this, but he remem that by a purple rose he should recover his former s and so joyfully received the roses from his trusty s then casting his eyes up to the celestial throne of he he conveyed these consecrated flowers into his empty mach.

After which he laid him down upon the bosom c mother earth, where he fell into such a sound sleep, th his senses and vital spirits ceased to perform their offices for the space of four-and-twenty hours, in v time the windows and doors of heaven were opened, whence descended such a shower of rain, that it w away his hairy coat and beast-like shape; his horned and long visage were turned again into a lively counter

and all the rest of his members, both arms, legs, hands, feet, fingers, toes, with all the rest of nature's gifts, received their former shape.

But when the good champion awaked from his sleep, and perceived the wonderful workmanship of heaven, in transforming him to his human likeness; he first gave honour to Almighty God; next, blessed the ground whereon he had lived so long in misery; then beholding his armour, which lay near him, quite stained, and almost spoiled with rust; his burgonet and keen-edged cutlass besmeared over with dust: then lastly, pondering in his mind the faithful service his trusty steed had done him, during the time of his calamity, whose sable-coloured mane hung frizzling down his brawny neck, which before was wont to be platted curiously with artificial knots, and his forehead, which was always beautified with a tawny plume of feathers, now disfigured with overgrown hair, the good champion, St. Denis of France, was so grieved, that he stroked down his jetty back till the hair of his body lay as smooth as Arabian silk; then pulled he out his trusty falchion, which, in so many fierce assaults, and dangerous combats, had been bathed in the blood of his enemies, and by the long continuance of time lying idle, was now almost consumed with cankered rust; but by his labour and great industry, he recovered its former beauty and brightness again.

Thus both his sword and horse, his martial furniture, and all other habiliments of war, being brought to their first and proper qualities, the noble champion resolved to pursue his intended adventure in cutting down the mulberry-tree: so taking his sword, which was of the purest Spanish steel, made such a stroke at the root thereof, that at one blow he cut it quite in sunder, from whence immediately flashed such a mighty flame of fire, that the mane was burnt from his horse's neck, and likewise the hair of his own head had been fired had not his helmet preserved him; and no sooner was the flame extinguished, but there ascended from the hollow tree a naked virgin (in shape like Daphne, which Apollo turned into a bay-tree), fairer than Pygmalion's ivory image, or the northern snow; her eyes more clear than the icy mountains, her cheeks like roses dipped in milk, her lips more lovely than the Turkish rubies, her alabaster teeth like Indian pearls, her neck seemed an ivory tower her

as he began to utter his name.

Thou most divine and singular ornament of nature . . .
he, " fairer than the feathers of the Sylvan swan that
ems upon Meander's crystal streams, and far more beau-
ful than Aurora's morning countenance, to thee, the fairest
all fairs, most humbly and only to thy beauty do I here
bmit my affection. Also I swear, by the honour of my
hightood, and by the love of my country of France (which
ow I will not violate for all the treasures of rich America,
r the golden mines of Higher India), whether thou art an
angel descended from heaven, or a fury ascended from the
vast dominions of Proserpine ; whether thou art some fairy
or Sylvan nymph, which inhabits in the fatal wood, or else
an earthly creature, for thy sins transformed into this mul-
berry-tree ; I am not therefore judge. Therefore, sweet
saint, to whom my heart must pay its due devotion, unfold
to me thy birth, parentage, and name, that I may the bolder
presume upon thy courtesies." At which demand, this new-
born virgin, with a shame-faced look, modest gesture, sober
grace, and blushing countenance, began thus to reply :

" Sir Knight, by whom my life, my love, and fortunes
ended and by whom my human shape and
magnanimous

After which, beautiful Eglantine, being ashamed of her nakedness, weaved herself a garment of green rushes, intermixed with such variety of flowers, that it surpassed, for workmanship, the Indian maidens' curious webs; her curling locks of hair continued still of the colour of the mulberry-tree, and made her appear like Flora in her greatest royalty, when the fields were decked with nature's tapestry.

She then washed her lily hands and rose-coloured face in the dew of heaven, which she gathered from a bed of violets. Thus, in green vestments, she intruded, in company of her true love, the valiant knight of France, to take her journey to her father's court; where after some few days' travel, they arrived safe, and were welcomed according to their wishes with the most honourable entertainments. The king of Thessaly no sooner beheld his daughter, of whose strange transformation he was ignorant, but he fell into a swoon through exceeding joy, but coming to his senses, he embraced her, and proffered such courtesy to the strange knight, that St. Denis accounted him the mirror of all courtesy, and the pattern of true nobility.

* After the champion was unarmed, his stiff and wearied limbs were bathed in new milk and white wine, he was conveyed to a sweet-smelling fire made of juniper, and the fair Eglantine conducted by the maidens of honour to a private chamber where she was disrobed of her *Sylvan* attire, and apparelled in long robes of purple silk. ~~In~~ In which court of Thessaly we will leave our champion of France with his lady, and go forward in the discourse of the other champions, discovering what adventures happened to them during the seven years.

CHAP. V.

NOW must my Muse speak of St. James of Spain, the third champion, and what happened unto him in his seven years' travels through many a strange country by sea and land, where his honourable acts were so dangerous and full of wonder, that I want skill to express, and art to describe. *Also I am forced, for brevity sake, to pass over his dangerous battle with the burning drake upon the flaming mount*

in Sicily, which terrible combat continued for the space of seven days and seven nights. Likewise I omit his travel in Cappadocia, through a wilderness of monsters, with his passage over the Red Sea, where his ship was devoured with worms, his mariners drowned, and himself, his horse, and furniture, safely brought to land by the sea-nymphs and mermaids: where after his long travels, passed perils, and dangerous tempests, among the stormy billows of the raging seas, he arrived in the unhappy dominions of Judah; unhappy by reason of the long and troublesome misery he endured for the love of a fair Jew. For coming to the beautiful city of Jerusalem (being in that age the wonder of the world, for brave buildings, princely palaces, and wonderful temples), he so admired the glorious situation thereof (being the richest place that ever his eyes beheld), that he stood before the walls of Jerusalem, one while gazing upon her golden gates, glittering against the sun's bright countenance; another while beholding her stately pinnacles, whose lofty-peeping tops seemed to touch the clouds; *another while wondering at her towers of jasper, jet, and ebony, her strong and fortified walls, three times double about the city, glittering spires of the temple of Sion, built in the fashion and similitude of the pyramids, the ancient monument of Greece, whose battlements were covered with steel, the walls burnished with silver, the ground paved with tin. Thus, as this noble and famous knight at arms stood beholding the situation of Jerusalem, there suddenly thundered such a peal of ordnance within the city, that it seemed in his ravished conceit, to shake the veil of heaven, and to move the deep foundations of the fastened earth, whereat his horse gave such a sudden start, that he leaped ten foot from the place whereon he stood. After this, he heard the sound of drums, and the cheerful echoes of brazen trumpets, by which the valiant champion expected some honourable pastime, or some great tournament to be at hand; which indeed so fell out: for no sooner did he cast his eyes towards the east side of the city, but he beheld a troop of well-appointed horse come marching through the gates; after them twelve armed knights mounted on twelve warlike coursers, bearing in their hands twelve blood-red streamers, whereon was wrought in silk the picture of Adonis wounded by a boar; after them, the king drawn in a chariot by Spa-*

nish mares. The king's guards were a hundred naked Moors, with Turkish bows and darts, feathered with ravens' wings; after them marched Celestine, the king of Jerusalem's fair daughter, mounted on a tame unicorn. In her hand a javelin of silver, and armed with a breastplate of gold artificially wrought like the scales of a porcupine; her guard were one hundred Amassonian dames clad in green silk; after them followed a number of esquires and gentlemen, some upon Barbarian steeds, some upon Arabian palfreys, and some on foot, in pace more nimble than the tripping deer, and more swift than the tamest hart upon the mountains of Thessaly.

Thus Nebuzaradan, great king of Jerusalem (for so he was called), solemnly hunted in the wilderness of Judah, being a country very much annoyed with wild beasts, as the lion, the leopard, the boar, and such like; in which exercise the king appointed, as it was proclaimed by his chief herald at arms (which he heard repeated by the shepherd in the fields), that whosoever slew the first wild beast in the forest, should have in reward a corselet of steel so richly engraven, that it should be worth a thousand shekels of silver. Of which honourable enterprise when the champion had understanding, and with what liberal bounty the adventurous knight would be rewarded, his heart was fraught with invincible courage thirsting after glorious attempts, not only for hope of gain, but for the desire of honour, at which his illustrious and undaunted mind aimed, to eternise his deeds in the memorable records of fame, and to shine as a crystal mirror to all ensuing times. So closing down his beaver, and locking on his furniture, he scoured over the plains before the hunters of Jerusalem, in pace more swift than the winged winds, till he approached an old unfrequented forest, wherein he espied a huge and mighty wild boar, lying before his mossy den, gnawing upon the mangled joints of some passenger, which he had murdered as he travelled through the forest.

This boar was of wonderful length and bigness, and so terrible to behold, that at the first sight he almost daunted the courage of the Spanish knight: for his monstrous head seemed ugly and deformed, his eyes sparkled like a fiery furnace, his tusks more sharp than pikes of steel, and from his nostrils fumed such a violent breath, that it seemed like

the breast of the boar, that it shivered into twenty
; then drawing his falchion from his side, he gave a
d encounter, but all in vain, for he struck as it were
a rock of stone, or a pillar of iron, not hurting the boar:
at last, with staring eyes and open jaws, the greedy
ter assailed the champion, intending to swallow him
; but the nimble knight, as then, trusted more to po-
than fortitude, and so skipped from place to place, till
sudden he thrust his keen-edged cuttle-axe down his
it, and split his heart in sunder. Which being accom-
ed to his own desire, he cut off the boar's head, and so
ented the honour of the combat to the king of Jerusalem,
with his mighty train of knights but now entered the
t; who having graciously received the gift, and boun-
ty fulfilled his promises, demanded the champion's
stry, his religion, and place of his nativity. But no
er had intelligence that he was a Christian knight, and
in the territories of Spain, but present'y his kindness
ged to a great fury, and by these words expressed his
r to the Christian champion:
Knowest thou not, bold knight," said the king of Jeru-

that he thought it more honour to his country to die in defence of Christendom. So, like a truly noble knight, ring not the threats of the Jews, he gave his sentence of own death. First he requested to be bound to a pine tree, with his breast laid open naked against the sun; then have an hour's respite to make his supplication to his father, and afterward to be shot to death by a true virgin. Which words were no sooner pronounced, but they disarmed him of his furniture, bound him to a pine tree, and laid his breast open, ready to receive the bloody stroke of the unrelenting maiden: but such pity, meekness, mercy, and kind lenity lodged in the heart of every maiden, that she would take in hand, or be the bloody executioner of so brave a knight. At last the tyrannous Nebuzaradan gave strict commandment, upon pain of death, that lots should be cast betwixt the maids of Judah that were there present, and to whom the lot fell, she should be the fatal executioner of the condemned Christian. But by chance the lot fell to Celestine the king's daughter, being the fairest maid then living in Jerusalem, in whose heart no such deed of cruelty could be harboured. Instead of death's fatal instrument, she shot towards his breast a deep-strained sigh, the true messenger of love, and afterward to Heaven she thus made humble supplication:

"Thou great Commander of celestial moving powers, convert the cruel motions of my father's mind into a spring of pitiful tears, that they may wash away the blood of this innocent knight from the habitation of his stained purple skin. O Judah and Jerusalem, within whose bosoms live a wilderness of tigers, degenerate from nature's kind, more cruel than the hungry cannibals, and more obdurate than armed lions! What merciless tigers can unrip that breast, where lives the image of true nobility, the very pattern of knighthood, and the map of a noble mind? No, before my hand shall be stained with Christians' blood, will, like Scylla, against all nature, sell my country's safety, or, like Medea, wander with the golden fleece to unknown nations."

In such manner complained the beauteous Celestine, the king's daughter of Jerusalem, till her sighs stopped the passage of her speech, and her tears stained the natural beauty of her rosy cheeks; her hair, which glittered like to golden

wires, she besmeared in dust, and disrobed herself of her costly garments ; and then, with a train of her Amazonian ladies, went to the king her father, where, after a long suit, she not only obtained his life, but liberty ; yet therewithal his perpetual banishment from Jerusalem, and from all the borders of Judah : the want of whose sight more grieved her heart than the loss of her own life. So this noble and praiseworthy Celestine returns to the Christian champion, who expected every minute to be put to death : but this expectation fell out contrary ; for the good lady, after she had sealed two or three kisses upon his pale lips, being changed through the fear of death, cut the bands that bound his body to the tree into many pieces ; and then, with a flood of salt tears, the motions of true love, she thus revealed her mind :

" Most noble knight, and true champion of Christendom, thy life and liberty I have gained, but therewith thy banishment from Judah, which is a hell of horror to my soul for in thy bosom have I built my happiness, and in thy heart I account the paradise of my true love : thy first sight and lovely countenance did ravish me ; for when these eyes beheld thee mounted on thy princely palfrey, my heart burned in affection towards thee. Therefore, dear knight, in reward of my love, be thou my champion, and for my sake wear this ring, with this posey engraven in it, *Ardeo Affectione*." And so giving him a ring from her finger, and therewithal a kiss from her mouth, she departed with a sorrowful sigh, in company of her father and the rest of his honourable train, back to the city of Jerusalem, being as then near the setting of the sun. But now St. James, the champion of Spain, having escaped the danger of death, and at full liberty to depart from that unhappy nation, he fell into many cogitations, one while thinking upon the true love of Celestine (whose name as yet he was ignorant of), another while upon the cruelty of her father ; then intending to depart into his own country, but looking back to the towers of Jerusalem, his mind suddenly altered, for thither he purposed to go, hoping to have sight of his lady and mistress, and to live in some disguised sort in her presence, and be his love's true champion against all comers. So gathering certain black berries from the trees, he coloured his body all over like a blackmoor ; but yet con-

daring that his country speech would discover him, intended likewise to continue dumb all the time of his residence in Jerusalem.

So all things ordered according to his desire, he took his journey to the city, where with signs he declared his intent, which was, to be entertained in the court, and to spend his time in the service of the king. Whose countenance when the king beheld, which seemed of the natural colour of the Moors, he little mistrusted him to be the Christian champion, whom before he greatly envied, but accounted him one of the bravest knights that ever his eye beheld; therefore he installed him with the honour of knighthood, and appointed him to be one of his guard, and likewise his daughter's only champion. Thus when St. James of Spain saw himself invested in that honourable place, his soul was ravished with such exceeding joy, that he thought no pleasure comparable to his, no place of Elysium but the court of Jerusalem, and no goddess but his beloved Celestine.

Long continued he dumb, casting forth many a loving sigh in the presence of his lady and mistress, not knowing how to reveal the secrets of his mind.

So upon a time there arrived in the court of Nebuzaradan, the king of Arabia, with the admiral of Babylon, both presuming upon the love of Celestine, and craving her in the way of marriage; but she exempted all their motions of love from her chaste mind, only building her thoughts upon the Spanish knight, who she supposed to be in his own country.

At whose melancholy passions her importunate suitors, the king of Arabia and the admiral of Babylon, marvelled: and therefore intended upon an evening to present her with some rare devised mask. So choosing out fit consorts for their courtly pastimes, of which number the king of Arabia was chief and first leader of the train, the great admiral of Babylon was the second, and her own champion, St. James, the third, who was called by the name of the "Dumb Knight," in this manner the mask was performed:

First entered a most excellent concert of music, after them the aforesaid maskers in cloth of gold, and most curiously embroidered, and danced about the hall; at the end whereof the king of Arabia presented Celestine with a costly

being done, the music
course St. James, though unknown, was the
nce, who at the end thereof presented Celestine with
and of sweet flowers, which was brought in by three
es, and put upon her head. Afterward the Christian
pion, intending to discover himself unto his lady and
ess, took her by the hand, and led her a stately Mo-
dance, which was no sooner finished, but he offered her
diamond ring which she gave him at his departure in
woods, which she presently knew by the posey, and
rtly after had intelligence of his dumbness, his counter-
colour, his changing of nature, and the great danger he
himself to for her sake ; which caused her with all the
ed she could possibly make, to break off company, and to
ire into a chamber, which she had by, where the same
ening she had a long conference with her faithful lover
d adventurous champion. And to conclude, they made
agreement betwixt them, that the same night, unknown
any in the court, she bade Jerusalem adieu, and by the
ht of Cynthia's glittering beams, stole from her father's
lace, where in company of none but St. James, she took
the country of Spain. But this noble
angers, for he shod

CHAP. VI.

It was the same time of the year when the earth was newly
leeked with the summer's livery, when the noble champion
St. Anthony of Italy arrived in Thracia, where he spent
his seven years' travels to the honour of his country, the
glory of God, and to his own still lasting memory. For
after he had wandered through woods and wildernesses, by
hills and dales, by caves and dens, and other unknown pas-
sages, he arrived at last upon the top of a high mountain,
whereon stood a wonderful strong castle, which was kept by
the most mighty giant under the cope of heaven, whose
missant force all Thrace could not overcome, nor once at-
tempt to withstand, but with the danger of the whole coun-
try. The giant's name was Blanderon, his castle of the
purest marble stone, his gates of brass, and over the princi-
pal gate were graven these verses following :

Within this castle lives the scourge of kings,
A furious giant, whose unconquer'd pow'r
The Thracian monarch in subjection brings,
And keeps his daughters pris'ners in his tow'r ;
Seven damsels fair this monstrous giant keeps,
That sing him music while he nightly sleeps.

His bars of steel a thousand knights have felt,
Which for these virgins' sake have lost their lives ;
For all the champions bold that with him dealt,
This most inhuman giant still survives :
Let simple passengers take heed betime,
When up this mountain they intend to climb.

But knights of worth, and men of noble mind,
If any chance to travel by this tow'r,
That for these maidens' sake will be so kind,
To try their strength against the giant's pow'r,
Shall have a virgin's pray'r both day and night,
To prosper them with good successful fight.

After he had read what was written over the gate, desire
of fame so encouraged him, and the thirst of honour so en-
dowed his valiant mind, that he vowed either to redeem

these ladies from their servitude, or die with honour by the fury of the giant. So going to the castle gate, he struck so vehemently thereon with the pommel of his sword, that it sounded like a thunder-clap. Whereat Blanderon suddenly started up, being fast asleep by a fountain-side, and came pacing forth of the gate, with an oak tree upon his neck; who, at the sight of the Italian champion, so lightly flourished it about his head, as though it had been a little cattle-axe, and with these words gave the noble champion entertainment:

"What fury hath incensed thy overboldened mind, thus to adventure thy feeble force against the violence of my strong arms? I tell thee, hadst thou the strength of Hercules, who bore the mountain Atlas on his shoulders, or the policy of Ulysses, by which the city of Troy was ruined, or the might of Xerxes, whose multitudes drank up the rivers as they passed; yet, all too feeble, weak, and impotent, to encounter with the mighty giant Blanderon; thy force I esteem as a blast of wind, and thy strokes as a few drops of water. Therefore betake thee to thy weapon, which I compare to a bulrush, for on this ground will I measure out thy grave, and after that will hurl thy feeble palfrey with one of my hands headlong down this steep mountain."

Thus boasted the vain-glorious giant upon his own strength. During which time, the valiant champion had alighted from his horse, where, after he had made his humble supplication to the heavens for his good speed, and committed his fortune to the imperial queen of destiny, he approached within the giant's reach, who with his great oak so nimbly bestirred him with such vehement blows, that they seemed to shake the earth, and to rattle the wall of the castle like thunder-claps; and, had not the politic knight continually skipped from the fury of his blows, he had been soon killed, for every stroke the giant gave the root of his oak entered at the least two or three inches into the ground. But such was the wisdom and policy of the worthy champion not to withstand the force of his weapon, till the giant grew breathless, and not able, through his long labour, to lift the oak above his head; and likewise the heat of the sun *was so intolerable (by reason of the extreme height of the mountain, and the mighty weight of his iron coat), that the*

rest of the giant's brows ran into his eyes, and by reason he was so extreme fat, he grew so blind, that he could not see to combat with him any longer; and, as far as he could resolve, would have retired or run back again into his stile, but that the Italian champion with a bold courage smited the giant so fiercely, that he was forced to let his arms fall, and stand gasping for breath; which when this noble knight beheld, with a fresh supply he redoubled his blows so courageously, that they fell on the giant's armour as a storm of winter's hail, whereby at last Blanderón was compelled to ask the champion mercy, and to crave at his hands some respite of breathing; but his demand was in vain, for the valiant knight supposed now or never to obtain the honour of the day; and therefore rested not his weary arms, but redoubled blow after blow, till the giant, for want of breath, and through the anguish of his deep-gashed wounds, was forced to give the world a farewell, and to yield the riches of his castle to the most renowned conqueror, St. Anthony, the champion of Italy. But by that time the long and dangerous encounter was finished, and the giant Blanderón's head was severed from his body, the sun sat mounted on the highest part of the elements, which caused the day to be extreme hot and sultry: the champion's armour so scalded him, that he was constrained to embrace his corslet, and to lay aside his burgonet, and to cast his body upon the cold earth, to mitigate his extreme heat. But such was the unnatural coolness of the earth, the vapours of it struck presently to his heart, by which the vital air of life excluded, and his body lay without sense or moving; where, at the mercy of pale death, he lay be-
aved for the space of an hour.

During which time fair Rosalinde (one of the daughters of the Thracian king, being as then prisoner in the castle) by chance looked over the walls, and espied the body of the giant headless, under whose subjection she had continued great servitude for the time of seven months, likewise by her a knight unarmed, as she thought, panting for breath, which the lady judged to be the knight that had slain the giant Blanderón, and the man by whom her delivery should be recovered; she presently descended the walls of the castle, and ran with all speed to the adventurous champion, whom she found dead. But yet being nothing discouraged

of his recovery, feeling as yet a warm blood in every member, retired back with all speed to the castle, and fetched a box of precious balm, which the giant was wont to pour into his wounds after his encounter with any knight. With which balm the courteous lady chafed every part of the breathless champion's body, one while washing his stiff limbs with her salt tears, which like pearls fell from her eyes, another while drying them with tresses of her golden hair, which hung dangling in the wind; then chafing his lifeless body again with a balm of a contrary nature; but yet no sign of life could she see in the dead knight, which caused her to despair of his recovery. Therefore, like a loving, meek, and kind lady, considering he had lost his life for her sake, she intended to bear him company in death and with her own hands to finish her days, and die upon his breast, as Thisbe died upon the breast of her true Pyramis. Therefore, as the swan sings awhile before her death, so this sorrowful lady warbled forth this swan-like song over the body of the noble champion:

Muses, come mourn with doleful melody,
 Kind Sylvan nymphs, that sit in rosy bow'rs,
 With brackish tears come mix your harmony,
 To wail with me both minutes, days, and hours;
 A heavy, sad, and swan-like song sing I,
 To ease my heart awhile before I die.

Dead is the knight for whom I live and die,
 Dead is the knight which for my sake is slain;
 Dead is the knight for whom my careful cry,
 With wounded soul, for ever shall complain.
 A heavy, sad, and swan-like song sing I, &c.

I'll lay my breast upon a silver stream,
 And swim in Elysium's lily fields;
 There, in ambrosia trees, I'll write a theme,
 Of all the woful sighs my sorrow yields.
 A heavy, sad, and swan-like song sing I, &c.

Farewell, fair woods, where sing the nightingales;
 Farewell, fair fields, where feed the light-foot deer;
 Farewell, you groves, you hills, and flow'ry dales;
 But fare you ill, the cause of all my woes.
 A heavy, sad, and swan-like song sing I, &c.

Ring out my grief, you hollow caves of stone,
 Both birds, and beasts, with all things on the ground :
 You senseless trees, be assistant to my moan,
 That up to heav'n my sorrows may resound.
 A heavy, sad, and swan-like song sing I, &c.
 Let all the towns of Thrace ring out my knell,
 And write in leaves of brass what I have said ;
 That after ages may remember well,
 How Rosalinde liv'd and died a maid.
 A heavy, sad, and swan-like song sing I, &c.

She had no sooner ended, but the desperate lady unsheathed the champion's sword, which was besprinkled with the giant's blood, and being at the very point to execute her intended tragedy, and the sharp-edged weapon directly against her breast, she heard the distressed knight give a terrible groan ; whereat she stopped her remorseless hand, and with more discretion tendered her own safety. For by this time the balm wherewith she anointed his body, by wonderful operation, recovered the champion, insomuch, that after some few gasps and deadly sighs, he raised up his stiff limbs from the cold earth, where, like one cast into a trance, for a time he gazed up and down the mountain, but at last, having recovered his lost senses, espied the Thracian damsel standing by, not able to speak one word, her joy so abounded : but after some time he revealed to her the manner of his dangerous encounter, and successful victory ; and she the cause of his recovery, and her intended tragedy. Where, after many kind salutations, she courteously took him by the hand, and led him into the castle, where for that night she lodged his weary limbs in an easy bed stuffed with turtle feathers, and softest thistle down.

The noble-minded knight slept soundly after his dangerous battle, till golden Phœbus bade him good-morrow. Then rising out of his bed, he attired himself, not in his wonted habiliments of war, but in purple garments, and intended to overview the rarities of the castle : but the lady Rosalinde was busied in preparing delicacies for his repast, where, after he had refreshed himself, with a dainty banquet, he, by the advice of Rosalinde, stripped the giant from his iron furniture, and left his naked body upon a craggy

rock, to be devoured by hungry ravens, which being done, the Thracian virgin discovered all the castle to the adventurous champion. First she led him to a leaden tower, where hung a hundred well-approved corselets, with other martial furniture, which were the spoils of such knights as he had violently slain. After that, she brought him to a stable, wherein stood a hundred pampered jades, which daily fed upon human flesh ; against it was placed the giant's own lodging : his bed was of iron, corded with mighty bars of steel ; the tester, or covering, of carved brass ; the curtains were of leaves of gold ; and the rest of a strange and wonderful substance, of the colour of the element. After this, she led him to a broad pond of water, more clear than quicksilver, the streams whereof lay continually as smooth as crystal, whereon swam six milk-white swans, with crowns of gold about their necks.

" Oh here," said the Thracian lady, " begins the hell of all my grief !" At which words a shower of pearly tears ran from her eyes, that for a time they stayed the passage of her tongue. But having discharged her heart from a few sorrowful sighs, she began in this manner to tell her fore-passed fortunes :

" These six milk-white swans, most honourable knight, you behold swimming in this river," quoth the lady Rosalinde, " be my natural sisters, both by birth and blood, and all daughters to the king of Thrace, being now governor of this unhappy country ; and the beginning of our imprisonment began in this unfortunate manner :

" The king, my father, ordained a solemn hunting to be held through the land, in which honourable pastime myself, in company of my six sisters, was present. So in the middle of our sports, when the lords and barons of Thracia were in chase after a mighty she-lion, the heavens suddenly began to lour, the firmaments overcast, and a general darkness overspread the face of the whole earth : then presently arose such a storm of lightning and thunder, as though heaven and earth had met together ; by which our lordly troops of knights and barons were separated one from another, and we poor ladies, forced to seek for shelter under the bottom of this high mountain ; where when this cruel giant Blanderon espied us, as he walked upon his battlements, he suddenly descended the mountain, and fetched us

all under his arm up into the castle, where ever since we have lived in great servitude ; and for the wonderful transformation of my six sisters thus, it came to pass as followeth :

" Upon a time the giant, being overcharged with wine, grew enamoured with our beauties, and desired much to enjoy the pleasure of our virginities ; our excellent gifts of nature so inflamed his mind with lust, that he would have forced us every one to satisfy his sinful desires ; he took my six sisters, one by one, into his lodging, thinking to deflower them, but their earnest prayers so prevailed in the sight of God, that he preserved their chastities by a most strange and wonderful miracle, and turned their comely bodies into the shape of milk-white swans, in the same form as here you see them swimming. So when this monstrous giant saw that his intent was crossed, and how there was none left behind to supply his want, but my unfortunate self, he restrained his filthy lust, not violating my honour with any stain of infamy, but kept me ever since a most pure virgin, only with sweet inspiring music to bring him to his sleep.

" Thus have you heard, most noble knight, the true discourse of my most unhappy fortunes, and the wonderful transformation of my six sisters, whose loss to this day is greatly lamented throughout all Thracia." And with that word she made an end of her tragical discourse, not able to utter the rest for weeping. Whereat the knight, being oppressed then with like sorrow, embraced her about the slender waist, and thus kindly began to comfort her :

" Most dear and kind lady, within whose countenance I see how virtue is enthroned, and in whose mind lives true magnanimity, let these words suffice to comfort thy sorrowful thoughts. First, think that the heavens are most beneficial unto thee, in preserving thy chastity from the giant's insatiate desires ; secondly, for thy delivery by my means from the slavish servitude ; thirdly and lastly, that thou, remaining in thy natural shape and likeness, may live to be the means of thy sister's transformation ; therefore dry up these crystal-pearled tears, and bid thy long-continued sorrows adieu, for grief is companion with despair, and despair a procurer of infamous death."

Thus the woful Thracian lady was comforted by the noble Christian champion ; where, after a few kind greetings, *they intended to travel to her father's court, there to relate*

tented the weary travellers; but at last, coming to her father's gates, they heard a solemn sound of bells ringing the funeral knell of some noble state. The cause of which they demanded of the porter; who in this manner expressed the truth of the matter to them:

"Fair lady and most renowned knight," said the porter, "for so you seem both, by your speeches and honourable demands, the cause of this ringing is for the loss of the king's seven daughters, the number of which bells be seven, called after the names of the seven princesses, which never yet have ceased their doleful melody since the departure of the unhappy ladies, nor ever must until news be heard of their safe return."

"Then now their tasks are ended," said the noble-minded Rosalinde, "for we bring news of the seven princesses' abode." At which words the porter, being ravished with joy, in all haste ran to the steeple, and caused the bells to cease, whereat the king of Thracia, hearing the bells cease their wonted melody, suddenly started up from his princely seat, and like a man amazed ran to the palace-gate, whereat he found his daughter Rosalinde in company of a strange knight.

wear the weeds of death, more black in hue than darkest nights; and all the courtly ladies and galacian maidens, instead of silken vestments, he com- to wear both heavy, sad, and melancholy ornaments, as unto a solemn funeral, to attend him to the astle, and there obsequiously to offer up unto the estines many a bitter sigh and tear, in remembrance anaforned daughters; which decree of the sorrow- cian king was performed with all convenient speed; next morning, no sooner had Phœbus cast his beauty

king's bedchamber, but he apparelled himself in g garments, and in company of his melancholy t forward to his woful pilgrimage. But here we t forget the princely-minded champion of Italy, nor e-minded Rosalinde, who, at the king's departure the castle, craved leave to stay behind, and not so r to begin new travels; wherefore the king conde-, considering their late journey the evening before. g the castle keys from the champion, he bade his idieu, and committed his fortune to his sorrowful ; where we leave him in a world of discontented , and awhile discourse of what happened to the n champion and his beloved lady. For by that time had thrice measured the world with his restless nd thrice his sister Luna wandered to the west, the alian knight grew weary of his long-continued rest, red rather to abide in a court that entertained the nurmuring of tragedies, than where the joyful sound s and trumpets should be heard; therefore he took le by the hand, being then weeping for want of her o whom the noble knight in this manner expressed t intent:

most devoted lady and mistress," said the champion, id Dido for thy love, a stain to Venus for thy beauty, a's compare for constancy, and for chastity the won- l maids; the faithful love that hitherto I have found r arrival, for ever shall be shrined in my heart, and ll ladies under the cope of heaven thou shalt live my love's true goddess; and for thy sake I'll stand pion against all knights in the world; but to impair ar of my knighthood, and to live like a carpet-dancer of ladies, I will not; though I can tune a lute in

, constancy, beauty, and chastity, surpassing
e; and with this promise, my most divine Rosalinde, I
thee farewell." But before the honourable minded cham-
a could finish what he proposed to utter, the lady, being
inded inwardly with extreme grief, not able to endure to
p silent any longer, but with the tears falling from her
es, broke off his speech in this manner:

"Sir Knight," said she, "by whom my liberty hath been
tained, the name of lady and mistress, wherewith you en-
le me, is too high and proud a name; but rather call me
andmaid; for on thy noble person will I evermore attend.
is not Thrace can harbour me when thou art absent; and
efore I do forsake thy company and kind fellowship, hea-
en shall be no heaven, the sea no sea, nor the earth no
arth; but if thou provest unconstant, these tender hands of
ine shall never be unclasped, but hang on thy horse's
ridle, till my body, like Theseus's son, be dashed in sunder
against hard flinty stones: therefore forsake me not, dear
knight of Christendom. If ever Camina proved true to her
Sinatus, or Alstone to her lover, Rosalinde will be as true
to thee." So with this plighted promise she caught him fast
to her, and would not unclothe her hands



sat dandled upon Dido's lap, or rather Ganymede, Love's son, or Adonis, when Venus shewed her white skin to rap his eyes to her unchaste desires. But to be brief, all things being in readiness for their departure, this famous thy knight mounted on his eager steed, and Rosalinde her gentle palfrey, in pace more easy than the winged ds, or a cock-boat floating upon crystal streams, they bade adieu to the country of Thracia, and committed r journey to the queen of chance: therefore smile, heas, and guide them with a most happy star, until they ar: where their souls do most desire. The bravest and leat knight that ever wandered by the way, and the love-t lady that ever eye beheld.

n whose travels my Muse must leave them for a season, speak of the Thracian mourners, who by this time had ered the earth with abundance of their ceremonious tears, made the elements true witnesses of their sad lamenta-as, as hereafter followeth in this next chapter.

CHAP. VII.

w of the honourable adventures of St. Andrew, the fa-is champion of Scotland, must I discourse, whose seven rs' travels were as strange as any of the other champions'. after he had departed from the brazen pillar, as you rd in the beginning of the history, he travelled through ay strange and unknown nations, beyond the circuit of sun, where but one time in the year he shews his bright ms, but continual darkness overspreads the whole coun-, and there lives a kind of people that have heads like s, that in extremity of hunger do devour one another, n which people this noble champion was strangely deli-ed; where after he had wandered certain days, neither ng the gladsome brightness of the sun, nor the comfort- countenance of the moon, but only guided by the pla- of the elements, he happened to come to a vale of walk-spirits, which he supposed to be the very dungeon of aing Acheron; there he heard the blowing of unseen , boiling of furnaces, rattling of armour, trampling of s, jingling of chains, lumbering of iron, roaring of spi

rits, and such-like horrid noises, that it made the Scottish champion almost at his wit's end. But yet, having an undaunted courage, exempting all fear, he humbly made his supplication to heaven, that God would deliver him from that place of terror; and so presently, as the champion kneeled down upon the barren ground (whereon grew neither herb, flower, grass, nor any other green thing), he beheld a certain flame of fire walking up and down before him, at which he stood for a time amazed, whether it were best to go forward, or to stand still; but remembering himself how he had read in former times of a going fire, called *Jack Fatuus*, the fire of destiny; by some, *Will with the Whip*, or *Jack with the Lantern*; and likewise, by some simple country people, *The Fair Maid of Ireland*, which commonly used to lead wandering travellers out of their way; the like imaginations entered into the champion's mind. So encouraging himself with his own conceits, and cheering up his dull senses, late oppressed with extreme fear, he directly followed the going fire, which so justly went before him, that by that time the guider of the night had obtained twelve degrees in the zodiac, he was safely delivered from the vale of walking spirits, by the direction of the going fire.

Now began the sun to dance about the firmament, which he had not seen in many months before; whereat his dull senses much rejoiced, being long covered before with darkness at every step he trod, was as pleasurable as though he walked in a garden bedecked with all kinds of fragrant flowers.

At last, without any farther molestation, he arrived within the territories of Thracia, a country, as you have heard in the former chapter, adorned with the beauty of many fair woods and forests, through which he travelled with small rest, and less sleep, till he came to the foot of the mountains, whereupon stood the castle wherein the woful king of Thracia, in company of his sorrowful subjects, still lamented the unhappy destinies of his six daughters turned into swans, having crowns of gold about their necks. When the valiant champion St. Andrew beheld the lofty situation of the castle, and the invincible strength it seemed to be of, he expected some strange adventure to befall him in the said castle, so preparing his sword in readiness, and buckling close his armour, which was a shirt of silver mail, for lightness in the



val, he climbed the mountain, whereupon he espied the giant lying upon a craggy rock, with his limbs and members all rent and torn, by the fury of hunger-starved fowls ; which hideous spectacle was no little wonder to the worthy champion, considering the mighty stature and bigness of the giant. Where, leaving his patresied body to the winds, he approached the gates ; where, after he had read the superscription over the same, without any interruption entered the castle, whence he expected a fierce encounter, by some knight that should have defended the same ; but all things fell out contrary to his imagination ; for after he had found many a strange novelty and hidden secret closed in the same, he chanced at last to come where the Thracians duly observed their ceremonious mournings, which in this order were daily performed : first, upon Sundays, which in that country, is the first day in the week, all the Thracians attired themselves after the manner of Bacchus's priests, and burned perfumed incense, with sweet Arabian frankincense, upon a religious shrine, which they offered to the sun as chief governor of that day, thinking thereby to appease the angry destinies, and to recover the unhappy ladies to their former shapes ; upon Mondays, clad in garments after the manner of Sylvana, a colour like to the waves of the sea, they offered up their tears to the moon, being the guider and mistress of that day ; upon Tuesdays, like soldiers, trailing their banners in the dust, and drums sounding sad and doleful melody, in sign of discontent, they committed their proceedings to the pleasures of Mars, being ruler and guider of that day ; upon Wednesdays, like scholars, unto Mercury ; upon Thursdays, like potentates, to Love ; upon Fridays, like lovers, with sweet-sounding music to Venus ; and upon Saturdays, like manual professors, to the angry and discontented Saturn.

Thus the woful Thracian king, and his sorrowful subjects, consumed seven months away, one while accusing Fortune of despite, another while the Heavens of injustice ; the one for his children's transformations, the other for their long-looked punishments. But at last, when the Scottish champion heard what bitter moan the Thracians made about the river, he demanded the cause, and to what purpose they observed such ceremonies, contemning the majesty of Jehovah. and only worshipping but outward and vain gods. To whom

the king, after a few sad tears, strained from the conduit of his aged eyes, replied in this manner :

"Most noble knight, for so you seem by your gesture and other outward appearance," said the king, "if you desire to know the cause of our continual griefs, prepare your ears to hear a tragical and woful tale, whereat methinks I see the elements begin to mourn, and cover their azured countenance with sable clouds. These milk-white swans you see, whose necks are beautified with golden crowns, are my six natural daughters, transformed into this swan-like substance, by the appointment of the gods ; for of late this castle was kept by a cruel giant, named Blanderon, who by violence would have ravished them, but the heavens, to preserve their chastities, prevented his lustful desires, and transformed their beautiful bodies to these milk-white swans. And now seven years the cheerful spring hath renewed the earth with her summer's livery, and seven times the nipping winter frost have bereaved the trees of leaf and bud, since first my daughters lost their virgin shapes ; seven summers have they swam upon this crystal stream, where, instead of rich attire, and embroidered vestments, their smooth silver-coloured feathers adorn their comely bodies ; princely palaces, wherein they were wont, like tripping sea-nymphs, to dance their measures up and down, are now exchanged into cold streams of water, wherein their chiefest melody is the murmuring of cold liquid bubbles, and their joyful pleasure to hear the harmony of humming bees, which some poets call the Muses' birds.

"Thus have you heard (most worthy knight) the woful tragedy of my daughters, for whose sakes I will spend the remnant of my days heavily, complaining of their long-appointed punishments, about the banks of this unhappy river." Which sad discourse was no sooner ended, but the Scottish knight thus replied, to the comfort and great rejoicing of the company :

"Most noble king," said the champion, "your heavy and dolorous discourse hath constrained my heart to a wonderful passion, and compelled my very soul to rue your daughters' miseries : but yet a greater grief and deeper sorrow than *that hath taken possession of my breast, whereof my eyes have been witnesses*, and my ears unhappy hearers of your *misbelief ; I mean your unchristian faith* : for I have seen



since my first arrival into this same castle, your profane and vain worship of strange and false gods, as of Phœbus, Luna, Mars, Mercury, and such-like poetical names, which the majesty of high Jehovah utterly contemns. But, magnificent governor of Thracia, if you seek to recover your daughters by humble prayer, and to obtain your soul's content by true tears, you must abandon all such vain ceremonies, and with true humility believe in the Christian's God, which is the God of wonders, and chief commander of the rolling elements, in whose quarrel this unconquered arm and this undaunted heart of mine shall fight: and now, be it known to thee, great king of Thrace, that I am a Christian champion, by birth a knight of Scotland, bearing my country's arms upon my breast (for indeed thereon he bore a silver cross, set in blue silk); and therefore, in the honour of Christendom, I challenge forth the proudest knight at arms, against whom I will maintain that our God is the true God, and the rest fantastical and vain ceremonies."

Which sudden and unexpected challenge so daunted the Thracian champions, that they stood amazed for a time, gazing upon one another, like men dropt from the clouds: but at last, consulting together how the challenge of the strange knight was to the dishonour of their country, and utter scandal of all knightly dignity, they with a general consent craved leave of the king that the challenge might be taken, who as willingly condescended as they demanded.

So both time and place was appointed, which was the next morning following, by the king's commandment, upon a large and plain meadow close by the river side, whereon the six swans were swimming; whereupon, after the Christian champion had cast down his steely gauntlet, and the Thracian knights accepted thereof, every one departed for that night, the challenger to the east side of the castle to his lodging, and the defendants to the west, where they slept quietly till the next morning, who, by the break of day, were awakened by a herald of arms. But all the past night our Scottish champion never entertained one motion of rest, but busied himself in trimming his horse, buckling on his armour, lacing on his burgonet, and making prayers to the divine majesty of God, for the conquest and victory, till the *morning's beauty* chased away the darkness of the night: and no sooner were the windows of the day full opened, by

the valiant champion of Christendom entered the lists, when the king, in company of the Thracian lords, was present to behold the combat; and so after St. Andrew had twice thrice traced his horse up and down the lists, bravely flourishing his lance, at the top whereof hung a pendant of gold whose posey was thus written in silver letters—"This day a martyr or a conqueror;" then entered a knight in exceeding bright armour, mounted upon a courser as white as the northern snow, whose caparison was of the colour of the elements; betwixt whom was a fierce encounter, but the Thracian had the foil, and with disgrace departed the list. Then secondly entered another knight in armour, varnished with green varnish, his steed of the colour of an iron gray who likewise had the repulse by the worthy Christian. Thirdly entered a knight in a black corselet, mounted upon a big boned palfrey, covered with a veil of sable silk; in his hand he bore a lance nailed round about with plates of steel, which knight among the Thracians was accounted the strongest in the world, except it were those giants that descended from a monstrous lineage; but no sooner encountered these hardy champions, but their lances shivered in sunder, and flew so violently into the air, that it much amazed the beholders: then they alighted from their steeds, and so valiantly bestirred them with their keen falchions, that the fiery sparkles flew so fierce from these noble champions' steel helmets, as from an iron anvil: but the combat endured not very long, before the most hardy Scottish knight espied an advantage wherein he might shew his matchless fortitude, whereupon he struck such a mighty blow upon the Thracian's burgonet, that it cleaved his head just down to his shoulders; whereat the king suddenly started from his seat and with a wrathful countenance threatened the champion's death in this manner:

"Proud Christian," said the king, "thou shalt repent this death, and curse the time that ever thou camest to Thrace; his blood we will revenge upon thy head, and quit thy committed cruelty with a sudden death:" and so, in company of a hundred armed knights, he encompassed the Scottish champion, intending by multitudes to murder him when the valiant knight St. Andrew saw how he *pressed by treachery, and environed with might, called to heaven for succour, and animated hi*

ds of encouragement—"Now for the honour of Christendom, this day a martyr or a conqueror;" and therewithal so valiantly behaved himself with his cuttle-axe, that he made lanes of murdered men, and felled them down by multitudes, like as the harvest-men do mow down ears of ripened corn, whereby they fell before his face like leaves from trees, when the summer's pride declines her glory. So at last, after much bloodshed, the Thracian king was compelled to yield to the Scottish champion's mercy, who swore him, for the safety of his life, to forsake his profane religion, and become a Christian, whose living true God the Thracian king vowed for evermore to worship, and thereupon he kissed the champion's sword.

This conversion of the Pagan king so pleased the majesty of God, that he presently gave end to his daughters' punishments, and turned the ladies to their former shapes. But when the king beheld their smooth feathers, which were as white as lilies, exchanged to natural fairness, and that their black bills and slender necks were converted to their first created beauty, he bade adieu to his grief and long continued sorrows, protesting ever after to continue a true Christian for the Scottish champion's sake, by whose divine orisons his daughters obtained their former features. So taking the Christian knight, in company of the six ladies, to an excellent rich chamber, prepared with all things according to their wishes, where first the Christian knight was unarmed, then his wounds washed with white wine, new milk, and rose water, and so, after some dainty repast, conveyed to his night's repose. The ladies being the joyfullest creatures under heaven, never entertained one thought of sleep, but passed the night in their father's company, till the morning messengers bade them good morrow.

Thus all things being prepared in a readiness, they departed the castle, in triumphing manner, marching back to the Thracian palace, with streaming banners in the wind, drums and trumpets sounding joyful melody, and with sweet inspiring music caused the air to resound with harmony. But no sooner were they entered the palace, which was in distance from the giant's castle about ten miles but their triumphs turned to exceeding sorrow, for Rosalinde, with the champion of Italy, as you have heard before was departed the court; which unexpected news so drew

the whole company, but especially the king, that the triumphs for that time were deferred, and messengers were dispatched in pursuit of the adventurous Italian and lovely Rosalinde.

Likewise when St. Andrew of Scotland had intelligence how it was one of those knights which was imprisoned with him under the wicked enchantress-Kalyb, as you heard in the beginning of the history, his heart thirsted for his most honourable company, and his eyes seldom closed quietly nor took any rest, until he was likewise departed in the pursuit of his sworn friend, which was the next night following without making any acquainted with his intent. Likewise when the six ladies understood the secret departure of the Scottish champion, whom they affected dearer than any knight in the world, they stored themselves with sufficient treasure, and by stealth took their journeys from their father's palace, intending either to find out the victorious and approved knight of Scotland, or to end their lives in some foreign region.

The rumour of whose departure no sooner came to the king's ears, but he purposed the like travel, either to obtain the sight of his daughters again, or to make his tomb beyond the circuit of the sun: so attiring himself in homely russet like a pilgrim, with an ebon staff in his hand, tipped with silver, took his journey all unknown from his palace. Whose sudden and secret departure struck such an extreme intolerable heaviness in the court, that the palace gates were sealed up with sable mourning cloth, the Thracian lord exempted all pleasure, and like flocks of sheep strayed up and down without shepherds, and ladies and courtly gentlemen sate sighing in their private chambers; where we leave them for this time, and speak of the success of the other champions.

CHAP. VIII.

BUT now of that valiant knight at arms, St. Patrick champion of Ireland, must I speak, whose adventures were so nobly performed, that if my pen were of steel, I should wear it out to declare his *worthy adventures*. When he departed from *pillar, from the other champions, the heav*

spect, and sent him such a star to be his guide, that
 du to no courtly pleasures, nor to vain delights, but
 throne of Fame, where Honour sate installed upon a
 of gold. Thither travelled the warlike champion of
 land, whose illustrious battles the northern isles have
 arched in leaves of brass. Therefore Ireland, be proud,
 far from thy bowels did spring a champion, whose prowess
 made the enemies of Christ to tremble, and watered the
 earth with streams of Pagans' blood; witness whereof the
 isle of Rhodes, the key and strength of Christendom, was
 recovered from the Turks by his martial and invincible
 prowess; where his dangerous battles, fierce encounters,
 bloody skirmishes, and long assaults, would serve to fill a
 mighty volume, all which I pass over, and wholly discourse
 of things appertaining to this history. For after the wars of
 Rhodes were fully ended, St. Patrick (accounting idle ease
 the nurse of cowardice) bade Rhodes farewell, being then
 strongly fortified with Christian soldiers, and took his jour-
 ney through many an unknown country, where at last it
 pleased so the queen of chance to direct his steps into a so-
 litary wilderness, inhabited only by wild Satyrs, and a
 people of inhuman qualities, giving their wicked minds only
 to murder, lust, and rapine; wherein the noble champion
 travelled up and down many a weary step, not knowing how
 to qualify his hunger, but by his own industry in killing of
 venison, and pressing out the blood between two flat stones,
 and daily roasting it by the sun: his lodging was in the
 hollow trunk of a blasted tree, which nightly preserved him
 from the dropping showers of heaven; his chief companions
 were sweet resounding echoes, which commonly reanswered
 the champion's words.

In this manner lived St. Patrick the Irish knight, in the
 woods, not knowing how to set himself at liberty, but wan-
 dering up and down, as it were in a maze wrought by the
 curious workmanship of some excellent gardener. It was
 his chance at last to come into a dismal shady thicket, beset
 about with baleful misletoe, a place of horror, wherein he
 heard the cries of some distressed ladies, whose bitter lamen-
 tations seemed to pierce the clouds, and to crave succour of
 the hands of God, which unexpected cries not a little daunted
 the Irish knight, so that it caused him to prepare his wea-
 pon against some sudden encounter; so crouching himself

under the root of an old withered oak (which had not ~~flow~~ rished with green leaves many a year), he espied afar off a crew of bloody-minded Satyrs, hauling by the hair of the head six unhappy ladies, through many a thorny brake and briar; which woful spectacle forced such a terror in the heart of the Irish knight, that he presently made out for the rescue of the ladies, to redeem them from the fury of the merciless Satyrs, which were in number about thirty, every one having a club upon his neck, which they had made of the roots of young oaks and pine trees; yet this adventurous champion being nothing discouraged, but with a bold and resolute mind, let drive at the sturdiest Satyr, whose armour of defence was made of a bull's-hide, which was dried so hard against the sun, that the champion's cuttle-ax prevailed not; after which the fell Satyrs encompassed the Christian knight round about, and so mightily oppress him with downright blows, that had he not by good fortune leapt under the boughs of a spreading tree, his life had been forced to give the world a speedy farewell. But such was his nimbleness and active policy, that ere long he sheathed his sharp-pointed falchion in one of the Satyr's breasts; which woful sight caused all the rest to fly from his presence, and left the six ladies to the pleasure and disposition of the most noble and courageous Christian champion; who, after he had sufficiently breathed, and cooled himself in the chill air (being almost windless, through the long encounter and blood-skirmish), he demanded the cause of the ladies' travels, and by what means they happened into the hands of those merciless Satyrs, who cruelly and tyrannically attempted ruin and endless spoil of their unspotted virginities. To which courteous demand, one of the ladies, after a deft fetched sigh or two (being strained from the bottom of sorrowful heart), in the behalf of herself and the other distressed ladies, replied in this order.

"Know, brave-minded knight, that we are the unfortunate daughters of the king of Thrace, whose lives been unhappy ever since our births; for first we endured a long imprisonment under the hands of a cruel and after, the heavens, to preserve our chastities from *wicked desire of the said giant, transformed us in shape of swans, in which likeness we remained several* but at last recovered by a worthy Christian knight



St. Andrew, the champion of Scotland; after whom we have travelled many a weary step, never crossed by any violence, until it was our angry fates to arrive in this unhappy wilderness, where your eyes have been true witnesses to our misfortunes."

Which sad discourse was no sooner finished, but the worthy champion thus began to comfort the distressed ladies :

"The Christian champion after whom you take in hand this weary travel," said the Irish champion, "is my approved friend, for whose company and wished-for sight I will go more weary miles than there be trees in this vast wilderness : therefore, most excellent ladies, true ornaments of beauty, be sad companions in my travels; for I will never cease till I have found our honourable friend, the champion of Scotland, or some of those brave knights, whom I have not seen these seven summers."

These words so contented the sorrowful ladies, that without any exception they agreed, and with as much willingness consented as the champion demanded. So after they had recreated themselves, eased their weariness, and cured their wounds, which was by the secret virtues of certain herbs growing in the same woods, they took their journey anew, under the conduct of this worthy champion St. Patrick; where, after some days' travel, they obtained the sight of a broad beaten way, where, committing their fortunes to the fatal sisters, and setting their faces towards the east, they merrily journeyed together. In whose fortunate travels we will leave them, and speak of the seventh Christian champion, whose adventurous exploits, and knightly honours, deserve a golden pen, dipped in ink of true fame, to discourse at large.

CHAP. IX.

ST. DAVID, the most noble champion of Wales, after his departure from the brazen pillar, whereat the other champions of Christendom divided themselves severally to seek their foreign adventures, he achieved many memorable things, as well in Christendom, as in those nations that acknowledged no true God; which as for this time I omit, and only discourse what happened unto him among the Tar-

tarians; for being in the emperor of Tartary's court (a place very much honoured with valorous knights, highly graced with a train of beautiful ladies), where the emperor upon a time ordained a solemn joust and tournament to be holden in honour of his birth-day. Whither resorted at the time appointed (from all the borders of Tartary) the best and the hardest knights there remaining. In which honourable and princely exercise, the noble knight St. David was appointed champion for the emperor, who was mounted upon a Morocco steed, betrapped in a rich caparison, wrought by the curious work of Indian women, upon whose shield was set a golden griffin rampant in a field of blue.

Against him came the Count Palatine, son and heir apparent to the Tartarian emperor, brought in by twelve knights, richly furnished with habiliments of honour, who paced three times about the lists before the emperor and many ladies that were present to behold the honourable tournament; which being done, the twelve knights departed the lists, and the Count Palatine prepared himself to encounter with the Christian knight (being appointed chief champion for the day), who likewise prepared himself, and at the trumpet's sound, by the herald's appointment, they ran so fiercely against each other, that the ground seemed to shake under them, and the skies to resound echoes of their mighty strokes.

At the second race the champions ran, St. David had the worst, and was constrained, through the forcible strength of the Count Palatine, to lean backward, almost beside his saddle, whereat the trumpets began to sound in sign of victory. But yet the valiant Christian, nothing dismayed, with courage ran the third time against the Count Palatine, and by the violence of his strength, he overthrew both horse and man, whereby the count's body was so extremely bruised with the fall of his horse, that his heart's blood issued forth by his mouth, and his vital spirits pressed from the mansion of his breast, so that he was forced to give the world farewell.

This fatal overthrow of the Count Palatine abashed the whole company, but especially the Tartarian emperor who having no more sons but him, caused the lists to be broken up, the knights to be unarmed, and the murdered count to be brought, by four esquires, into his palace; where, after

he was despoiled of his furniture, and the Christian knight received in honour of his victory, the woful emperor bathed his son's body with tears, which dropped like crystal pearls from the congealed blood, and after many sad sighs he breathed forth this woful lamentation :

"Now are my triumphs turned into everlasting woes, from a pleasant pastime to a direful and bloody tragedy. O most unkind Fortune, never constant but in change ! why is my life deferred to see the downfall of my dear son, the noble Count Palatine ? Why rends not this accursed earth whereon I stand, and presently swallow up my body into her hungry bowels ? Is this the use of Christians, for true honour to repay dishonour ? Could not base blood serve to stain his deadly hands withal, but the royal blood of my dear son, in whose revenge the face of the heavens is stained with blood, and cries for vengeance to the majesty of mighty Jove. The dreadful Furies, the direful daughters of dark Night, and all the baleful company of burning Acheron, whose loins shall be girt with serpents, and hair be hanged with wreathes of snakes, shall haunt, pursue, and follow that cursed Christian champion, that hath bereaved my country Tartary of so precious a jewel as my dear son the Count Palatine was, whose magnanimous prowess did surpass all the knights of our realm."

Thus sorrowed the woful emperor for the death of his noble son ; sometimes making the echoes of his lamentations pierce the elements ; another while forcing his bitter curses to sink to the deep foundations of Acheron ; one while intending to be revenged on St. David, the Christian champion ; then presently his intent was crossed with a contrary imagination, thinking it was against the law of arms, and a great dishonour to his country, by violence to oppress a strange knight, whose actions had ever been guided by true honour : but yet at last this firm resolution entered his mind.

There was adjoining, upon the borders of Tartary, an enchanted garden, kept by magic art, from whence never any returned that attempted to enter ; the governor of which garden was a notable and famous necromancer, named Ormandine, to which magician the Tartarian emperor intended to send the adventurous champion St. David, thereby to *revenge the Count Palatine's death*. So the emperor, after *some days passed*, and the obsequies of his son being no

hast repaid with great mag-
nanimity, in acting my dear son's tragedy ; for which
deed thou rightly hast deserved death ; but yet
cursed Christian, that mercy harboureth in prince
and where honour sits enthronised, there justice
severe : although thou hast deserved death, yet if
adventure to the enchanted garden, and bring hithe-
re the glaucian's head, I grant thee not only life, but there
crown of Tartary after my decease, because I see
a mind furnished with all princely thoughts, and
with true magnanimity."

This heavy task and strange adventure not a little
troubled the noble champion of Wales, whose mind ever
after worthy adventures ; and so, after some con-
sideration, in this manner replied :

" Most high and magnificent emperor," said
the champion, " were this task, which you enjoin me to, as
great as the labours of Hercules, or as fearful as the
which Jason made for the golden fleece, yet would
I finish it, and return with triumph to Tartary
if the cedonian monarch did to Babylon, when he ha-
ving conquered the wide world." Which words were



encircled with a hedge of withered thorns and briers, which seemed continually to burn ; upon the top thereof sat a number of strange and deformed things, some in the likeness of night-owls, which wondered at the presence of St. David ; some in the shape of Progne's transformation, foretelling his unfortunate success ; and some like ravens, that with their harsh throats ring forth hateful knells of woful tragedies. The element, which covered the enchanted garden, seemed to be overspread with misty clouds, from whence continually shot flames of fire, as though the skies had been filled with blazing comets ; which fearful spectacle, as it seemed the very pattern of hell, struck such a terror into the champion's heart, that twice he was in the mind to return without performing the adventure, but for his oath and honour of knighthood, which he had pawned for the accomplishment thereof. So laying his body on the cold earth, he made his humble petition to God, that his mind might never be oppressed with cowardice, nor his heart daunted with faint fears, till he had performed what the Tartarian emperor had bound him to ; the champion rose from the ground, and with cheerful looks beheld the elements, which seemed in his conceit to smile at the enterprise, and to foreshow a lucky event.

So the noble knight St. David, with a valiant courage, went to the garden gate, by which stood a rock of stone, overspread with moss : in which rock by magic art was enclosed a sword, nothing outwardly appearing but the hilt, which was the richest, in his judgment, that ever his eyes beheld, for the steel-work was engraven very curiously, beset with jaspers and sapphire-stones ; the pommel was in the fashion of a globe, of the purest silver that the mines of rich America brought forth. About the pommel was engraven with letters of gold these verses following :

My magic spells remain most firmly bound,
The world's strange wonder unknown by any one,
Till that a knight within the north be found,
To pull this sword from out this rock of stone :
Then ends my charms, my magic arts and all,
By whose strong hand wise Ormandine must fall.

These verses drove such a conceited imagination into the champion's mind, that he supposed himself to be the northern

knight by whom the necromancer should be conquered; therefore, without any farther delays, he put his hand into the hilt of the rich sword, thinking presently to pull it out from the enchanted rock of Ormandine: but no sooner did he attempt that vain enterprise, but his senses were overtaken with a sudden and heavy sleep, whereby he was forced to let go his hold, and to fall flat upon the ground, where his senses were drowned in such a dead slumber, that it was as much impossible to recover himself from sleep, as to pull the sun out of the firmament. The necromancer, by his magic skill, had intelligence of the champion's unfortunate success, who sent from the enchanted garden four spirits, in the similitude and likeness of four beautiful damsels, which wrapped the drowsy champion in a sheet of fine Arabian silk, and conveyed him into a cave, directly placed in the middle of the garden, where they laid him upon a bed, which was softer than the down of culvers: where those beautiful ladies, through the art of wicked Ormandine, continually kept him sleeping for the term of seven years.

Thus was St. David's adventure crossed with a bad success; whose day's travels was turned into a night's repose, whose night's repose was made a heavy sleep, which endured until seven years was fully finished: where we will leave St. David to the mercy of the necromancer Ormandine, and return to the most noble and maguanimous champion St. George, where we left him imprisoned in the soldan's court.

CHAP. X.

NOW seven times had frosty-bearded Winter covered both herbs and flowers with snow, and behung the trees with crystal icicles, since the unfortunate St. George beheld the cheerful light of heaven, but lived obscure in a dismal dungeon, by the soldan of Persia's commandment, as you heard before in the beginning of the history. His unhappy fortune so discontented his restless thoughts, that a thousand times a year he wished an end of his life, and a thousand times *he cursed the day of his creation.*

But at last, when seven years were ended, it was th

champion's lucky fortune to find, in a secret corner of the dungeon, a certain iron engine, which time had almost consumed with rust, where, with long labour, he digged himself a passage through the ground, till he ascended just in the middle of the soldan's court, which was at that time of the night when all things were silent. The heavens he then beheld beautified with stars, and bright Cynthia, whose glittering beams he had not seen in many hundred nights before, seemed to smile at his safe delivery, and to stay her wandering courses, till he most happily found means to get without the compass of the Persian court, where danger might no longer attend him, nor the strong gates of the city hinder his flight, which in this manner was performed. For now the noble knight, being as fearful as the bird newly escaped from the fowler's net, gazed about, and listened where he might hear the voice of people : at last he heard the grooms of the soldan's stable, furnishing forth horses against the next morning for some noble achievement. Whereupon the noble champion St. George, taking the iron engine, wherewith he redeemed himself out of prison, he burst open the doors, where he slew all the grooms in the soldan's stable ; which being done, he took the strongest palfrey, and the richest furniture, with other necessities appertaining to a knight at arms, and so rode in great comfort to one of the city gates, where he saluted the porter in this manner :

" Porter, open the gates, for St. George of England is escaped, and hath murdered the grooms, in whose pursuit the city is in arms." Which words the simple Persian believed for truth, and so with all speed opened the gates ; whereat the champion of England departed, and left the soldan in his dead sleep, little mistrusting his sudden escape.

But by that time the purple-spotted morning had parted with her grey, and the sun's bright countenance appeared on the mountain tops, St. George had rode twenty miles from the Persian court ; and before his departure was known in the soldan's palace, the English champion had recovered the sight of Grecia, past all danger of the Persian knights that followed him with a swift pursuit.

By this time the extremity of hunger so sharply tormented him, that he could travel no farther, but was con-

strained to sustain himself with certain wild cherries instead of bread, and sour oranges instead of drink, and such faint food as grew by the way as he travelled, where the necessity and want of victuals compelled the noble knight to breathe forth this pitiful complaint :

" Oh hunger ! hunger ! " said the champion, " sharper than the stroke of death, thou art the extremest punishment that ever man endured. If I were now king of Armenia, and chief potentate of Asia, yet would I give my diadem, my sceptre, with all my provinces, for one piece of brown bread. O that this earth would be so kind, as to open her bowels and cast up some food, to suffice my want ; or that the air might be choked with mists, whereby feathered fowl for want of breath might fall, and yield me some succour in this my famishment ; but oh ! now I see both heaven and earth, hills and dales, skies and seas, fish and fowl, birds and beasts, and all things under the cope of heaven, conspire my utter overthrow ; better had it been if I had ended my days in Persia, than here to be famished in the broad world, where all things by nature's appointment are ordained for man's use. Now, instead of courtly delicacies, I am forced to eat the fruit of trees—and instead of Greekish wines, I am compelled to quench my thirst with morning dew, which nightly falls upon the blades of grass."

Thus complained St. George, till glittering Phœbus had mounted the top of heaven, and drawn the misty vapours from the ground, whereby he might behold the prospects of Grecia, and which way to travel most safely. And as he looked, he espied directly before his face a tower stand upon a chalky cliff, distant from him about three miles, whither the champion intended to go, not to seek for adventures, but to rest himself after his weary journey, and get such victuals as therein he could find to suffice his want.

The way he found so plain, and the journey so easy, that in half an hour he approached before the said tower ; where upon the wall stood a most beautiful woman, attired after the manner of a distressed lady, and her looks heavy, like the queen of Troy when she beheld her palace on fire. The valiant knight St. George, after he had alighted from his horse, gave her this courteous salutation :

" Lady," said he, " for so you seem by your outward

appearance, if ever you pitied a traveller, or granted succour to a Christian knight, give to me one meal's meat, now almost finished."

To whom the lady, after a sad frown or two, answered in this order: "Sir knight," quoth she, "I advise thee with all speed to depart, for here thou gettest but a cold dinner: my lord is a mighty giant, and believeth in Mahomet; and if he once do but understand that thou art a Christian knight, not all the gold of Higher India, nor the riches of wealthy Babylon, can preserve thy life." "Now, by the honour of my knighthood," replied St. George, "assisted by the God that Christendom adores, were thy lord stronger than mighty Hercules that bore mountains on his back, here will I either obtain my dinner, or die by his accursed hand."

These words so abashed the lady, that she went with all speed from the tower, and told the giant, how a Christian knight remained at the gate, who had sworn to suffice his hunger in despite of his will. Whereat the furious giant suddenly started up, being as then in a sound sleep, for it was the middle of the day, who took a bar of iron in his hand, and came down to the tower-gate. His stature was in height five yards, his head bristled like a boar, a foot there was betwixt each brow, his eyes hollow, his mouth wide, his lips were like two flaps of steel, in all his proportion more like a devil than a man. Which deformed monster so daunted the courage of St. George, that he prepared himself for death, not through fear of the monstrous giant, but for hunger and feebleness of body. But here God provided for him, and so restored to him his decayed strength, that he endured battle until the closing up of the evening, by which time the giant grew almost blind, through the sweat that ran down from his monstrous brows; whereat St. George got the advantage, and wounded the giant so cruelly under the short-ribs, that he was compelled to fall to the ground, and to give end to his life.

After which happy event, St. George first gave the honour of his victory unto God, in whose power all his fortune consisted. Then entered the tower, whereat the lady presented him with all manner of delicacies and pure wines; but the English knight, suspecting treachery to be hidden in her proffered courtesy, caused her to taste of every dish

likewise of his wine, lest some violent poison should therein mixed: finding all things pure and wholesome, nature required, he sufficed his hunger, rested his wearied body, and refreshed his horse.

And so leaving the tower in keeping of the lady, he committed his fortune to a new travel; where his revived spirit never entertained longer rest, but to the refreshing himself and his horse: so travelled he through part of Grecia, the confines of Phrygia, and into the borders of Tartary, with in whose territories he had not long journeyed, but he approached the sight of the enchanted garden of Ormandine where St. David the champion of Wales had so long slept by magic art. But no sooner did he behold the wonderful situation thereof, but he espied Ormandine's sword enclosed in the enchanted rock; where, after he had read the superscription written about the pommel, he essayed to pull out by strength; and he no sooner put his hand upon the hilt, but he drew it forth with much ease, as though it had been hung by a thread of untwisted silk: but when he beheld the glittering brightness of the blade, and the wonderful richness of the pommel, he accounted the prize more worth than the armour of Achilles, which caused Ajax to run mad, and much richer than Medea's golden fleece. But by that time St. George had circumspectly looked into every secret of the sword, he heard a strange and dismal voice thunder in the skies, a terrible and mighty lumbering in the earth, whereat both hills and mountains shook, rocks removed, and oaks rent into pieces.

After this, the gates of the enchanted garden flew open whereat incontinently came forth Ormandine the magician with his hair staring on his head, his eyes sparkling, his cheeks blushing, his hands quivering, his legs trembling and all the rest of his body distempered, as though legion of spirits had encompassed him about: he came directly to the worthy English knight, that remained still by the enchanted rock, from whence he had pulled the magician's sword; he took the most valiant and magnanimous champion St. George of England by the steely gauntlet, and with great humility kissed it: then proffering him the courtesy due unto strangers, which was performed very graciously, he afterward conducted him into the enchanted garden, to the cave where the champion of Wales was



four virgins singing delightful songs, and after
a chair of ebony, Ormandine thus began to re-
derful things:

med knight at arms," said the necromancer,
worthiest champion, whose strange adventures all
in time to come shall applaud; be silent till I
my tale, for never after this must my tongue
n. The knight which thou seest here wrapt in this
old, is a Christian champion, as thou art, sprung
ancient seed of Trojan warriors, who likewise at-
draw this enchanted sword, but my magic spells
ed, that he was intercepted in the enterprise, and
r since to remain sleeping in this cave. But now
almost come of his recovery, which by thee must
plished. Thou art that adventurous champion
incible hand must finish up my detested life, and
eeting soul to draw thy fatal chariot on the banks

Acheron; for my time was limited to remain no
his enchanted garden, but till that from the north
ne a knight that should pull this sword from the
rock, which thou happily hast now performed;
I know my time is short, and my hour of destiny
What I report, write in brazen lines, for the time
when this discourse shall highly benefit thee.
thou observe three things: first, That thou take
pure maid; next, That thou erect a monument
ather's grave; and lastly, That thou continue a
nemy to the foes of Jesus Christ, bearing arms in
and praise of thy country. These things being
justly observed, thou shalt attain such honour,
ingdoms of Christendom shall admire thy dig-
at I speak is upon no vain imagination, sprung
antic brain, but pronounced by this mystical and
'necromancy."

ords were no sooner ended, but the most honour-
ate champion of England requested the magician
his passed fortunes, and by what means he came
rrior of the enchanted garden.

I the discourse of my own life," replied Orman-
I breed a new sorrow in my heart, the remem-
which will rend my very soul. But yet, most
; to fulfil thy request, I will force my tongue to

Necromancer
dren.

‘ I WAS in former time king of Scythia, my name Orndine, graced in my youth with two fair daughters, whose nature had not only made beautiful, but replenished them with all gifts that art could devise. The elder, whose name was Castria, the fairest maid that ever Scythia brought forth; among the number of knights that were insnared by her love, there was one Floridon, son to the king of Armenia, equal to her in all ornaments of nature; a loving couple never trod on earth, or graced any prince’s court the whole world.

“ This Floridon so fervently burned in affection with admired Castria, that he lusted after her virginity, and tempted both by policy and fair promises to enjoy her, and after fell to his own destruction. For upon a time, when the mantles of dark night had closed in the light of heaven, Floridon entered Castria’s lodging, furthered by her fairer maid, where, to her hard hap, he cropped the bud of sweet virginity, and left such a pledge within her that before many days expired, her shame began to tell. And he was constrained to reveal his



What! knows not Floridon,' quoth the lady, 'her
his lust hath stained with dishonour? See, see, uncon-
knight, the pledge of faithful vows, behold the womb
springs thy lively image; behold this mark which
my father's ancient house, and sets a shame-faced
upon my cheeks, always when I behold the company
of virgins. Dear Floridon, shadow my shame with
age rites, that I be not accounted a by-word to the
ner that this my babe, in time to come, be termed a
own child. Remember what plighted promises, what
and protestations, passed betwixt us; remember the
and time of my dishonour, and be not like furious
that repay love with despite.'

At which words Floridon, with a wrathful countenance,
said in these words:

Shameless creature, with what brazen face darest thou
sue me thus: I tell thee, Castria, my love was ever
follow arms, to hear the sound of drums, to ride upon
ble steed, and not to trace a carpet dance, like Priam's
sfore the lustful eyes of Menelaus's wife. Therefore
s, disturbing strumpet; go sing thy harsh melody in
any of night birds, for I tell thee the day will blush to
thy monstrous shame.'

Which reproachful speeches being no sooner ended, but
he departed her presence, not leaving behind him so
as a kind look. Whereat the distressed lady, being
saddened with intolerable grief, sunk down, not able to
for a time, but at last, recovering her senses, she be-
gan to complain.

[That was wont,' quoth she, 'to walk with troops of
, must now abandon and utterly forsake all company,
seek some cave, wherein I may sit for evermore and
be myself: if I return to my father, he will refuse me;
my friends, they will be ashamed of me; if to strangers,
will scorn me; if to my Floridon, oh! he denieth me,
accounts my sight as ominous as the baleful crocodile's.
Constant Floridon! thou didst promise to shadow this
with marriage; but now vows, I see, are vain. Thou
sunk me, and tied thy faith unto my sister Marcilla,
must enjoy thy love, because she continues chaste,
at any spot of dishonour.

Thus complained the woful Castria, roving up and

down the court of Scythia, for five months. At the end of which time, the appointed marriage of Floridon and Marcilla drew nigh, and the prince and potentates of Scythia were all present to see Hymen's holy rites; in which honourable assemblies, none were more busy than Castria to beautify her sister's wedding. The ceremonies being sooner performed, and the day spent in pleasures, fitting the honour of so great and mighty a train, but Castria requested the use of the country, which was this; that the first night of every maiden's marriage, a known virgin should lie with the bride, which honourable task was committed to Castria who provided against the hour appointed a silver bodkin and hid it secretly in the tangles of her hair, wherewithal intended to prosecute revenge. The bride's lodging-chamber was appointed far from the hearing of any one, lest the noise of people should hinder her quiet sleep.

"But at last, when the hour of her wishes approached that the bride should take leave of her ladies and maids that attended her to her chamber, the new-married Floridon in company of many Scythian knights, committed Marcilla to her quiet rest, little mistrusting the bloody purpose of her sister's mind.

"But now behold how every thing fell out according to her desires. The ladies and gentlemen were no sooner departed, and silence taken possession of the whole court, but Castria locked the chamber-door, and secretly conveyed the keys under the bed's head, not perceived by the betrayer Marcilla; which poor lady, after some speeches, departed to bed; wherein she was no sooner laid, but a heavy sleep over-mastered her senses, whereby her tongue was forced to bid her sister good night, who as then sate discontented by her bed-side, watching the time wherein she might conveniently act the bloody tragedy: upon a court cupboard stood two burning tapers, that gave light to the whole chamber which in her conceit seemed to burn blue. After this, she took her silver bodkin, that before she had secretly hid in her hair, and came to her new-married sister, being then overcome with a heavy slumber, and with her bodkin pierced her tender breast; who immediately, at the stroke there started from her sleep, and gave such a pitiful shriek, that it would have awakened the whole court, but that the chamber stood far from the hearing of company, except



bloody-murdered sister, whose hand was ready to redouble her fury with a second stroke.

"But when Marcella beheld the sheets and ornaments of her bed bedstained with purple gore, and from her breast run streams of crimson blood, which like to a fountain trickled from her bosom, she breathed forth this exclamation against the cruelty of Castria:

" 'O sister,' quoth she, 'hath nature harboured in thy breast a bloody mind? What fury hath incensed thee thus to commit my tragedy? In what have I misdome, or wherein hath my tongue offended thee? What cause hath been the occasion that thy remorseless hand against nature hath converted my joyful nuptials to woful funerals?' 'This is the cause,' replied Castria, and therewithal shewed her womb grown big through the burden of her child, 'that I have bathed my hands in thy blood.'

"Which words being no sooner finished, but she violently pierced her own breast, whereby the two sisters' blood were equally mingled together.

"Now when the morning sun had chased away the dark night, Floridon, who little mistrusted the tragedy of the two sisters, repaired to the chamber-door, with a concert of skilful musicians, where the inspiring harmony sounded to the walls, and Floridon's morning salutations were spent in vain: he burst open the door, where being no sooner entered, but he found the two ladies weltering in their own gore. Which woful spectacle presently so bereaved him of his wits, that, like a frantic man, he raged up and down, and in this manner bitterly complained:

" 'Oh, immortal powers! open the wrathful gates of heaven, and in your justice punish me, for my unconstant love hath murdered two of the bravest ladies that ever nature framed. Revive, sweet dames of Scythia, and hear me speak, that am the wofulest wretch that ever spoke with a tongue: if ghost may here be given for ghost, dear ladies, take my life and live; or if my heart might dwell within your breasts, this hand shall equally divide it.'

"Which woful lamentation being no sooner breathed from his sorrowful breast, but he finished his days by the stroke of that same accursed bodkin that was the bloody instrument of the two sisters' death; which he found still remaining in the remorseless hand of Castria.

sion, lamenting the loss of my children, like weeping .
which was the sorrowfulest lady that ever lived.

“ During which time, the report of Floridon’s unl
tragedy was bruited to his father’s ears, being the sol
of Armenia ; whose grief so exceeded the bounds of r
that with all convenient speed he gathered the g
strength Armenia could make, and in revenge of hi
murder, entered my territories, and with his well-ap
warriors subdued my provinces, slaughtered my s
conquered my captains, slew my commons, burnt my
and left my country villages desolate ; where, when I
my country overspread with famine, fire, and sword
intestine plagues, wherewith Heaven scourgeth the
the wicked, I was forced, for the safeguard of my
forsake my native habitation and kingly governmer
committing my fortune (like a banished exile) to wa
unknown passages, where Care was my chief compani
Discontent my only solicitor. At last it was my de
arrive in this unhappy place, which I supposed to
walks of Despair ; where I had not remained mar
in my melancholy passions, but methought the ma

dine, was no sooner finished, but the worthy champion St. George heard such a rattling in the skies, such a lumbering in the earth, that he expected some strange event to follow. Then casting his eyes aside saw the enchanted garden to vanish, and the champion of Wales to awake from his long sleep, wherein he had remained seven years; who like one risen from a swoon, for a time stood speechless, not able to utter one word, till he beheld the noble champion of England, that steadfastly gazed upon the necromancer; who, at the vanishing of the enchantment, presently gave a terrible groan and died.

The two champions, after many courteous embracings and kind greetings, revealed to each other the strange adventures they had passed. St. David told how he was bound by the oath of knighthood to perform the adventure of Ormandine: whereupon St. George presently delivered the enchanted sword, with the necromancer's head, into the hands of St. David, which he presently severed from his body. But here must my weary muse leave St. David, travelling with Ormandine's head to the Tartarian emperor, and speak of the following adventures that happened to St. George, after his departure from the enchanted garden.

CHAP. XI.

ST. GEORGE, after the recovery of St. David, as you heard in the former chapter, dispatched his journey towards Christendom, whose pleasant banks he long desired to behold, and thought every day a year, till his eyes enjoyed a sweet sight of his native country of England, upon whose chalky cliffs he had not rode in many a weary summer's day. Therefore committing his journey to a fortunate success, he travelled through many a dangerous country, where the people were not only of a bloody disposition, given to all manner of wickedness, but the soil greatly annoyed with wild beasts.

Thus in extreme danger travelled the noble champion St. George, till he arrived in the territories of Barbary, in which country he purposed for a time to remain, and to seek for some noble achievement, whereby his fame might be increased; and being encouraged with this princely cogitation, the noble champion of England climbed to the top of a hut

mountain ; where he unlocked his beaver, which before had not been lifted up in many a day, and beheld the wide and spacious country, how it was beautified with lofty pines, and adorned with many goodly palaces. But amongst the number of the towers and cities which the English champion beheld, there was one which seemed to exceed the rest both in situation and brave buildings, which he supposed to be the chiefest city in all the country, and the place where the king usually kept his court : to which St. George intended to travel, not to furnish himself with any needful thing, but to accomplish some honourable adventure, whereby his worthy deeds might be eternized in the books of memory. So after he had descended from the top of the steep mountain, and had travelled into a low valley about two or three miles, he approached an old and almost ruined hermitage, overgrown with moss and other weeds ; before the entry of this hermitage sate an ancient father upon a round stone, taking the heat of the warm sun, which cast such a comfortable brightness upon the hermit's face, that his white beard seemed to glitter like silver, and his head to exceed the whiteness of the northern icicles ; to whom, after St. George had given the due reverence that belonged unto age, he demanded the name of the country, and the city he travelled to, and under what king the country was governed. To whom the courteous hermit thus replied :

" Most noble knight, for so I guess you are, by your furniture and outward appearance, you are now in the confines of Barbary, the city opposite before your eyes, is called Tripoli, remaining under the government of Almidor, the black king of Morocco, in which city he now keepeth his court, attended on by as many gallant knights as any king under the cope of heaven."

At which words the noble champion of England suddenly started, as though he had intelligence of some baleful news, which deeply discontented his princely mind : his heart was presently incensed with a speedy revenge, and his mind extremely thirsted after Almidor's tragedy, that he could scarce answer again to the hermit's words. But bridling his fury, the angry champion spake in this manner :

" Grave father," said he, " through the treachery of that accursed king, I endured seven years' imprisonment in Persia where I suffered both hunger, cold, and extreme misery. I



If I had my good sword Ascalon, and my trusty palfrey, which I left in the Egyptian court, where remains my betrothed love, the king's daughter of Egypt, I would be avenged on the head of Almidor, were his guard more strong than the army of Xerxes, whose multitudes drank the rivers dry." "Why," said the hermit, "Sabra, the king's daughter of Egypt, is queen of Barbary; and since her nuptials were solemnly performed in Tripoli are seven summers fully finished."

"Now by the honour of my country England," replied St. George, "the place of my nativity, and as I am a Christian knight, these eyes of mine shall never close until I have obtained a sight of the sweet princess, for whose sake I have endured so long imprisonment. Therefore, dear father, be thus kind to a traveller, as to exchange thy clothing for this my rich furniture and steed, which I brought from the soldan of Persia, for in the habit of a palmer I may enjoy the fruition of her sight without suspicion; therefore courteously deliver me thy hermit's gown, and I will give, with my horse and armour, this box of costly jewels." Which when the grave hermit beheld, he humbly thanked the noble champion, and so with all the speed they could possibly make, exchanged apparel, and in this manner departed.

The palmer being glad, repaired to his hermitage with St. George's furniture, and St. George in the palmer's apparel towards the city of Tripoli, who no sooner came to the sumptuous buildings of the court, but he espied a hundred poor palmers kneeling at the gate, to whom St. George spake after this manner:

"My dear brethren," said the champion, "for what intent remain you here, or what expect you from this honourable court?"

"We abide here," answer the palmers, "for an alms, which the queen once a day hath given these seven years, for the sake of an English knight, named St. George, whom she affected above all the knights in the world." "But when will this be given?" said St. George.

"In the afternoon," replied the palmers; "until which time, upon our bended knees, we hourly pray for the good fortune of that most noble English knight." Which speeches so pleased the valliant-minded champion St. George, that he

thought every minute a year, till the golden sun had pass away the middle part of heaven ; for it was but newly ris from Aurora's bed, whose light, as yet, with a shame-face radiant blush distained the eastern sky.

During which time, the most valiant and magnanimous champion St. George of England, one while remembering the extreme misery he endured in Persia for her sake, another while thinking upon the terrible battle he had with the burning dragon in Egypt, where he redeemed her from the fatal jaws of death. At last it was his chance to walk about the court beholding the sumptuous buildings, and the curious engraven works by the achievement of man, bestowed upon the glittering windows ; where he heard, to his exceeding pleasure the heavenly voice of his beloved Sabra, descending from a window upon the west side of the palace, where she warbled forth this sorrowful ditty upon her ivory lute.

Die, all desires of joy and courtly pleasures ;

Die, all desires of princely royalty ;

Die, all desires of worldly treasures ;

Die, all desires of stately majesty :

Since he is gone that pleased most my eye,

For whom I wish ten thousand times to die.

O that mine eyes might never cease to weep,

O that my tongue might evermore complain,

O that my soul might in his bosom sleep,

For whose sweet sake my heart doth live in pain :

In woe I sing, with brinish tears besprent,

Outworn with grief, consum'd with discontent.

In time my sighs will dim the heav'n's fair light,

Which hourly fly from my tormented breast,

Except St. George, that noble English knight,

With safe return abandon my unrest ;

Then careful cries shall end with deep annoy,

Exchanging weeping tears, for smiling joy.

Before the face of heav'n this vow I make :

Tho' unkind friends have wed me to their will,

And crown me queen, my ardent flames to slake,

Which in despite of them shall flourish still,

Bear witness, heav'n's and earth, what I have said

For George's sake I live and die a maid.

Which being no sooner ended, but she departed the window, quite from the hearing of the English champion, that stood gazing up to the casements, preparing his ears to entertain her sweet-tuned melody the second time. But it was in vain; whereas he grew in more perplexed passions than *Æneas*, when he had lost his beloved *Creusa* amongst the army of the Grecians: sometimes wishing the day to vanish in a moment, that the hour of her benevolence might approach; other times comforting his sad cogitations with the remembrance of her long-continued constancy for his sake.

Thus spent he the time away, till the glorious sun began to decline the western parts of the earth, when the palmers should receive her wonted benevolence. Against which time the English champion placed himself in the midst of them that expected the wished hour of her coming: who, at the time appointed, came to the palace gate, attired in mourning vesture, like *Polixena*, king *Priam's* daughter, when she went to sacrifice: her hair after a careless manner hung wavering in the wind, almost changed from yellow burnished brightness to the colour of silver, through her long-continued sorrows and grief of heart; her eyes seemed to have wept seas of tears, and her wonted beauty was now stained with the pearly dew that trickled down her cheeks; where, after the sorrowful queen had justly numbered the palmers, and with vigilant eyes beheld the princely countenance of *St. George*, her colour began to change from red to white, and from white to red, as though the lily and rose had strove for superiority. But yet colouring her cogitations under a smooth brow, first delivered her alms to the palmers, then taking *St. George* aside, with him she thus kindly began to confer;

"Palmer," said she, "thou resemblest both in princely countenance and courteous behaviour, that thrice-honoured champion of England, for whose sake I have daily bestowed my benevolence for these seven years: his name is *St. George*; his fame I know thou hast heard reported in many a country to be the bravest knight that ever buckled on steel helmet. Therefore for his sake will I grace thee with the chiefest honour in this court: instead of thy russet gaber-dine, I will clothe thee in purple silk, and instead of the ebony staff, thy hand shall wield the richest sword that ever princely eye beheld."

To whom the noble champion St. George replied in this courteous manner :

" I have heard," quoth he, " the princely achievements and magnanimous adventures of that honoured English knight, which you so dearly affected, bruited through many princes' courts, and how for the love of a lady he hath endured a long imprisonment, from whence he never looked to return, but to spend the remnant of his days in lasting misery."

At which the queen let fall from her eyes such a shower of pearly tears, and sent such numbers of strained sighs from her grieved heart, that her sorrow seemed to exceed the queen's of Carthage, when she had for ever lost sight of her beloved lord. But the brave-minded champion purposed no longer to continue secret, but with his discovery to convert her sorrowful means to smiling joy. And so casting off his palmer's weed, acknowledged himself to the queen, and therewithal shewed the half ring whereon was engraven this poetry, *Ardeo Affectione*. Which ring in former time (as you have read before) they had very equally divided between them, to be kept in remembrance of their plighted faith.

Which unexpected sight highly pleased the beautiful Sabra, and her joy so exceeded the bounds of reason, that she could not speak one word, but was constrained through her new conceited pleasure to breathe a sad sigh or two into the champion's bosom, who like a true ennobled knight, entertained her with a loving kiss; where after these two lovers had fully discoursed to each other the secrets of their souls, Sabra how she continued for his love a pure virgin, through the secret virtue of a golden chain steeped in tiger's blood, which she wore seven times double about her ivory neck, took him by the gentle hand, and led him into her husband's stables, where stood his approved palfrey, who no sooner espied the return of his master, but he was more proud of his presence than Bucephalus of the Macedonian monarch, when he most joyfully returned in triumph from any victorious conquest.

" Now is the time," said the excellent princess Sabra " that thou mayest seal up the quittance of our former love therefore, with all convenient speed take thy approved palfrey, and thy trusty sword Ascalon, which I will

OF CHRISTENDOM.

deliver into thy hands, and with all celerity convey me fr
this unhappy country : for the king my husband, with all
adventurous knights, are now rode forth on hunting, who
absence will further our flight ; but if you stay till his
turn, it is not a hundred of the hardest knights in the worl
can bear me from this accursed palace."

At which words St. George, having a mind graced with
all excellent virtues, replied in this manner:

" Thou knowest, my divine lady, that for thy love I
would endure as many dangers as Jason suffered in the
isle Calchios, so I might at last enjoy the pleasures of true
virginity. For how is it possible thou canst remain a pure
maid, when thou hast been a crowned queen these seven
years, and every night hast entertained a king into thy bed?"

" If thou findest me not a true maid," quoth she, " in all
that thou canst say or do, send me back hither again to my
foe, whose bed I count more loathsome than a den of snakes,
and his sight more ominous than the crocodile's. As for
the Morocco crown, which by force of friends was set upon
my head, I wish that it might be turned into a blaze of
quenchless fire, so it might not endanger my body. And
as for the name of queen, I account it a vain title ; for I
had rather be the English lady, than the greatest empress
in the world."

At which speeches St. George willingly condescended,
and with all speed proposed to go into England. So losing
no time, Sabra furnished herself with sufficient treasure,
and obtained the good will of an eunuch, that was appointed
to her guard in the king's absence, to accompany them in
their travel, and to serve as a trusty guide, if occasion re-
quired.

So these three worthy personages committed their travels
to the guide of fortune, who preserved them from dangers
pursuing enemies, which at the king's return from hunting,
owed again to every port and haven that divided the
dom of Barbary from the confines of Christendom.
kind Destiny so guided their steps, that they travelled
her way, contrary to their expectations ; for when they
went to arrive upon the territories of Europe, they were
upon the fruitful banks of Grecia : in which country
must tell what happened to the three travellers.

Now, Malpomeane, thou tragic sister of the Muses

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

port what unlucky crosses happened to these three travellers in the confines of Grecia, and how their smiling comedy was by ill hap turned into a weeping tragedy : for when they had journeyed about three or four leagues, over many a lofty hill, they came nigh unto a vast wilderness, through which the way seemed so long, and the sun beams so exceedingly clouded, that Sabra, what for weariness of travel, and the extreme heat of the day, was constrained to rest under the shelter of a mighty oak, whose branches had not been lopped in many a year. Where she had not long remained, but her heart began to faint as any lady's in colour, that was but a little before as faint as any lady's in the world, began to change for the want of a little drink ; whereat, the most famous champion St. George, half dead with very grief, comforted her as well as he could after this manner :

"Faint not my dear lady," said he, "here is that good sword that once preserved thee from the burning dragon, and before thou shalt die for want of sustenance, it shall make way to every corner of the wilderness ; where I will either kill some venison to refresh thy hungry stomach, or make my tomb in the bowels of some monstrous beast. Therefore abide thou here under this tree, in company of thy faithful eunuch, till I return either with the flesh of some wild deer, or else some flying bird, to refresh thy spirit for a new travel."

Thus left he his beloved lady with the eunuch in the woods, and travelled up and down the wilderness, till he espied a herd of fatted deer, from which company he singled out the fairest, and like a tripping satyr coursed her to death : then with a keen edged sword cut out the goodliest haunch of venison that ever hunter's eye beheld ; which gift he supposed to be most welcome to his beloved lady. But mark what happened in his absence to the two weary travellers under the tree : where after St. George's departure they had not long sate discoursing, one while of their long journeys, another while of their safe delivery from Blackmoor king, spending the stealing time away many an ancient story, but there appeared out of a thicket two huge and monstrous lions, which came directly towards the two travellers. Which fearful spectacle, Sabra beheld, having a heart overcharged with the

fear of death, wholly committed her soul into the hands of God, and her body almost famished for food, to suffice the hunger of the two furious lions, who by the appointment of heaven, proffered not so much as to lay their wrathful paws upon the smallest part of her garment, but with eager mood assailed the eunuch, until they had buried his body in the empty vaults of their hungry bowels: then with their teeth lately imbrued in blood, rent the eunuch's steed into small pieces: which being done, they came to the lady, who sate quaking half dead with fear, and, like two lambs, couched their heads upon her lap, where with her hand she stroked down their bristled hairs, not daring almost to breathe, till a heavy sleep had over-mastered their furious senses, by which time the princely-minded champion St. George returned with a piece of venison upon the point of his sword: who at that unexpected sight stood in amaze, whether it was best to fly for safeguard of his life, or to venture his fortune against the furious lions. But at last the love of his lady encouraged him to such a forwardness, whom he beheld quaking before the dismal gates of death: so laying down his venison, he sheathed his falchion in the bowels of one of the lions. Sabra kept the other sleeping in her lap till his prosperous hand had likewise dispatched him: which adventure being performed, he first thanked Heaven for victory, and then in this kind manner saluted his lady.

"Now Sabra," said he, "I have by this sufficiently proved thy virginity: for it is the nature of a lion, be he ever so furious, not to harm the unspotted virgin, but humbly to lay his bristled head upon a maiden's lap. Therefore, divine paragon, thou art the world's chief wonder for love and chastity, whose honoured virtues shall ring as far as Phœbus sends his lights, and whose constancy I will maintain in every land where I come, to be the truest under the circuit of the sun." At which words he cast his eyes aside, and beheld the bloody spectacle of the eunuch's tragedy, which by Sabra was wofully discoursed to the grief of St. George, where sad sighs served for a doleful knell to bewail his untimely death: but having a noble mind, not subject to vain sorrow, where all hope of life is past, ceased his grief, and prepared the venison in readiness for his lady's repast, which in this order was dressed.

He had in his pocket a firelock, wherewith he struck fire

and kindled it with sun-burnt moss, and increased the fire with other dry wood which he gathered in the wilderness against which they roasted the venison, and sufficed themselves to their own contentments. After which joyful past, these two princely persons set forward to their wanderings, whereby the happy guide of heaven so conducted their steps, that before many days passed, they arrived at the Grecian court, even upon that day when the marriage of the Grecian emperor should be solemnly held: a nuptial, in former times, had been bruited into every nation in the world, as well in Europe, as Africa and Asia. At which honourable marriage the bravest knights then living were present: for golden Fame had bruited the report thereof to the ears of the Seven Champions: in Thessaly, to St. Denis, the champion of France, there remaining with the beautiful Eglantine; into Seville, to St. James, the champion of Spain, where he remained with his lovely Celestine; to St. Anthony, the champion of Italy, then travelling on the borders of Scythia, with his lady Rosalinde; likewise to St. Andrew, the champion of Scotland; to St. Patrick, the champion of Ireland; and to St. David, the champion of Wales.

But now Fame and smiling Fortune consented that their knightly achievements should shine in the eyes of the whole world, therefore by the conduct of heaven they all generally arrived in the Grecian emperor's court.

CHAP. XII.

To speak of the number of knights that assembled at the Grecian court together, were a labour over tedi-
 ous to the pen of Homer: therefore will I omit the train of knights and ladies that did attend them to their costly garments and glittering ornaments: the royalty of Hecuba, the beautiful queen of Troy, also I pass over the sumptuous banquets and dances that beautified the emperor's nuptials, with the and courtly dances performed by many nobles and chiefly discourse of the knightly achievements of the *seven champions of Christendom*, whose many adventures have deserved a golden pen to re-



days the emperor proclaimed a solemn jousting to the space of seven days, in the honour of his and appointed for his chief champions the seven knights.

the day appointed the tournaments should begin, nor caused a large frame of timberwork to be whereon the empress and her ladies might stand, clear view of the tilters; and at pleasure behold the a' encounters; likewise in the compass of the lists had seven tents of seven different colours, wherein champions might remain till the sound of the sil-lets summoned them to appear.

very thing prepared in readiness fitting so great a the princes and ladies placed on their seats, the with his new married empress invested on their ones, strongly guarded with a hundred armed he king's heralds solemnly proclaimed the tourna-lich in this manner began.

rst day St. Denis of France was appointed chief against all comers, who was called by the title of m knight, who at the sound of the trumpet en-lists. His tent was of the colour of the marigold; top an artificial sun flamed, that seemed to beautify assembly; his horse an iron-gray, graced with a plume of feathers: before him rode a page in pur-suing upon his crest three golden flower-de-luces, d signify his arms. Thus in this royal manner t. Denis the lists; where, after he had traced twice up and down, to the open view of the whole com-prepared himself in readiness to begin the tourna-against whom ran many Grecian knights, which ed by the French champion, to the wonderful ad-of all beholders: but, to be brief, he so worthily himself, and with such fortitude, that the emperor d him for the bravest knight in the world.

a great royalty, to the exceeding pleasure of the was the first day spent, till the dark evening caused ts to break off company, and repair to their night's And the next morning, no sooner did Phœbus shew lid brightness, but the king of heralds, under the with a noise of trumpets, awakened the champions silent sleep, who with all speed prepared for the

quicksilver, whereon was . . .

before the tent attended four esquires, bearing on
escutcheons in their hands, whereon were curious
the four elements ; likewise he had the title of
knight ; who behaved himself no less worthy of al
commendations than the French champion the da

The third day St Anthony of Italy was chief
in the tournament, whose tent was of the colour of
his steed furnished with costly habiliments, his ar
the Barbarian manner, his shield plated round a
steel, whereon was painted a golden eagle in a fie
which signified the ancient arms of Rome ; likew
the title of the azure knight, whose matchless c
that day, won the prize from all the Grecian kni

The fourth day, by the emperor's appointme
thy knight St. Andrew of Scotland obtained th
be chief challenger for the tournament : his tent
in the manner of a ship swimming upon the wav
environed about with dolphins, tritons, and m
contrived mermaids ; upon the top stood the pi
ture, the god of the seas, bearing in his hand
a trident in crimson silk, a corner



in, that before the tournament began, they gave war of the day.

sixth day the heroidal and noble-minded champion entered the lists upon a Tartarian palfrey, a veil of black, to signify a black and tragical end those Grecian knights that durst approve : his tent was pitched in the manner and form in the west side of the lists : before the entry of a golden shield, whereon was lively port a griffin rampant upon a golden helmet, which ancient arms of Britain. His princely achievement obtained due commendations at the emperor's of the whole assembly of the Grecian ladies, they applauded him to be the most noble knight armed lance, and the most fortunate champion entered into the Grecian court.

seventh and last day of these honourable tournaments and valiant knight at arms St. George of chief challenger, entered the lists upon a sable, betrapped with bars of burnished gold, his attired with a gorgeous plume of purple feathers, hung many pendants of gold ; his armour of the iron steel, nailed fast together with silver plates ; engraved very curiously, beset with Indian pearl, stones ; before his breastplate hung a silver table scarf, whereon was pictured a lion rampant in red, bearing three golden crowns upon his head : next stood an ivory chariot, guarded by twelve negroes ; wherein his beloved lady and mistress, seated upon a silver globe, to behold the heroics of her most noble and magnanimous champion of England : his tent was as white as the swan's glittering against the sun, supported by four pillars of the purest brass ; about his helmet he tied virgin's hair, where hung his lady's glove, which maintain her excellent gifts of nature to exceed the earth. These costly habiliments ravished with such unspeakable pleasure, that they stood in furniture, not able to withdraw their eyes from a sight. But when they beheld his victories against the Grecian knights, they supposed him

to be the invincible tamer of that seven-headed monster th
climbed to the elements, offering to pull Jupiter from h
throne. His steed never gave encounter with any knigh
but he tumbled horse and man to the ground, where the
lay for a time bereft of sense. The tournaments lasted f
that day from the sun's rising till the coal-black evenin
star appeared; in which time he conquered five hundred
the hardest knights then living in Asia, and shivered a the
sand lances, to the wonderful admiration of the beholders

Thus were the seven days brought to an end by the sev
worthy champions of Christendom, in reward of whose
ble achievements, the Grecian emperor, being a man th
highly favoured knightly proceedings, gave them a gold
tree with seven branches to be divided equally amongst the
Which honourable prize they conveyed to St. George's p
vilion, where, in dividing the branches, the seven champio
discovered themselves to each other, and by what good fi
tune they arrived in the Grecian court, whose long-wish
sight so rejoiced their hearts, that they all accounted th
happy day of meeting the joyfullest day that ever they h
held. But now, after the tournaments were fully end
and the knights rested themselves some few days, recov
ing their wonted agility of body, they fell to a new exerci
of pleasure, not appearing in glittering armour before t
tilt, nor following the loud sounding drums and silver tru
pets, but spending away the time in courtly dances amon
their beloved ladies and mistresses, in more royalty than t
Phrygian knights when they presented the paragon of A
with an enchanted mask. There wanted no inspiring mu
to delight their ears, no pleasant sonnets to ravish th
senses, nor no curious dances to please their eyes. Sab
she was the mistress of the revels, who graced the wh
court with her excellent beauty, which seemed to exceed
rest of the ladies in fairness, as far as the moon surpass
her attending stars in a frosty night; and when she danc
she seemed like Thetis tripping on the silver sands, w
whom the sun did fall in love: and if she chanced to sm
the cloudy elements would weep, and drop heavenly d
as though they mourned for love. There likewise reme
in the court the six Thracian virgins, that in former tim
in the shape of swans, which were as beautiful as
eye beheld; also many other ladies attended

whose companies the seven champions daily delighted sometimes discoursing of amorous conceits, other times delighting themselves with sweet-sounding music; then spending the day in banqueting, revelling, dancing, and such-like pastimes, not once injuring their true betrothed ladies. But their courtly pleasures continued not long; for they were suddenly dashed with certain news of open wars proclaimed against all Christendom: which fell out contrary to the expectation of the Christian knights. There arrived in the Grecian emperor's palace a hundred heralds, of a hundred several provinces, which proclaimed utter defiance to all Christian kingdoms by these words:

"We, the high and mighty emperors of Asia and Africa, great commanders both of lands and seas, proclaim, by general consent of all the eastern potentates, utter ruin and destruction to the kingdoms of Christendom, and to all those nations where any Christian knights are harboured: first, The sultan of Persia, in revenge of a bloody slaughter done in his palace, by an English champion; Ptolemy, the Egyptian king, in revenge of his daughter, violently taken away by the same knight; Almidor, the black king of Morocco, in revenge of his queen, likewise taken away by the said English champion; The great governor of Thessaly, in revenge of his daughters, taken away by a French knight; The king of Jerusalem, in revenge of his daughter, taken away by a Spanish knight; The Tartarian emperor, in revenge of his son, Count Palatine, slain by the unhappy hand of the champion of Wales; The Thracian monarch, in revenge of his vain travel after his seven daughters, now in the power of certain Christian knights: in revenge of which injuries, all kingdoms from the farther parts of Prestor John's dominions to the borders of the Red Sea, have set down their arms and seals to be aiders in this bloody war."

This proclamation was no sooner ended, but the Grecian emperor gave speedy commandment to muster up the strength that Grecia could afford, to join with the Pagans, to the utter ruin and confusion of Christendom; which bloody war rather inhuman judgment, pronounced by the accursed infidels, compelled the Christian champions to a departure, and every one to hasten to his own country to provide for the Pagans' entertainment. So after deliberations, the champions departed, in company of

their betrothed ladies, who chose rather to live in their husbands' bosoms, than with their misbelieving parents. Where after some few days they arrived in the spacious bay of Portugal, in which haven they vowed, by the honour of true knighthood, to meet again within six months ensuing, there to join all their Christian armies into one legion. Upon which plighted resolution, the worthy champions departed one from another : St. George into England, St. Denis into France, St. James into Spain, St. Anthony into Italy, St. Andrew into Scotland, St. Patrick into Ireland, St. David into Wales. Whose pleasant banks they had not beheld in many years before, where their entertainments were as honourable as their hearts desired.

CHAP. XIII.

AFTER the seven champions of Christendom arrived in their native countries, and by true reports had blazed abroad to every prince's ear the bloody resolutions of the Pagans, and how the provinces of Africa and Asia had mustered up their forces to the invasion of Europe; all Christian kings then, at the entreaty of the champions, appointed mighty armies of well-approved soldiers, both by sea and land, to intercept the infidels' wicked intention. Likewise, by the whole consent of Christendom, the noble and fortunate champion of England, St. George, was appointed chief general and principal leader of the armies, and the other six champions were elected for his council, and chief assistants in all attempts that appertained either to the benefit of Christendom, or the furtherance of their fortunate proceedings.

This war so fired the hearts of many youthful gentlemen, and so encouraged the minds of every common soldier, that some mortgaged their lands, and at their own charges furnished themselves : some sold their patrimonies to serve in these honourable wars ; and other some forsook parents, kindred, wife, children, friends, and acquaintance, and without constraint of pressing, offered themselves to follow so noble a general as the renowned champion of England, and to spend their blood in the just quarrel of their native country.

To be brief, one might behold the streets of every

throughout all the dominions of Europe, beautified up of soldiers, which thirsted after nothing but fame and glory. Then the joyful sound of thundering drums, echoes of silver trumpets summoning them to arms, loved with as much willingness as the Grecians | Agamemnon to the woful overthrow of Troy. For time the champions had sported in the bosoms of mad mistresses, the forward captains taken their partimes, and the willing soldiers bade adieu to gods and acquaintance, the spring had covered the with a new livery ; which was the appointed time the armies should meet in Portugal, there to join several troops into one legion : which promise caused millions to bid adieu to their native countries, and speed to buckle on their furnitures, to hoist up sails, after a short time the wind, with a calm and propitious, cast them happily into the bay of Portugal. The first that arrived in that spacious haven, was the ship the St. George ; with one hundred thousand courageous English soldiers, whose forwardness betokened a success, and their willing minds a joyful victory. They set in battle array, seemed to countervail the numerous Macedonian soldiers, wherewith worthy Alexander conquered the western world ; his horsemen, being in twenty thousand, were armed all in black corselets ; their horses bound about with plates of steel, their steeds with mail, three times doubled ; their colours were a sanguine cross, supported by a golden lion : his sturdy men, whose conquering gray goose wing in former times circled the circled earth, being in number likewise twenty thousand, clad all in red mandilions, with caps of the same colour, bearing thereon likewise a sanguine cross, the true badge of honour of England ; their bows of the strongest yew, and their arrows of the soundest ash, their helmets of steel, and their feathers bound on with wax and twisted silk : his musqueteers, being in number twenty thousand, their musquets of the widest bore, with barrels wrought by curious workmanship, yet of such fulllightness, that they required no rest at all to ease them : his cavalier shot likewise ten thousand of the choicest men, but yet of as courageous minds as the others in his army : his pikes and bills to guard

the waving ensigns, thirty thousand, clad all with glittering bright armour: likewise followed ten thousand labouring pioneers, if occasion served, to undermine any town or castle, to intrench forts or sconces, or to make a passage through hills and mountains, as worthy Hannibal did, when as he made a way for his soldiers through the lofty Alps, that divide the countries of Italy and Spain.

The next that arrived in the bay of Portugal, was the princely-minded champion St. David of Wales, with an army of fifty thousand true-born Britons, furnished with all habiliments of war for so noble and valiant a service, to the high renown of his country, and true honour of his progeny: their armour in richness nothing inferior to the Englishmen; their colours were a golden cross, supported by a silver griffin; which escutcheon signified the ancient arms of Wales: for no sooner had St. George a sight of the valiant Britons, but he caused his musqueteers presently to entertain them with a volley of shot, to express their joyful welcome to shore. But no sooner were the skies cleared from the smoke of the reeking powder, and that St. George might at pleasure discern the noble and magnanimous champion of Wales, who as then rode upon a milk-white hobby in silver armour, guarded with a train of knights in purple vestures, but he greeted St. David with kind courtesies, and accompanied him to the English tent, which they had erected close by the port side, where for that night these two champions remained, spending the night with unspeakable pleasure: and so upon the next day after, St. David departed to his own tent, which he had caused to be pitched a quarter of a league from the English army.

The next that arrived on the fruitful banks of Portugal was St. Patrick, the noble champion of Ireland, with an army likewise of fifty thousand, attired after a strange and wonderful manner: their furniture were of the skins of wild beasts, but yet more unpierceable than the strongest armour of proof. They bore in their hands mighty darts, tipped at the end with prickling steel, which the courageous and valiant Irish soldiers, by the agility of their arms, could throw a full flight shot, and with forcible strength would strike three or four inches into an oak.

These hardy soldiers no sooner arrived on the shore, but the English musqueteers gave them a princely entertain-



ment, and presently conducted the noble-minded St. Patrick to the English tent, where the three champions of England, Wales, and Ireland, passed away the time with exceeding great royalty, laying down reasons how to pitch their camps to the most disadvantage of the misbelieving enemy, and setting perfect directions which way they were best to march, and such-like devices, for their own safeties, and the benefit of Christendom.

The next that landed on the banks of Portugal, was St. Andrew, the worthy champion of Scotland, with threescore thousand of well-approved soldiers: his horsemen, the old adventurous Galloways, clad in quilted jackets, with lances of the Turkish fashion, thick and short, bearing upon their beavers the arms of Scotland, which was a corner cross, supported by a naked virgin: his pikemen, the bold and hardy men of Orcady, which continually lie upon freezing mountains; the icy rock, and the snowy valleys: his shot, the light-footed Pallidonians, that, if occasion be, can climb the highest hill, and for nimbleness in running, overgo the swift-footed stag. These bold adventurous Scottish-men in all forwardness, deserved as much honour at the English champion's hands as any other nation before; therefore he commanded his shot, on their first entry on land, to give them a noble entertainment, which they performed, most royally, and also conducted St. Andrew to the English tent, where after he had given St. George the courtesy of his country, departed to his tent, which was distant from the English tent a milé.

The next that arrived was St. Anthony, the champion of Italy, with a band of fourscore thousand brave Italian soldiers, mounted on warlike coursers; every horseman attended on by a naked negro, bearing in his hand streamer of watchet silk, with the arms of Italy thereon set in gold; every footman furnished with approved furniture in as stately a manner as the Englishmen; who at their landing received as royal entertainment as the other nations, and likewise St. Anthony was as highly honoured by the English champion, as any of the other Christian Knights.

The next that arrived was St. Denis, the victorious champion of France, with a band of fourscore thousand. *After him marched dukes of twelve several dukedoms, then under the government of the French king; every one at his*

own proper cost and charges maintained two thousand in these Christian wars : their entertainments glorious as the rest.

The last of the Christian champions that arrived on the fruitful banks of Portugal, was the magnanimous knight James of Spain, with a band likewise of fourscore knights with him he brought from the Spanish mines ten tons of refined gold, only to maintain soldiers in the defence of Christendom ; who no sooner landed his troops, but the four champions gave him the honourable welcome of a banquet and ordained a solemn banquet for the general armies, number justly surmounted five hundred thousand legions they conjoined into one camp royal, and placed their wings and squadrons battle-wise, chiefly in the direction of St. George, being then chief general, by the consent of the Christian kings ; who after he had viewed the Christian armies, his countenance seemed to prognosticate a crowned victory, and to foretell a fatal overthrow to the misbelieving potentates : therefore, to encourage his princely followers to persevere in their willingness, pronounced this princely oration :

" You men of Europe," said he, " and my countrymen whose conquering fortunes never yet have feared the armies of Christ, you see we have forsook our native land and committed our destinies to the queen of chance in this fight in any unjust quarrel, but in the true cause of Christ ; not against nature to climb to the heavens like Nimrod and the giants proffered in former time, but to prevent the invasion of Christendom, the ruin of Europe the intended overthrow of all Christian provinces ; bloody-minded infidels have mustered up legions, numbers like blades of grass that grow upon the flood plains of Italy, or the stars of heaven in the cold winter's night, protesting to fill our countries with seas and scatter our streets with mangled limbs, and convert our glorious cities into flames of quenchless fire ; therefore countrymen, live not to see our Christian virgins spoiled by lustful rape, nor dragged along our streets like lambs to a bloody slaughter : nor to see our babes, with bruised brains, dashed against hard flinty stones nor to see our feeble age, whose hair resembles silver lie bleeding on the marble pavement ; but like true



soldiers fight in the quarrel of your countries. What though the Pagans be innumber ten to one, yet Heaven I know will fight for Christendom, and cast them down before our faces, like drops of April showers. Be not dismayed to see them in ordered ranks, nor fear not when as you behold the streamers hovering in the waving wind, when as their steeled pikes, like to a thorny forest, will overspread whole countries : thousands of them I know will have no heart to fight, but fly with cowardly fear, like flocks of sheep before the greedy wolf. I am the leader of your noble minds, that never fought in vain, nor ever entered battle but returned with conquest. Then every one with me build upon this princely resolution : ' For Christendom we fight ; for Christendom we live and die.' "

This soldier-like oration was no sooner finished, but the whole army, with a general voice, cried, To arms, to arms, with victorious George of England ! which noble resolution of the soldiers so rejoiced the English champion, and likewise encouraged the other Christian knights with such a forwardness of mind, that they gave speedy commandment to remove their tents, and to march with easy journeys towards Tripoli in Barbary, where Almidor, the black king of Morocco, had residence ; in which travel we must leave for a while the Christian army, and speak of the innumerable troops of Pagan knights that arrived in the kingdom of Hungary, and how they fell at variance in the election of a general : which civil mutiny caused much effusion of blood, to the great hurt both of Africa and Asia, as here followeth.

CHAP. XIV.

THE ireful Pagans, after they had levied their martial forces both by sea and land, repaired to their general places of meeting, there to conclude of the utter ruin of Christendom : for no sooner could Winter withdraw his chill frost from the earth, and Flora took possession of his place, but the kingdom of Hungary suffered excessive penury, through the numberless armies of accursed infidels, being their appointed place of meeting : for though Hungary, of all other countries, then was the richest and plentifullest of victuals to maintain a camp of men, yet was it mightily overpressed

and greatly burdened with multitudes, not only with want of necessaries to relieve soldiers, but with extreme cruelty of those bloody-minded miscreants, that through a civil discord which happened amongst them, about the election of a general, they converted their union into a most inhuman slaughter, and their triumph of victory to a dismal bloody tragedy: for no sooner arrived their legions upon the plains of Algernos, being in length and breadth one-and-twenty leagues, but the king of Hungary caused their muster-roll to be publicly read, and justly numbered, in the hearing of the Pagan knights, which in this manner was proclaimed through the camp:

First, Be it known unto all nations that fight in the quarrels of Africa and Asia, under the conduct of our three great gods, Mahomet, Tarmagant, and Apollo, what invincible forces be now arrived in this renowned kingdom of Hungary, a land honoured through the world, not only for arms but curious buildings, and plentiful with all manner of riches.

Second, We have from the emperor of Constantinople two hundred thousand. From the emperor of Grecia, two hundred and fifty thousand. From the emperor of Tartary a hundred threescore and three thousand. From the soldier of Persia, two hundred thousand. From the king of Jerusalem, four hundred thousand. Of Moors, one hundred and twenty thousand. Of coal-black Negroes, one hundred and forty thousand. Of Arabians, one hundred and sixty thousand. Of Babylonians, one hundred and thirty thousand and odd. Of Armenians, one hundred and fifty thousand. Of Macedonians, two hundred and ten thousand. Of Syracusans, fifteen thousand six hundred. Of Hungarians three hundred and six thousand. Of Sicilians, seven thousand three hundred. Of Scythians, one hundred and fifty thousand. Of Parthians, ten thousand three hundred. Of Phrygians, seven thousand three hundred. Of Ethiopians sixty thousand. Of Thracians, fourscore thousand. Likewise from the provinces of Prester John, three thousand of unconquered knights, with many other petty dominions and dukedoms, whose number I omit for this time, lest I should seem over-tedious to the reader.

But to conclude, such a camp of armed soldiers arrived in Hungary, that might in one month have destroyed the



testem, had not God defended them from those barbarous nations, and by his invincible power confounded the Pagans in their own practices: for no sooner had the heralds proclaimed through the camp what a number of nations joined in arms together, but the soldiers fell at dissension one with another, about the election of a general: some vowed to follow none but the king of Jerusalem, some Ptolemy the Egyptian king, and some the soldan of Persia; either to persevere in their own wills, or to lose their lives in the same quarrel.

Thus in this manner parts were taken on all sides, not only by the meaner sort, but by leaders and commanders of bands; whereby the kings and potentates were forced to commit their wills to their soldiers' pleasure. This civil broil so discouraged the whole army, that many withdrew their forces and presently marched homewards, as the king of Morocco, and his tawny Moors, and coal-black Negroes; likewise the soldan of Persia, Ptolemy the Egyptian king, the kings of Arabia and Jerusalem, every one departed to their own countries, cursing the time they attempted first so vain an enterprise. The rest, not minding to put up abuses, fell from brawling boasts to downright blows; which continued without ceasing for the space of three days, in which encounters the murdered infidels, like scattered corn, overspread the fields of Hungary: the fruitful valleys lay drowned in purple gore; the fields of corn consumed with flames of fire; their towns and cities ruined with wasting war; wherein the fathers were sad witnesses of their children's slaughters, and the sons beheld their parents' reverend hairs, more white than tried silver, besmeared with clotted blood.

In the mean while the seven worthy champions of Christendom had entered Barbary, before Almidor the black king of Morocco, with his scattered troops of Moors and Negroes, returned from Hungary, and by fire and sword had wasted many of their chiefest towns and forts, whereby the country was much weakened, and the commons compelled to sue for mercy at the champions' hands, who bearing true Christian minds, within their hearts continually pity harboured; vouchsafed to grant mercy to those that yielded their lives to the pleasure of the Christian knights: but when St. George had intelligence of Almidor's approach

with his weakened troops, he presently prepared his soldiers in readiness to give the Moors a bloody banquet, which was the next morning by break of day performed, to the high honour of Christendom : but the night before, the Moors, knowing the country better than the Christians, got the advantage both of wind and sun ; whereat St. George being something dismayed, but yet not discouraged, emboldened his soldiers with many heroical speeches, proffering them frankly the enemy's spoils, and so with the sun's uprising entered battle, where the Moors fell before the Christians' swords as ears of corn before the reapers' sickles.

During this conflict, the seven champions, still in the forefront of the battle, so adventurously behaved themselves, that they slew more negroes than a hundred of the bravest knights in the Christian armies. At last, Fortune intending to make St. George's prowess to shine brighter than the rest, singled out the Morocco king, betwixt whom and the English champion was a long and dangerous fight ; but St. George so courageously behaved himself with his trusty sword, that Almidor was constrained to yield to his mercy. The army of the Moors seeing their king taken prisoner, presently would have fled ; but that the Christians, being the lighter of foot, overtook them, and made the greatest slaughter of them that ever happened in Barbary.

Thus after the battle ended, and the joyful sound of victory ranged through the Christian army, the soldiers furnished themselves with the enemy's spoils, and marched, by St. George's direction, to the city of Tripoli, being then almost unpeopled through the late slaughter which was there made : in which city, after they had rested some days, and refreshed themselves with wholesome food, the English champion, in revenge of his former proffered injuries by the Morocco king, gave this severe sentence of death :

" First, He commanded a brazen cauldron to be filled with boiling lead and brimstone : then Almidor to be brought to the place of death by twelve of the noblest peers in Barbary, therein to be consumed, which was performed with seven days following. The brazen cauldron was erected ' the appointment of St. George, directly in the middle of chiefest market-place, under which a mighty hot fire squally burned for the space of eight-and-forty hours

Now all things being thus prepared in readiness,



OF CHRISTENDOM.

113

Christian champions present to behold the woful spectacle, the condemned Blackmoor king came to the place of execution in a shirt of fine Indian silk, his hands pinioned together with a chain of gold, and his face covered with a damask scarf, his attendants and chief conductors twelve Moors, peers, clad in sable gowns of taffety, carrying before him the wheel of Fortune, with the picture of a monarch vaunting, with this motto on his breast, "I will be king in spite of Fortune:" upon the top of the wheel the picture or perfect image of a deposed potentate, falling with his head downwards, with this motto on his breast, "I have been king while it pleased Fortune:" which plainly signified the chance of war, and of inconstant destiny. His guard was a hundred Christian soldiers, holding Fortune in disdain: after them attended a hundred of Morocco virgins in black ornaments, their hair bound up with silver wires, and covered with veils of black silk, signifying the sorrow of their country for the loss of their sovereign. In this mournful manner came the unfortunate Almidor to the boiling cauldron; which when he came near, his heart waxed cold, and his tongue devoid of utterance for a time; at last he broke forth into these earnest protestations, proffering more for his life than the whole kingdom of Barbary could perform.

"Most mighty and invincible champion of Christendom," quoth he, "let my life be ransomed, and thou shalt yearly receive ten tons of tried gold, five hundred webs of woven silk, a hundred ships of spices and refined sugar shall be yearly paid thee by our Barbary merchants; a hundred waggons likewise laden with pearl and jasper stones, which by our cunning lapidists shall be yearly chosen forth and brought thee home to England, to make that blessed country the richest within the dominions of Europe; likewise I will deliver up my diadem with all my princely dignities, and in company of the Morocco lords, like bridled horses, draw thee daily in a silver chariot up and down the circled earth, till death give end to our lives' pilgrimage; therefore, most admired knight at arms, let these salt tears, that trickle from the conduits of my eyes, obtain one grant of comfort at thy hands, for on my bended knees I beg for life, that never before this time did kneel to mortal man."

"Thou speakest in vain," replied St. George: "not the

of heaven lent me comfort during my long continued mis-
for which inhuman dealing, and proffered injuries, the
evens enforce me to a speedy revenge, which in this mar-
shall be accomplished :

“Thou seest the torment prepared for thy death,
brazen cauldron filled with boiled lead and brimstone
wherein thy accursed body shall be speedily cast, and bo-
till thy detested limbs be consumed to a watery subst-
in this sparkling liquor : therefore prepare thyself to en-
tain the violent stroke of death, and willingly bid all
kingly dignities farewell : but yet I let thee understand,
mercy harbours in a Christian’s heart, and where me
dwells, there faults are forgiven, upon some humble p-
tence : though thy trespasses deserve no pity, but sev-
punishment, yet upon these considerations I will grant
liberty of life :

“First, That thou wilt forsake thy gods, Tarmagant
Apollo, which be the vain imagination of men, and beli-
in our true and ever-living God, under whose banner
Christians have taken in hand this long war. Second
Thou shalt give commandment that all thy barbarous

*power, my golden diadem and regal sceptre by constraint I must deliver up. But before I will forsake my country gods, I will endure a hundred deaths; and before my conscience be reformed to a new faith, the earth shall be no earth, the sea no sea, the heaven no heaven. Thinkest thou now, proud Christian, by thy threatened torments, to make me forget my Creator, and believe in thy God, the supposed king of the Jews, and basely born under an ox's stall? No, no, accursed Christians, you offspring of Cain, you generation of Ismael, you seed of vipers, and accursed through the world, look for a speedy shower of vengeance to rain from heaven upon your wicked nations. Your bloody practices have pierced the battlements of Jove, and your tyrannies beaten open the gate of mighty Mahomet, who has provided whips of burning wire to scourge you for your cruelties, proffered to and against his blessed worshippers. Now with this deadly curse I bid you all farewell: The plagues of Egypt light upon your kingdom, the curse of Cain upon your children, the famine of Jerusalem upon your friends, and the misery of *Edipus* upon yourselves."*

This wicked resolution and baleful curse, was no sooner ended by the desperate-minded *Almidor*, but the impatience of *St. George* was so highly moved that he gave present command to the appointed executioners to cast him into the boiling cauldron; which incontinently they performed, to the terror of all the beholders. To see this woful spectacle, the battlements of the temple were so thronged with people, the houses covered with women and children, and the streets filled with armed soldiers, that it was a wonder to behold. Amongst which multitudes, there were some particular persons, that at the sight of *Almidor's* death, fell down and broke their necks; but the general number, as well of Pagans as Christians, cried with cheerful voices, "Honour and victory follow *St. George of England*, for he hath redeemed *Barbary* from a miserable servitude." Which joyful hearing so delighted the seven champions of Christendom, that they caused their conduits to run with wines, the streets to be beautified with bonfires, and a sumptuous banquet to be proclaimed through the city, which after continued for the space of seven days, in more magnificent royalty than the banquet of *Babylon*, when the *Macedonian monarch* returned from the world's conquest.

The champions' liberality procured such faith in the hearts of the Morocco peers, that with a general consent they chose St. George for their lawful king; when they had invested him in the princely seat of the potentate, they set the crown upon his head, and presented him with an imperial pall, which the kings of Arragon usually wore upon their coronation-day, protesting against their profane religion, and he christened in the name of Christ.

This promised conversion of the infidels more highly lighted the English champion, than to have the whole honour at his command: for it was the chiefest point of his knightly oath to advance the faith of Christ, and to extend the bounds of Christendom. After his coronation solemnly performed, the other six champions conducted him to a princely palace, where he took true allegiance from the Morocco lords, by plighted oaths to be true to him. After this, he established the Christian laws, to the use of the whole country: then he commanded all the heathen rites of Mahomet to be trodden under foot, and the true gospel of Christ to be preached: likewise he caused that all who did remain in Barbary to be christened in the name of Christ. But these observations continued but for a time, as I shall be discovered at large. For Fame, not intent to let the worthy champions long to remain in the idleness of peace, summoned them to persevere in the noble labours of arms, and to muster up anew their soldiers, whose cankered ease had almost stained with rust: then St. George committed the government of the country to the principal peers of Morocco, and marched toward the country of Egypt, where lived treacherous Ptolemy, the father of his beloved lady Sabra, whom he had left in the kingdom of England. In which journey and happy stay in Egypt we will leave the seven champions for a time, to speak of the faithless infidels in Barbary after the death of the Christians, whose former honours they slighted and regarded: for no sooner had St. George, with his martial friends, bidden their country adieu, but the faithless Moors cited themselves to their former gods, and purposed to take revenge for the death of Almidor, against all Christians. *He remained within the limits of that heathen nation, where many soldiers wounded in the late battle.*



ressed with sickness, which the Christian champions behind for their better recoveries, upon whom the Moors committed their first tyranny ; for they distressed soldiers to be drawn upon sledges to set parts of the city, and there put them into a cold monastery, which they presently set on fire, humanly buried the Christian soldiers, and after he place into a filthy laystall : many women and children they dragged up and down the streets, rains were dashed against the stones, and the covered the earth with a purple hue. Many lies were committed by the wicked infidels against the Christians, which I purpose to pass over, and the course of the Christian champions' proceedings, : time were arrived in the kingdom of Egypt.

CHAP. XV.

pions of Christendom no sooner arrived upon the if Egypt, where they supposed to have adventures upon the chance of war, but all things fell y to their expectations ; they found the gates llage and town unpeopled ; for the commons at of the Christians' arrival, secretly hid their trea- caves of the earth, in deep wells, and such-like ces, and a general fear and extreme terror as- Egyptians, as well the peers of the land as the try people : many fled into woods and wilder- closely hid themselves in hollow trees ; many es in the ground, where they thought best to re- fety ; and many fled to high mountains, where ime lived in great extremity, feeding upon the e ground : so greatly the Egyptians feared the e Christians, that they expected nothing but the r country, with the loss of their own lives, and of their wives and children.

weak of the Christian champions, who, finding the solate of people, suspected some deep policy of ans, thinking to have murdered their warlike d them battle ; therefore St. George gave coun- through the whole camp, that not a man, upon

ampion of England beheld, in this manner .

; followers :

" Behold," said he, " you invincible captains of Christendom, yonder those cursed towers, where wicked Ptolemy keeps his court ; those battlements, I say, were they as richly built as the great pyramids of Greece, yet should they be subverted and laid as level with the ground, as the city of Carthage ; there hath that accursed Ptolemy his residence, that for preserving his daughter from the burning dragon treacherously sent me into Persia, where for seven years I lived in great extremity in a dismal dungeon, where the sun did never give me light, nor the company of people comfort in revenge whereof, my heart shall never rest in quiet, till I see the buildings of his palace set on fire, and converted into a place of desolation, like to the glorious city in Phrygia now overspread with stinking weeds and loathsome puddles ; therefore let all Christian soldiers, that fight under the banner of Christendom, and all that love George of England your chosen general, draw forth your warlike weapons like the angry Greeks overturn those glittering battlements ; leave not one stone upon another, but lay it as level with the ground, and the fields of ripened corn

silver trumpets recorded echoes of victory; the barbed
swords grew proud of this attempt, and would stand upon no
ground, but leaped and danced with as much courage, as did
Bucephalus, the horse of the Macedonian Alexander, al-
ways before any notable victory; yea, every thing gave an
evident sign of good success, as well senseless things as
living creatures.

With this resolution marched the Christians, purposing
the utter confusion of the Egyptians, and the woful ruin and
destruction of Ptolemy's sumptuous palace. But when the
soldiers approached the gates, there came pacing out thereat
the Egyptian king, with all the chiefest of his nobles, attired
in black and mournful ornaments, bearing in their hands
olive-branches: next them the bravest soldiers in Egypt,
bearing in their hands broken weapons, shivered lances, and
torn ancients; likewise followed thousands of women and
children, with cypress wreaths about their heads, and in
their hands olive-branches, crying for mercy to the Chris-
tians, that they should not utterly destroy their declining
country, but shew mercy to unhappy Egypt. This unex-
pected sight, or rather admirable wonder, caused St. George
to sound a retreat, and give commandment through the
Christian army, to withhold their former vowed vengeance
from the Egyptians, till he understood what they required:
which charge being given and duly observed, St. George
with the other six champions came together, and admitted
the Egyptian king with his nobles to their presence, who in
this manner began to speak for his country:

"You unconquered knights of Christendom, whose wor-
thy victories and noble achievements the whole world ad-
mires, let him that never kneeled to any man till now, and
in former times disdained to humble himself to any poten-
tate on earth; let him, I say, the most unfortunate wretch
alive, crave mercy, not for myself, but for my country;
my commons' blood will be required at my hands: our mur-
dered infants will call to heaven for revenge, and our
slaughtered widows sink down to hell for revenge: so will
the vengeance of heaven light upon my soul, and the curse
of hell upon my head.

"Renowned champion of England, under whose custody
*my dear daughter is kept, even for the love of her be merci-
ful to Egypt.*

"The former wrongs I proffered thee, when I sent like a guiltless lamb, into Persia, were contrary to my for I was incensed by the flattery of that accursed I moor king, whose soul for ever be scourged with wh wire, and plagued with the punishment of Tantalus in If my life will serve for a just revenge, here is my breast, let my heart blood stain some Christian's s that you may bear the bloody witness of my death Christendom, or let me be torn in a thousand pieces by untamed steeds, as was Hippolitus, son of Theseus, i charmed chariot.

"Most mighty controllers of the world, command dearest things in Egypt, they be at your pleasures. will forsake our gods, and believe in that God which commonly adore, for he is the true and living God, false and hateful in the sight of heaven."

This penitent lamentation of the Egyptian king caused Christian champions to relent, but especially St. George who having a heart beautified with a well-spring of not only granted mercy to the whole country, but vassafed Ptolemy liberty of life, upon condition that would perform what he had promised; which was, to sake his false gods, and believe in our true God, C Jesus.

This kindness of St. George almost ravished Ptolemy joy; and the whole land both peers and commons, rejoiced at the friendship of the Christians, than if they been made lords of the western world. The news of happy union was bruited in all the parts of Egypt; w by the commons, that before fled for fear into woods wildernesses, dens and caves, hills and mountains, returned joyfully to their own dwellings, and caused bonfires made in every city, town, and village; the bells of England rang day and night, for the space of a week; in every was seen banqueting, dancing, and masking; sorrow banished, wars forgotten, and peace proclaimed.

The king at his own charge ordained a sumptuous costly banquet for the Christian champions, wherein bounty it exceeded that which the Trojans made, when *ris returned from Greece with the conquest of Menelaus queen. The banqueting-house was built with cyprus covered with the pure adamant stone; so that*

base iron could come therein, but it was presently drawn to the top of the roof. As for the variety of services which graced forth the banquet, it were too tedious to repeat; but to be brief, what both the land and sea could afford, was there present. The servitors that attended the champions at the banquet, were attired in damask vestments, wrought with the purest silk the Indian virgins spun upon their silver wheels: at every course the servitors brought in a concert of Egyptian ladies, who on their ivory lutes strained forth such admired harmony, that it surpassed Orion's music, which, when he was cast into the sea, caused the dolphins to bring him safe to the shore, or the sweetness of Orpheus's silver harp, which made both stones and trees to dance; or the melody of Apollo's inspiring music, when he descended to the lower parts for the love of Daphne. These pleasures so ravished the Christian champions, that they forgot the sound of warlike drums, which were wont to call them forth to bloody battles. But these delights continued but a short time, for there arrived a knight from England, that brought such unexpected news to St. George, that changed his joys into extreme sorrow; for after this manner began the messenger to tell his woful tale:

"Fair England's champion," said he, "instead of arms, get swallow's wings, and fly to England, if ever thou wilt see thy beloved lady, for she is judged to be burned at a stake for murdering the earl of Coventry; whose lustful desires would have stained her honour with infamy, and made her the scorn of virtuous women: yet this mercy is granted by the king of England, that if within twelve months a champion may be found, that for her sake will venture his life, if it be his fortune to overcome the challenger of her death, she shall live: but if it be his fatal destiny to be conquered, then must she suffer the heavy judgment before pronounced; therefore, as you love the life of your chaste and beloved lady, haste into England, delay no time, for delay is dangerous, and her life in hazard to be lost."

This ill news struck such a terror into St. George's heart, likewise to the Egyptian king her father, that for a time they stood gazing in one another's face, as though they had been bereaved of their wits, not able to speak one word; but at last St. George recovered his former sense and breathed forth this sorrowful lamentation:

"O England! O unkind England! have I advanc'd my life in thy defence, and for thy defence have I fought the field of Mars, buckled on my armour in many a hot summer's day, and many a freezing winter's when you have taken your quiet sleeps on beds of down, and will you repay me with this discourtesy, to add to my spotless body to consuming fire? whose blood if it is shed before I come, I vow never to draw my trusty sword for England's quarrel more, nor ever account myself her champion; but I will wander unknown countries, obscure the sight of any Christian eye. Is it possible that I will be so ungrateful to her friend? can that rich country harbour such a lustful monster, to seek to devour her, within whose heart the fountain of virtue flows, or can that noble city, the nurse and mother of my country, contain so vile a homicide, that will offer violence to her whose chastity and true honour hath caused tameless sleep in her lap?"

In this sorrowful manner wearied St. George till day was away, until the Egyptian king, whose sorrow being known as his, put him from his complaints, and requested an English knight to tell the true discourse of Sabra's passion, violence, and how she murdered the lustful earl of Salisbury; to whom, after a bitter sigh or two, the knight thus replied, in this manner:

"Most noble princes and potentates of the earth, lend your ears to entertain the wofullest tale that ever knight discoursed, and your eyes to weep seas of blood and tears. I would I had no tongue to tell it, nor heart to remember it; but seeing I am compelled, through trust and duty I owe the noble champions of Christendom to express it, then thus it was.

"It was the fortune, nay I may say, unhappy fate of your beloved lady, upon an evening, when the moon almost lodged in the west, to walk without the wall of the ventry, to take the pleasures of the sweet fields and flourishing meadows, which Flora had beautified in a sumptuous livery; but as she walked up and down, sometimes taking pleasure to hear the chirping birds how they strain their silver notes; other times taking delight to see how they had covered both hills and dales with sundry sorts of flowers, then walking to see the crystal running river

music of whose streams exceeded the rest for pleasure she (kind lady) delighting herself by the river sudden and strange alteration troubled her mind; for of gold that she did wear about her neck presently colour, from a yellow burnished brightness to a meagre: her rings fell from her fingers, and from her drops of blood, whereat her heart began to throb, to glow, and every joint to tremble with fear. An accident caused her speedily to haste home: but by the way she met the earl of Coventry, at that time to take the pleasure of the evening air, with a train of worthy gentlemen, as though he had the greatest peer in England: whose sight, when she was far off, her heart began to misgive, thinking that he had allotted those gentlemen to proffer her some

so that upon her cheeks fear had set a vermillion whereby her beauty grew admirable: which when the earl saw, he was ravished therewith, and deemed her the best creature that ever nature framed. Their meeting was silent; she shewed the humility of a virtuous lady, the courtesy of a kind gentleman: she departed from him, and he into the fields; she thinking all danger, he practising in his mind her utter ruin and downfall: the dart of love had shot from her beautiful eyes into his heart, not true love, but lust; so that he could not quench his desire, but the conquest of her chaste and extreme passion bewitched his mind, that he commanded his servants every one to depart: and then, like a moping man, he wandered up and down the fields, in his mind a thousand different ways to obtain his love: for without he enjoyed her love, he was likely to end in endless languishment.

At length he departed home, where sending for his wife, he ordered him to provide a sumptuous and costly banquet, to entertain all the principal ladies in Coventry; accordingly repaired to his entertainment, at the time he was appointed: the banquet was brought in by the servants, and placed upon the table by the earl himself, after many welcomes given, began thus to move as to delight:

'Think my house most highly honoured,' said he, 'that you have vouchsafed to grace it with your presence, for

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

on beautify my hall, as the twinkling stars beautify
oil of heaven: but amongst the number of you
have a Cynthia, a glittering silver moon, that for
s exceedeth all the rest; for she is fairer than the
Cyprus, lovelier than Dido, and of more majesty
a queen of love.

is commendation caused a general smile of the la-
nd made them look one upon another, whom it should
Many other court-like discourses pronounced the earl
ove the ladies' delight, till the banquet was ended
h being finished, there came in certain gentlemen,
earl's appointment, with most excellent music; w
ers that danced most curiously, with as much maj
Paris in the Grecian court. At last the earl requ
e of them to choose out his beloved mistress, and
er some stately corants; likewise requesting that
ould be offended what lady soever he did affect to
with that courtly pastime: at which request all o
were silent, and silence is commonly a sign of c
therefore he emboldened himself the more to mak
sires known to the beholders. Then with exceed
tesy, and great humility, he kissed the beauteous
Sabra, who, with a blushing countenance, and bas
accepted his courtesy, and like a kind lady disc
to dance with him. So when the musicians str
their inspiring melody, the lustful earl led h
about the hall, and she followed with as much
the queen of pleasure had been present to
courtly delights; and so when the first cour
he found fit opportunity to unfold his secret
veal unto the lady his extreme passions o
were in these speeches thus expressed:

"Most divine and peerless paragon!"
only wonder of the world for beauty and
ments of nature! know that thy twinkling
more bright than the light of heaven,
heart, and those thy crimson cheeks
with love therefore, except thou grant
I am like to spend the remnant of my
and discontent. I blush to speak wh
have settled my love where it is unlaw
kings may sleep and surfeit with deli

most divine mistress, for there my heart is kept prisoner ; beauty is the keeper, and love the key, my ransom is a constant mind. Admit thy lord and husband be alive, yet hath he most unkindly left thee to spend thy young years in solitary widowhood : he is unconstant, like *Aeneas*, and thou more hapless than *Dido*. He marcheth up and down the world in glittering armour, and never doth intend to return : he abandoneth thy presence, and lieth sporting in strange ladies' laps ; therefore, dear *Sabra*, live not to consume thy youth in singleness, for age will overtake thee too soon, and convert thy beauty to wrinkled frowns.'

"To which words, *Sabra* would presently have made answer, but that the music called them to dance the second course ; which being ended, she replied in this manner :

"Most noble lord," said she, 'for our bounteous banquet and courteous entertainment, I give the humble thanks of a poor lady ; but for your suit and unlawful desire, I do detest as much as the sight of a crocodile, and your flattering glosses I esteem as much as doth the ocean of a drizzling shower of rain ; your syren songs shall never entice me to listen to your fond requests : but I will, like *Ulysses*, stop my ears, and bury all your flattering enticements in the lake of forgetfulness. Think you that I will stain my marriage-bed with the least spot of infamy, that will not proffer me one thought of wrong, for all the treasures of the wealthy seas ? Surely the gorgeous sun shall lose his light by day, and the silver moon by night, the skies shall fall, the earth shall sink, and every thing shall change from kind and nature, before I will falsify my faith, or prove disloyal to my beloved *George*. Attempt no more, my noble lord, to batter the fortress of my good name with your flattery, nor seek to stain my honour with your lustful desires. What if my lord and husband prove disloyal, and choose out other loves in foreign lands ? yet will I prove as constant to him, as *Penelope* to her *Ulysses* ; and if it be his pleasure never to return, but spend his days among strange ladies, yet will I live in single solitariness, like the turtle dove when she hath lost her mate, abandoning all company ; or as the mournful swan, that swims upon *Meander's* silver streams, where she records her dying tunes to raging billows ; so will I spend away my lingering days in grief, and die.'

"This resolution of the virtuous lady so devouted the

t, that the tears of my true
 u behold him plead for grace, that hath
 / many worthy dames? I am a man that can com
 countries, yet can I not command thy stubborn heart
 e Sabra, if thou wilt grant me thy love, and yield t
 esire, I will have thee clad in silken robes, and de
 vestures, embossed with Indian pearls, and rich r
 gold, perfumed with camphire, biss, and Syrian swee
 umes; by day a hundred virgins shall usually atten
 person; by night a hundred eunuchs, with their straine
 truments, shall bring thy senses into a golden slumber
 this, my dear, divine, and dainty mistress, is at th
 ommand, and more, so that I may enjoy thy love and
 our: which if I have not, I will discontentedly end
 life in woods and desert places, tigers and untamed be
 eing my chief companions.'

"These vain promises caused the beauteous Sabr
 lush with bashfulness, and to give him this sharp ans

" 'Think you, my lord, with promises to obtain th
 ions gem, which I will not lose for Europe's trea
 silent in that enterprise, and never af
 our. which if you do, I

, and like a lion wanting food, raged up and down his chamber, and filling every corner with bitter exclamations, rending his garments from his back, tearing his hair, beating his breast, and using all the violence he could against himself.

" In this manner spent he away the night, suffering no sleep to close the windows of his body. His melancholy and extreme passion so discontented his mind, that he purposed to give end to his sorrows by some untimely death : so when the morning appeared, he made his repair to an orchard, where Sabra once a day walked to take the air. The place was very melancholy, and far from the noise of people ; where, after he had spent some certain time in exclaiming against the unkindness of Sabra, he pulled his poniard from his side, and prepared his breast to entertain the stroke of death ; but before the pretended tragedy, with his dagger he engraved these verses following, upon the bark of a walnut-tree.

" " O heart more hard than bloody tigers fell !
 O ears more deaf than senseless troubled seas !
 O cruel foe ! thy rigour doth excel :
 For thee I die, thy anger to appease :
 But time will come, when thou shalt find me slain,
 Then thy repentance will increase thy pain.

" " I here engrave my will and testament,
 That my sad grief thou may'st behold and see,
 How that my woful heart is torn and rent,
 And gor'd with bloody blade, for love of thee ;
 Whom thou disdain'st, as now the end doth try,
 That thus distress'd doth suffer me to die.

" " Oh god of love, if so there any be,
 And you of love that feel the deadly pain,
 Oh Sabra, thou that thus afflictest me,
 Hear these my words, which from my heart I strain :
 Ere that my corpse be quite bereav'd of breath,
 Here I declare the cause of this my death.

" " You mountain nymphs, which in the deserts reign,
 Leave off your chase from savage beasts awhile,
 Prepare to see a heart oppress'd with pain,
 Address your ears to hear my doleful style :

hair,
'd,
hair;

ur;

ar:

nd engraven
rathful coun-
e the poniard
instant he be-
nted walks of
caused other
he Furies did
nbling tongue
e farthest side
er drawn, and
atfully threat-

compass of an hour, before I obtain my long-desired spouse.

"And thereupon he stepped to the orchard-door, and with all expedition locked it, and put the key in his pocket; then returned he, like a hunger-starved wolf, to seize upon the silly lamb: or like the chased boar, when he is wounded with the hunter's lance, came running to the helpless lady, intending her present rape and foul dishonour; but she, thinking all hope of aid and succour to be void, fell into a dead swoon, being not able to move for the space of an hour: but yet at last, having recovered her dead senses, she began in this pitiful manner to defend her assailed chastity from the wicked earl, that stood over her with his bloody dagger, threatening most cruelly her final confusion.

"*'My lord of Coventry,'* said she, with weeping tears and kneeling upon the ground, *'is virtue banished from your breast? Have you a mind more tyrannous than the tigers in Hyconia, that nothing may suffice to satisfy your lustful desires but the stain of mine honour and the conquest of my chastity? If it be my beauty that hath enticed you, I am content to have it converted to a loathsome leprosy, whereby to make me odious in your eyes; if it be my rich and costly garments that make me beautiful, and so entangle you, henceforth I will attire my body in poor and simple array, and for evermore dwell in country caves and cottages, so that I may preserve my chastity unspotted. If none of these may suffice to abate your tyrannous intent, but that your lust will make me time's wonder, and pointing-stock, and scorn of virtuous ladies, then will the heavens revenge my wrongs, to whom I will incessantly make my petitions: the birds in the air, after their kind, will evermore exclaim against your wickedness: the sylvan beasts that abide in woods and deserts, will breathe forth clamours of your wickedness: the creeping worms, that live within the crevices of the earth, will give dumb signs and tokens of your wickedness: the running rivers will murmur at your wickedness: the woods and trees, herbs and flowers, with every senseless thing, will sound some motions of your wickedness. Return, return, my noble lord, unto your former virtues; banish such fond desires out of your mind; stain not the honour of your house with such black scandals and disgrace: bear this in mind before you do attempt so vile a*

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

in: What became of Helen's ravishment, but the destruction of renowned Troy: What of Roman Lucretia's rape, but the banishment of Tarquin? And what of Progne's deflourment by her sister's husband, the lustful king Thracæ, but the bloody banquet of his young son whose tender body they served to his table, baked in a

"At which speeches the ireful earl wrapped his within her locks of hair, which was covered with a caul of gold, and in this manner presently replied unto

"What tellest thou me of poets' tales," said Progne's rape, and Tereus's bloody banquet? Thy ment shall be an induction to thy tragedy, which yield not willingly, I will obtain by force and therefore prepare thyself, either to entertain the pronounced, or yield thy body to my pleasure."

"This resolution of the earl added grief upon heaped mountains of sorrow upon her soul. The hapless lady cast her eyes to heaven, in hope would pity her distress, and twice unto the ear the ground might open and devour her, and so from the fury of the wicked earl: but at last, that neither tears, prayers, nor wishes, could give an outward sign of consenting upon sorrow under colour to devise a present means to pre-tivity, and deliver herself from his lustful assaill is no condition," said the earl, "but I would thou wilt grant my desire, and make me chie thy love."

"First, my lord," quoth she, "shall you some certain hours upon this bed of viole loss of my good name, which shortly shall your pleasure; then shall you lie and thereby to make my affections, yet free with burning brands of love; that being ceive your wished desire."

"Those words caused the earl to come to smiling joy, and casting down his courteous kiss, which she in his conce Then caused he Sabra to sit down beset about with divers sorts of flow his pillow, whereupon he laid his thought, to increase desire: but w



t wits ; so Sabra basied herself by all means possible now or never to remove the cause of deep dis-actising his death, and so quit herself from her suitor. One while she told him pleasant tales to bring his senses to a slumber, the better to shew her desires ; other while she played and sported with his hair, that hung dangling below his shoulders in treads of silk : but at last, when neither tales, nor dallying pastime with his hair, could bring him to sleep, she strained forth the organs of her voice, and sung this woful ditty :

god of sleep and golden dreams, appear,
bringst all things to peace and quiet rest ;
the glasses of his eyes so clear,
thy to make my fortune ever blest :
his heart, his senses, and his mind,
sleep let them some comfort find.

sweet, you pretty birds in tops of trees,
warbling tunes and many a pleasant note ;
your sweet music close his watchful eyes,
in my love with vain desires both dote :
O my dear, sleep on, my love's delight,
and sleep be thy eternal night.

gentle bees, the Muses' lovely birds,
aid my doleful tunes with silver sound,
your inspiring melody records
heavenly music that may quite confound
his sense, and tire his eyes with sleep,
and lap in sweet content I keep.

silver streams, which murmuring music make,
fill each dale with pleasant harmony,
the floating fish much pleasure take,
and your sweet recording melody,
tunes his slumb'ring eyes to close,
and lap now takes a sweet repose.

hispering winds in every senseless tree,
Omn, sad, and doleful music sing :
from hills and dales, and from each mountain high,
send me inspiring sound or echo ring,
that I never wake from sleep again,
but at my marriage-bed with lust to stain.

"This delightful song rocked his senses to such a slumber, that he slept as soundly upon her lap as softest bed of down; whereby she found a fit opportunity to deliver her undefiled body from his lustful desire, taking the poniard in her hand, which he had cast aside, and gazing thereon with an ireful look, she made sad complaint:

" 'Grant, you immortal powers of heaven,' said she, 'that of these two extremes I choose the best; either yield my body to be dishonoured by his unchaste embrace, or stain my hands with the trickling streams of his blood. If I yield unto the first, I shall be then as a victim for a vicious dame: but if I commit the last, I shall be guilty of a wilful murder, and for the same the law shall judge me a shameful death. What, shall I fear to lose my virtue and renown? No, my heart shall be as valiant as Danaus's daughters, that slew their fathers with bands in a night; or as Medea's cruelty, which she stained her brother's bloody joints upon the sea-shore, to hinder the swift pursuit of her father, when Jason took the golden fleece from Colchos' isle. Therefore stand ye, glittering lamps of heaven, stay, wandering time, and let him sleep eternally.'

"These words were no sooner ended, but with a pale countenance, she sheathed the poniard upon his hilt in the closure of his breast, whereat he started, as if he had gotten upon his feet, but the streams of blood slowly gushed from his wound, that he declined immediately to the earth, and his soul was forced to give the doleful adieu.

"When Sabra beheld the bed of violets stained with blood, and every flower converted to a crimson colour, she was grievously affected: but when she saw her garments sprinkled with her enemy's blood, she ran speedily unto a flowing fountain that stood on the farther side of the orchard, and there she washed the blood out of her clothes; but the more she washed, the more it increased.

"This wonderful accident so amazed the sorrowful Sabra, that she began anew to complain: 'Oh that my hand had been struck lame by some unlucky planet, when first I tempted the deed! Whither shall I fly to shroud myself from the company of virtuous women, which will for

a detested murderer? If I should go into some
 try, these Heaven will cast down vengeance for
 f I should hide myself in woods and solitary
 s, yet would the winds discover me; or if I
 ve in cavern, or dark dens within the deep foun-
 be earth, yet will his ghost pursue me there, and
 ay and night: so that in no place a murderer can
 such discontented thoughts shall still oppress his
 r she had breathed forth this comfortless human-
 s air, she tore her blood-stained garment from
 and cast it into the fountain.

ing disrobed into her petticoat, she turned to the
 earl, whose face she found covered with moss,
 and more grief unto her soul, for she greatly feared
 was descried; but it fell not out as she mistrusted,
 nature and kind of the robin-red-breast, and other
 ys to cover the face of any dead man, and those
 that bred this fear in the lady's heart. By this
 ay began to shut up his bright windows, and sable
 ed to take possession of the earth, yet durst not
 listressed Sabra make her repair homewards, lest
 be descried without her upper garment.

g which time, there was a general search made
 d by his servants, for they greatly suspected some
 d befallen him, considering that they had heard
 ght before so wofully complain in his chamber.
 ith torch-lights, they came to the orchard gate,
 r presently burst open; wherein no sooner enter-
 ey found their murdered master lying by a bed of
 vered with moss; likewise searching to find out
 rer, at last they espied Sabra in her bare petti-
 ands and face sprinkled with blood, and her coun-
 pale as ashes: by which signs they suspected her
 bloody bereaver of their lord and master's life:
 because she descended from a noble lineage, they
 r the same night before the king, which then kept
 in the city of Coventry, who immediately upon
 sion of the murder, gave this severe judgment
 r:

; to be conveyed to prison, there to remain for the
 elve months, and at the end thereof to be burned
 t wicked offender: yet because she was the daugh-

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

king, and a loyal lady to so noble a knight, his mercy granted her this favour, that if she fought at arms, before the time was expired, that champion, and by combat redeem her from death, could live, otherwise, if her champion was vanquished, to suffer the former punishment."

Thus have you heard the discourse of all threatened till my departure from England, where I rison, and since that time five months are full; therefore, most renowned champion, as you love your lady, and wish her delivery, make no tar with all speed post into England, for I greatly you arrive the time will be finished, and Sabra or want of a champion to defend her cause."

This doleful discourse drove St. George, with knights and champions, to such an ecstasy every one departed to their lodging chambers, signs of sorrow being not able to speak one for that night they lamented the misfortune of a lady. The Egyptian king her father abated of all companies, that none could come with heaven of injustice, condemning the earth accusing man for such an execrable crime, that his daughter's birth-day had been another time that some unlucky planet firmament, and fall upon his miserable tenance again; and so about midnight extreme passion, he never hoped to see long from the top of the tower, and before

No sooner was the night vanished, entered the zodiac of heaven, but his body senseless, was found by his servants all beaten in pieces against the ground; this self-willed murder they told to him who took his scattered limbs, and carried him towards England, but at this discordant conceited grief in such extremity most cost him his life, but that him many comfortable speeches of dukes, earls, lords, and barons

g's privy-council, they elected him the true succeeding king of Egypt, by the marriage of Ptolemy's daughter ; which royal proffer St. George refused not, but took upon him the government of the whole country ; so that for a short time his journey towards England was stayed, and upon the third day following, his coronation was appointed, which they solemnly performed, to the high honour of all the Christian champions : for the Egyptian peers caused St. George to be apparelled in royal vestures like a king : he had on a suit of flaming green, like an emerald, and a mantle of scarlet, very richly furred, and wrought curiously with gold. Then the other six champions led him up to the king's throne, and set him in a chair of ebony, which had pumells of silver, that stood upon an alabaster elephant ; then came three of the greatest lords in Egypt, and set a crown of gold upon his head : then followed the knights, with a sceptre and a naked sword, to signify that he was chief governor of the realm, and lord of all that appertained to the crown of Egypt. This being performed in a most sumptuous manner, the trumpets with other instruments began to sound, whereat the general company with joyful voices cried altogether, ' Long live St. George, true champion for England, and king of Egypt.' Then was he conducted to the royal palace, where for ten days he remained among his lords and knights, spending the time in great joy and pleasure ; which being finished, his lady's distress constrained him to a sudden departure : therefore he left the guiding of his land to twelve Egyptian lords, binding them all by oath to deliver it at his return ; likewise charging them to inter the body of Ptolemy in a sumptuous tomb, befitting the body of so royal a potentate : he also appointed the six champions to raise their tents, and muster up anew their soldiers, and with all speed march into Persia, and there, by dint of bloody war, revenge his former injuries upon the accursed soldan.

This charge being given, the next morning by break of day he buckled on his armour, mounted on his swift-footed steed, and bade his friends in Egypt for a season adieu ; and so, in company of the knight that brought him that unlucky news, he took his journey with all speed towards England ; in which travel we will leave him for a time ; also passing over the speedy provision made by the Christian champions in Egypt, for the invasion of Persia, and return to sorrowful

and unfeignedly committed her soul to God. She b
the stake, where the king was present with many the
to behold this woful tragedy, the death's-man strip
her garment, which was of black sarsnet, and in he
white smock bound her with an iron chain unto the
then placed they round about her tender body pitch,
tine, and gunpowder, thereby to make her death th
easy, and her pain the shorter ; which being done, t
caused the herald to summon in the challenger, wh
sound of the trumpet came tracing in upon a roan-c
steed, without any kind of mark, and trapped with ri
pings of gold, and precious stones of great price. Th
pion was called the baron of Chester, a bolder and
knight they thought lived not then upon the face of th
earth; he so advanced himself up and down, as thoug
been able to encounter with a hundred knights. Then
caused the herald to summon in the defendant, if the
any to defend her cause ; both drums and trumpets :
three several times up and down the fields ; betwix
rest was a full quarter of an hour, but yet no defen
ence, therefore the king commanded the execution

and that either my lord may come to be my
sad beholder of my death. But if my hand
with the blood about some wicked enterprise,
shew present vengeance upon me, else by some
mean save my body alive."

Instant, she heard the sound of a shrill trumpet.
St. George caused to be winded (for as then
which caused the execution awhile to be de-
stayed, they beheld afar off a stately banner wav-
ing, which a squire carried before St. George;
and near unto the banner a most valiant armed
man upon a coal-black palfrey, with a warlike
equipage: by which sudden approach they
perceived the same champion that would defend the
life. Then the king commanded the drums
to sound: whereat the people gave a general
cry, and lady, half dead with fear, began to re-
fresh her cheeks to be as beautiful as red roses
as blood mingled with snow. But when
she beheld the sight of his constant lady, whom
he had laid on a stake, encompassed with many instru-
ments of death, her heart so relented with grief, that he al-
tered his horse: yet remembering wherefore he
was there, and his courage, and intended to try his for-
tune before he would discover himself unto
the trumpets sounded death's alarm,
he turned to their horses, and made them run
into the first encounter they shivered both
man and horse, then rushed they together so vi-
olently, that they fell down
before St. George nimbly leaped upon his
horse, but the baron of Chester lay still
dead, casting from his mouth abundance
of blood, rightily bruised with the fall: but
in a trance, he took his shield, drawing
out with wrathful countenance ran
forth, "proud knight," quoth he, "I swear
even, to revenge my blood, which
herewithal he struck so violently
that it cleaved quite asunder.
St. George, and took his sword in great
force, and gave of Chester such a stroke, that he

cut away arm and shoulder, and all the flesh of his side to the bare ribs, and likewise cut his leg almost quite in sunder, in the thickest place of his thigh; then fell the baron of Chester to the ground, and breathed his last.

The whole company admired and applauded St. George for the most fortunate knight in the world: then the king delivered Sabra with his own hands to St. George, who most courteously received her, and, like a courteous knight, cast a scarlet mantle over her body, which a lady standing by bestowed upon him; yet he minding not to discover himself, but set her upon his portly steed, and with his own hands led him by the bridle reins. So great was the joy throughout the city, that the bells rung without ceasing that whole day together; the citizens, through every place St. George should pass, did hang forth at their windows, and on their walls, cloths of gold and silk, with rich carpets; cushion coverings of green velvet lay abroad in every window; the clergy, in copes of gold and silk, met them in solemn procession; the ladies and beautiful damsels strewed every street whereas he passed with roses and most pleasant flowers, and crowned with a wreath of green bays, in sign of his triumphant victory and conquest.

In this manner went he to the king's palace, not known by any what he should be, but that he was a knight of a strange country: yet Sabra, many times as they passed along, desired to see his face, and know his name, for that he had adventured so far for her sake and that for her delivery he had vanquished the bravest knight in England. Yet for all her persuasions, he kept himself undiscovered, till a troop of ladies, in company of Sabra, got him into a chamber richly hung with arras cloth, and there unlaced his beaver; whose countenance when she beheld, and saw that it was her lord and husband, which had redeemed her from death, she fell into a dead swoon for joy; but St. George sprinkled a little cold water on her face, and revived her presently. After this he gave her many a kind and loving kiss, calling her the most true and the most loyal lady that ever nature framed, that to the very death would not lose one jot of her unspotted honour. Likewise she accounted him *the truest knight and truest husband that ever heaven's Hymen linked in bands of marriage with any woe*
But when the king had notice that it was St. George

stry's champion, which achieved that noble conquest in conquishing the baron of Chester, he was ravished with such joy, that he came running in all haste to the chamber, and most kindly embraced him ; and after he was unarmed, and his wounds washed with white wine and new milk, the king conducted him with his lady to his banqueting-house, where they feasted for that evening, and afterward kept open court for all comers so long as St. George continued there, which was for the space of one month : at the end whereof, he took his lady and one page with him, and bade England adieu, and then he travelled towards Persia, to the other Christian champions, whose dangerous journey, and strange adventure, you may read in this chapter following.

CHAP. XVI.

AFTER St. George, with his virtuous lady, departed from England, and had travelled through many countries, taking their direct courses towards Egypt and the confines of Persia, where the other six champions remained with the warlike legions, at last they arrived in the country of the Amazonians, a land inhabited by none but women : in which region St. George achieved many brave and princely adventures, which are most wonderful to rehearse, as after is declared : for travelling up and down the country, they found every town and city desolate of people, yet very sumptuously built, the earth likewise untilld, the pastures uncherished, and every field overgrown with weeds, whereby he deemed that some strange accident had befallen the country, either by war, or mortality of some grievous plague, for they could neither set eye of man, woman, nor child, whereby they were forced to feed upon roots ; and instead of brave palaces, they were constrained to lie on broad pastures, upon the banks of moss ; and instead of curtains of silk, they had black and dark clouds to cover them.

In this extremity they travelled up and down for thirty days : but at last it was their happy fortunes to arrive before a rich pavilion, situated and standing in the open fields, which seemed to be the most glorious sight that ever they beheld, for it was wrought of the richest works in the world ; all of green and crimson satin, bordered with gold and azure ;

the posts that bare it up were of ivory, the cords of green silk, and on the top thereof there stood an eagle of gold and at the two corners two green silver griffins shining against the sun, which seemed in richness to exceed the monument of Mausolus, being one of the world's twelve wonders. They had not there remained long, admiring at the beauty of the workmanship, but at the entry of the pavilion there appeared a maiden queen, crowned with an imperial diadem, who was the fairest creature that ever he saw. On her attended Amazonian dames, bearing in their hands silver bows of the Turkish fashion, and at their backs hung quivers full of golden arrows; upon their heads they wore silver cornets, beset with pearls and precious stones; their attire comely and gallant, their faces fair and gentle to behold, their foreheads plain and white, the trammels of the hair like burnished gold; their brows small and proper, somewhat drawing to a brown colour: their visage plain, neither too long nor too round, but coloured like roses mixed with lilies; their noses long and strait, their ruddy cheeks somewhat smiling, their eyes lovely, and all the rest of their parts and lineaments by nature framed most excellent, who had made them in beauty without compare. The queen herself was clothed in a gown of green, strait girt unto her body with a lace of gold, so that somewhat of her round and lily-white breast might be seen, which became her wonderful well: beside all this, she had on a crimson kirtle, lined with violet-coloured velvet, and her wide sleeves were likewise of green silk, embroidered with flowers of gold and with rich pearls. When St. George had sufficiently beheld the beauty of this maiden queen, he alighted from his horse and humbled himself unto her excellency; and thus courteously began to question with her after this manner:

"Most divine and fair of all fairs, queen of sweet beauty," said he, "let a travelling knight obtain this favour at your hands, that both himself and his lady, whom you behold here wearied with travel, may take our rest within your pavilion for a night: for we have wandered up and down this country many a day, neither seeing man to give us lodging, nor finding food to cherish us, which made us wonder that so brave a country, and so beautified with natural ornaments as this is, should be left desolate of people cause whereof is strange I know, and full of wonder."

This question being courteously demanded by St. George, caused the Amazonian queen as kindly to reply :

" Sir knight," quoth she, " what favour my pavilion may afford, be assured of ; but the remembrance of my country's desolation, which you speak of, breeds a sea of sorrow in my soul, and maketh me sigh when I remember it ; but because you are a knight of a strange land I will report it, though unto my grief. About twelve years since it was a necromancer's chance to arrive within this country, his name is Osmond, the cunningest artist this day living upon earth, for he can at his call raise all the spirits out of hell, and with his charms make heaven to rain continually showers of blood : my beauty at that instant tempted him to love, and drowned his senses so in desire, that he assailed, by all persuasions that either wit or art could devise, to win me to his will ; but I having vowed myself to Diana's chastity, to live in singleness among these Amazonian maids, contemned his love, despised his person, and accounted his persuasions as ominous snakes ; for which he wrought the destruction of this my realm and kingdom ; for by his magic art and damned charms, he raised from the earth a mighty tower, the mortar whereof he mingled with virgin's blood, wherein are such enchantments wrought, that the light of the sun and the brightness of the skies is quenched, and the earth blasted with a terrible vapour and black mist, that ascended from the tower, whereby a general darkness overspread our land, the compass of twenty-four leagues, so this country is clean wasted and destroyed, and my people fled out thereof. The tower is haunted day and night with ghastly fiends ; and at his departure into Persia, where he now by enchantment aids the soldan in his wars against the Christians, he left the guarding of the same to a mighty and terrible giant, for shape the ugliest monster that ever eye be-held, or ever ear heard tell of, for he is thirty feet in length ; his head three times larger than the head of an ox ; his eyes bigger than two pewter dishes, and his teeth standing out of his mouth more than a foot, wherewith he will break through iron and steel ; his arms big and long without any measure, and his body as black as any coal, and as hard as steel ; also of such a strength, that he is able to carry away at once three knights armed ; and he never eateth other meat, but raw flesh of mankind : he is so light

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

nd swift, that a horse cannot run from him, and oftentimes
e hath been assailed with great troops of armed men, but
all of them could never do him any harm, neither with
sword, spear, cross-bows, nor any other weapon.

"Thus have you heard, most noble and courteous knight,
the true discourse of my utter ruin, and the vengeance
shewed upon my country by this wicked necromancer: for
which I have remained ever since in this pavilion amongst
my maidens, where we pray both day and night, some un-
happy fortune or terrible vengeance may fall upon this
wicked conjurer."

"Now as I am a true knight," replied St. George, "no
sooner shall the morning sun appear, but I will take my
journey to that enchanted tower, in which I'll enter in spite
of the giant, and break the enchantment, or make my grave
within the monster's bowels; which if I happily perform,
then will I travel into Persia, and fetter up the most wicked
necromancer, and like a bloodhound lead him up and down
the world in chains."

"Most dangerous is the adventure," quoth the Amazo-
nian queen, "from whence as yet did never knight return;
but if you be so resolute and noble-minded as to attempt
the enterprize, then happy be your fortune, and know, brave
knight, that this tower lieth westward from hence about
thirteen miles."

And thereupon she took him by the hand, and caused
Sabra likewise to alight from her palfrey, and led them
both into her pavilion, where they were feasted most roy-
ally, and for that night slept securely. But when the morn-
ing sun began to glitter, in all haste St. George arose, and
armed himself; where, after he had taken his leave of the
queen, and gave her thanks for his courteous entertainment, he
also took his leave of Sabra, whom he left in company with
the queen's maidens till his return with conquest, and so rode
forth till it was noon, and then he entered into a deep val-
ley, and he rode lower and lower. It was then a fair day,
and the sun shined clear; but by that time he had ridden
ten miles and a half, he had lost both the light and the sun,
and also the sight of heaven, for it was there as dark a
night, and more dismal than the deepest dungeon.

At last he found a mighty river, with streams as t'
as pitch, and the banks were so high, that the water

scarce
serpe
turne
and
knigh
thou
as n
hor
bloo
cok
tale
his
pie
I
gal
iro
wh
til
he
th
sl
to
t
!

ance be seen running underneath, and it was so full of serpents, that none could enter among them that ever returned back with life : about his head flew monstrous birds and divers griffins, who were able to bear away an armed knight, horse and all, and were in as great multitudes as though they had been starlings ; also there were flies as big as ants, and as black as pitch, which stung him and his horse so grievously, that there issued down such store of blood, that it changed his horse from a sable to a crimson colour ; likewise the griffins struck at St. George with their talons so furiously, that had he not defended himself with his shield, which covered his whole body, he had been pierced to the heart.

In this dangerous manner rode he on, till he came to the gates of the enchanted tower, whereat the giant sat in his iron coat, upon a block, with a mace of steel in his hand, who, at the first sight of St. George, beat his teeth so mightily together, that they rang like the stroke of an anvil, and he ran raging like a fiend of hell, thinking to have taken the champion's horse and all in his long teeth, that were as sharp as steel, and to have borne them presently into the tower : but when St. George perceived his mouth open, he took his sword, and thrust it therein so far, that it made the giant to roar aloud, that the elements seemed to thunder, and the earth to tremble, his mouth smoked like a fiery furnace, and his eyes rolled in his head like brands of flaming fire ; the wound was so great, and the blood issued so fast from the giant's mouth, that his courage began to fail, and against his will he was forced to yield to the champion's mercy, and to beg for life ; to which St. George agreed, but upon condition that the giant would discover all the secrets of the tower, and ever after be sworn his true servant, and attend on him with all diligence : to which the giant swore by his own soul never to leave him in extremity, and to answer him truly to all questions whatsoever. Then St. George demanded the cause of the darkness, and how it might be ceased. To which the giant answered in this manner :

“ There was in the country, about twelve years since, a cunning necromancer, that by enchantment built this tower, the which you now behold, and therein caused a terrible fire to spring from the earth, that cast such a smoke over the

whole land, whereby the people that were wont to dwell therein are fled and famished for hunger : also this enchanter by his art made the river that you have passed, which did never man before this time without death : also, within the tower near unto the fire, there stands a fair and pleasant fountain, to which if any knight be able to attain and call the water thereof into the fire, then shall the darkness ever after cease, and the enchantment end, for which cause have been bound to guard and keep the tower from the achievement of any knight."

Then when the giant had ended his discourse, St. George commanded him to remain at the gate, for he would adventure to end the enchantment, and deliver the country from so grievous a plague. Then went he close by the window of the tower, which were sixteen yards in length and breadth, till he came to a little wicket, through which he must need enter : yet was it set as thick with pikes of steel as the prickles of an urchin's skin, to the intent that no knight should approach near unto the door, nor once attempt to enter into the tower ; yet with great danger he opened the wicket, whereout came such abundance of smoke that the darkness of the country doubled, so that neither torch nor candle would burn in that place ; yet, nevertheless, St. George entered, and went downwards upon stairs where he could see nothing, but yet felt many great blows upon his burgonet, that he was constrained to kneel upon his knees, and with his shield to defend himself, or else he had been bruised to pieces. At last he came to the bottom and there he found a fair great vault, where he felt so terrible a heat that he sweat exceedingly ; and as he felt about him, he perceived that he approached near the fire ; and going a little farther, he espied out the fountain, whereat he greatly rejoiced : and so he took his shield, and bear therein as much water as he could, and cast it into the fire. In conclusion, he laboured so long, till the fire was quenched : then began the skies to receive their perfect lightness, and the golden sun to shine most clearly about him, where he plainly perceived how there stood upon stairs many great images of brass, holding in their mighty maces of steel, which had done him much at his coming down : but then their power was as fire quenched, and the enchantment finished.



When St. George, through his invincible fortitude, braved this dangerous adventure, he grew weary of that with heat and sweating, and the mighty blows from the brazen images, that he returned again naked, whereat the deformed giant still remained; when he beheld the champion returned both safe and well upon his knees before him, and said: "Right, you are most welcome, and happily returned: you are the flower of Christendom, and the bravest of the world. Command my service, duty, and; for whilst I live, I do profess by the burning Achéron, never to follow any other knight but you, upon I kiss your golden spur, which is the noble knight-hood."

The humble submission of the giant caused the champion not for his overthrow, but that he had gotten so a servant: then unlaced he his helmet, and laid down his weary encounter, where, after he had sufficed himself, he took his journey, in company of the Amazonian queen, where he left his lady and her virgins, who, like a kind, modest, and wise wife, during all the time of her husband's absence, had prayed to the immortal powers of heaven for his success and happy return, otherwise resolving that the lowering destinies should cross his intent, and end his days before the adventure were accomplished: to spend the remainder of her life among those virgins. But on the sudden, before the queen and her maids were aware, St. George arrived before the pavilion, attended on by the giant, who bore upon his back the body of a tall oak, by which the queen knew that her lord had redeemed her country from darkness, and her from her sorrow, care, and trouble: so in the arms of her maids, very gorgeously attired, she conducted the champion to a bower of roses, intermingled with vines, the which in his absence they planted for his sight. There found he Sabra at her divine prayer: a solitary widow, clad in mourning habiliments; she beheld her lord return in safety, she banished in haste ran unto him, and in his bosom ravished him with pleasure.

Weak how the Amazonian queen feasted them, and

in what manner she and her maids devised pastimes for their contests, were too tedious to repeat, but when night gave end to their pleasures, and sleep summoned all things to a quiet silence, the queen brought them to a very sumptuous lodging, where stood a bed framed with ebony-wood, overhung with many pendants of gold, the tick was stuffed with down of turtle-doves, the sheets of Median silk, thereon lay a rich quilt wrought with cotton, covered with damask, and stitched with threads of gold. But all this while the giant never entered the pavilion, but slept as soundly at the root of a pine-tree, as St. George did in his embroidered bed, for he knew not what pleasures belonged therunto, nor never before that time beheld any woman's face. At last the Night withdrew her black curtains, and gave the Morning leave to appear, whose pleasant light caused St. George to forsake his bed, and to walk some few miles to overview the country; in which journey he took such exceeding pleasure, that he thought it the goodliest realm that ever he saw, for he perceived well how it was full of worldly wealth.

At last, he climbed up to the top of a high mountain, being about two miles from the queen's pavilion, whereon he stood and beheld many stately towns and towers, high and mighty castles, many large woods and meadows, and many pleasant rivers; and about the towns, fair vines, goodly pastures, and fields. At last, he beheld the city of Argenia shining against the sun, the place where the queen in former time was wont to keep her court; which city was environed with deep ditches, the wall strongly built, and more than five hundred towers made of lime and stone; also he saw many fair churches covered with lead, having tops and spires of gold, shining most gorgeously; with weathercocks of silver, glittering against the sun. Also he saw the burgesses' houses stand like palaces, closed with high and strong walls, barred with chains of iron from house to house whereat in his heart he praised much the nobleness and richness of the city, and said to himself, that it might be called Argenia, for it seemed to be of argent, the much as to say, of silver.

During the time of the champion's walk, which from the break of day to the closing of the evening opened a woful tragedy, near unto the queen committed by the monstrous giant, whom St.

OF CHRISTENDOM.

From the enchanted tower : for that same morn-
the sun had mounted some few degrees unto the
ment, seven of the queen's virgins, in Sabra's com-
walked into a pleasant thicket of trees, adjoining to
village, not only to take the pleasure of the morning
to hear the chirping melody of birds : in which the
grove, under a pine-tree, this giant lodged the pass-
but no sooner came these beautiful ladies under the
of the tree, but the giant cast his eyes upon their
rare perfections so fired the heart of the lustful gi-
he must either quench his desires with the spoils
chastities, or end his days in some monstrous
therefore he started up from the place where he
with a wrathful countenance ran amongst the ladies
catching them all eight betwixt his arms, he bore
the farther side of the grove, where he ravished
the queen's maidens, and afterward devoured them
into his loathsome bowels ; Sabra being the eighth
woful number, which in her sight she beheld but
that bloody wolf : but during the time of their rav-
she made her supplications to the gods, that they
mercy defend her chastity from the lustful rape of
a monster : and immediately upon these words an
ugly toad come crawling before her, through which
lily she saved her life, and preserved her honour
took the toad betwixt her hands, and crushed the veins
her poisoned bowels, wherewith she besprinkled
so that presently her fair beauty was changed into
blisters, for she seemed more like a creature deformed
leprosy, than a lady of excellent feature. At length
being the last of all, her time came that she should
flowered, and the lustful giant came to fetch her ;
he beheld her visage so envenomed, he loathed her
seeking neither to ravish her, nor proffering to do so
but discontentedly wandered away, greatly grieved
committed crime, and sorely repenting himself of
a deed, not only for the spoil of the seven virgins
the wrong proffered to so noble a knight ; who
granted him liberty of life, but received him into
vice ; therefore he ranged up and down the grove
the earth to tremble at his exclamations, one while
his fortune and hour of creation, another while

sire and devilish dam: but when he remembered the champion St. George, whose angry frown he would not for all the world, then to prevent the same, he ran his most furiously against a knobbed oak, and brained him where we will leave him now weltering in his blood, speak what became of Sabra after this bloody accident after she wandered up and down the thicket many a w step, incensing heaven against the giant's cruelty, the began to set, and the dark night grew on, which caused thus to complain:

"Oh you immortal powers of heaven! and you cele planets, being the true guiders of the firmament, open bright celestial gates, and send some fatal planet, or burning thunder-bolt, to rid me from the vale of misery I will never more return to my lord; since I am thus formed, and made an ugly creature, my loathsome face prove a corrosive to his heart, and my body a torment his soul. My sight will be unpleasant, my company by my presence loathed, and every one will shun my sight from a crocodile; therefore I will remain within this g till heaven either bring me to my former beauty, or end languishing misery; yet witness, heaven, of my loyalty my lord, and in what extremity I have maintained my tity; in remembrance of my true love, here will I leave chain of gold for my beloved lord to find, that he may for his sake I have endured a world of woe."

At which speeches she took her chain, which was doubled twenty times about her neck, and left it lying besmeared the blood of those virgins whom the giant had ravished slain, and so betook herself to a solitary life, intending not to come in the sight of men, but to spend her days wandering in the woods; where we will likewise leave her for a time and speak of St. George, who by this time was returned to queen's pavilion, where he missed his lady, and had intelligence that she, in company of seven other ladies, walked the morning into a pleasant grove to hear the melody of birds and since that time no news hath been heard of them as then it grew towards night, which caused St. George greatly to mistrust that some mischance had befallen his lady. Then he demanded what was become of the giant, but answer was made, that he was never seen nor heard since morning; which caused him greatly to suspect

giant's treachery, and how by his means the ladies were prevented of their purposed pleasures.

Therefore in all haste, like a frantic man, he ran into the thicket, filling every corner with clamours, and resounding echoes of her name, and calling for Sabra, through every bramble bush : but there he could neither hear the voice of Sabra, nor the answer of any other lady, but the woful echoes of his exclamations, which rattled through the leaves of the trees. Then began he to wax somewhat melancholy and passionate, passing the time away till bright Cynthia mounted on the hemisphere, by whose glittering beams he saw the ground besprinked with purple gore ; and found the chain that Sabra was wont to wear about her neck, besmeared in blood. He bitterly complained against his own fortune and his lady's hapless destiny, for he supposed then that the giant had murdered her.

"O discontented sight," said he, "here lies the blood of my beloved lady, the truest woman that ever knight enjoyed. That body, which for excellency deserved a monument of gold, more rich than the tomb of Angelica, I fear lies buried in the bowels of that monstrous giant, whose life unhappily I granted. But, fond'fool that I am, why do I talk in vain? It will not recompense her murdered soul, the which methinks I hear how it calls for revenge in every corner of the grove. It was I that left her carelessly within the danger of the giant, whom I little mistrusted, therefore I will meet her in the Elysium shades, and crave remission for my committed trespass, for on this oak I will abridge my life, as did the worthy knight Melmeropolion for the love of Sillara."

Which lamentation being no sooner ended, but he took the chain of gold, and fastened one end to the arm of a great oak, and the other end to his neck, intending presently to strangle himself ; but heaven prevented his desperate intent after a strange manner : for under the same tree the brained giant lay, not yet fully dead, who in this manner spake to St. George :

"O stay thy hand, most noble and invincible knight, the world's chief wonder for admirable chivalry, and let my dying soul convert thee from so wicked a deed. Seven virgins in this thicket have I ravished, and buried all their bodies in my accursed bowels ; but before I could deflower

the eighth, in a strange manner her bright beauty was changed into a loathsome leprosy, whereby I detested her sight, and left her chastity undefiled, but by her sad complaints, I since have understood, how that she is your lady and love, and to this hour she hath her residence within this thicket." And thereupon, with a doleful groan, which seemed to shake the ground, he bade adieu to the world.

Then St. George, being glad to hear such tidings, reverted from his desperate intent, and searched up and down the grove till he had found Sabra, where she sat sorrowing under the branches of a mulberry-tree; betwixt whom was a sad greeting: and as they walked back to the queen's pavilion, she discoursed to him the truth of this bloody stratagem; where she remained till the Amazonian queen had cured her leprosy by the secret virtue of her skill; of whom, after they had taken leave, and given her thanks for her kind courtesies, St. George with his lady took their journey towards Persia.

CHAP. XVII.

ST. GEORGE having achieved the adventure of the enchanted tower, and Sabra the fury of the lustful giant, they took their journey towards Persia, where the Christian champions lay encamped before the soldan's great city of Belgor, a place most strongly fortified with spirits and other ghastly illusions, by the enchantment of Osmond, whom you heard before, in the last chapter, to be the rarest necromancer in the world. But as the English champion with his lady travelled thitherward, they happened into a desert and mighty wilderness, overgrown with lofty pines, cedar-trees, and many huge and mighty oaks, the spreading branches whereof seemed to withhold the light of heaven from their untrodden passages; and tops, for exceeding height, to reach into the elements, the inhabitants were sylvan satyrs, fairies, and other woody nymphs, which by day sported up and down the forest, and by night attended the pleasures of Proserpine the fairy queen. The music of silver-sounding birds, *so cheerfully resounding through the woods, and the whistling wind made such melody amongst the leaves of trees, that it ravished their senses like harmony of angels, and*

made them think they had entered the shades of gladsome Elysium. One while they wondered at the beauty of the woods, which nature adorned with a summer's livery, another while at the green and fragrant grass, drawn out in round circles by fairies' dances, so long till they had lost themselves amongst the unknown passages, not knowing how, nor by what means to recover the perfect path of their journey, but were constrained to wander in the wilderness, like solitary pilgrims, spending their day with weary steps, and the night with vain imaginations, even as the child, when he hath lost himself in a populous city, runneth up and down, not knowing how to return to his native dwelling; even so it happened to these two lost disconsolate travellers, for when they had wandered many days one way, and finding no end of their toils, they retired backward to the place of their first setting forth, where they were wont to hear the noise of people resounding in country villages, and to meet travellers passing from place to place; but now they heard nothing but blustering of wind, rattling in the wood, making the brambles to whistle, and the trees to groan, and now and then to meet a speckled beast, like to the rainbow, weltering from his den to seek his natural sustenance; in their travel by night they were wont to hear the crowing of the cock, recording glad tidings of the cheerful day's approach, the neighing of horses in pasture fields, and the barking of dogs in farmers' houses: but now they were affrighted with the roaring of lions, yelling of wolves, the croaking of toads in roots of rotten trees, and the rueful sound of Progne's ravishment, recorded by the nightingale.

In this solitary manner wearied they the rolling time away, till thrice three times the silver moon had returned her borrowed light, by which time the burden of Sabra's womb began to grow painful, and the hour of her delivery drew on, wherein she required Lucina's help, to make St. George the father of a princely son. Time called for midwives, to aid and bring her babe into the world, and to make her a happy mother; but before the painful hour of her delivery approached, St. George had provided her a bower of vine-branches, which he erected between two pleasant hills, where, instead of a princely cabinet behung with arras, and rich tapestry, she was constrained to suffice herself with a *simple lodging*, covered with roses, and other fragrant flow-

ers ; her bed he made of green moss and thistle-down, blent curiously round about with olive-branches, and the sprigs of an orange-tree, which made it seem more beautiful than Flora's pavilion, or Diana's mansion. But at last, when she felt the pain of her womb grow intolerable, and the seed ready to be reaped, and how she was in a wilderness void of women's company, that should be ready to assist her in so secret a matter, she cast herself down upon her mother's bed, and with a blushing countenance she discovered her mind in this manner to St. George.

"My most dear and loving lord," quoth she, "my true and only champion at all times and seasons, except at this hour, for it is the painful hour of my delivery, therefore depart from out of the hearing of my cries, and commit my fortune to the pleasures of the heavens ; for it is not convenient for any man's eye to behold the secrets of a woman in such a case : stay not, I say, dear lord, to see the infant, now sprawling in my womb, to be delivered from the bed of his creation ; forsake my presence for a time, and let me, like the noble queen of France, obtain the favour of some fairy to be my midwife, that my babe may be as happily born in this wilderness, as was her valiant son, Valentine and Orson, the one of them was cherished by a king, and the other by a bear, yet both of them grew famous in their deeds."

At which words St. George sealed the agreement with a kiss, and departed silently without any reply, but with a thousand sighs bade her adieu, and took his way to the top of a mountain, being in distance a quarter of a mile : there kneeled he, during the time of her travail, with his bare knees upon the bosom of the earth, never ceasing prayers, but continually soliciting the majesty of God, to grant his lady a speedy and easy delivery. After whose departure the fury of her heart was constrained to breathe so many scorching sighs, that they seemed to blast the leaves of trees, and to wither the flowers which beautified her cabinet, her burdened torments caused her star-bright eyes, like fountains to distil down silver drops, and all the rest of her body to tremble like a castle in a terrible earthquake.

At last, her pitiful cries pierced down to the lowest vault of direful Dis, where Proserpine sits crowned among her fairies, and so prevailed, that in all haste she rose

work this lady's safe delivery, and to make her mother of three goodly boys; who no sooner arrived in Sabra's lodging, but she practised the duty of a midwife, eased the burden of her womb, and safely brought her babes into the world.

This courteous deed of Proserpine was no sooner performed, but she laid the three boys in three sumptuous cradles, which she caused the fairies to fetch invisibly; and therewithal mantles of silk, with other things thereunto belonging; likewise she caused a winged satyr to fetch from the farthest borders of India, a covering of damask taffety embroidered with gold, the richest ornament that ever mortal eye beheld. With this rich and sumptuous ornament she covered the lady's child-bed, whereby it seemed to surpass in bravery the gorgeous bed of Juno the brave queen, when first she entertained imperious Jove. After this, Proserpine laid under every child's pillow a silver tablet, whereon were written, in letters of gold, their good and happy fortunes.

Under the first was these verses charactered, who at that time lay frowning in his cradle like the god of war :

A soldier bold, a man of wonderous might,
A king likewise this royal babe shall die ;
Three golden diadems in bloody fight,
By this brave prince shall also conquered be :
The towers of old Jerusalem and Rome,
Shall yield to him in happy time to come.

Under the pillow of the second babe was charactered these verses following; who lay in his cradle smiling like Cupid upon the lap of Dido, whom Venus transformed to the likeness of Ascanius:

This child shall likewise live to be a king,
Time's wonder for device and courtly sport :
His tilts and tournaments abroad shall ring,
To every coast where noble knights resort :
Queens shall attend, and humble at his feet,
Thus love and beauty shall together meet.

Lastly, under the pillow of the third, was these verses likewise charactered; who blushed in his cradle, like Pallas when she strove for the golden apple with Venus, and the queen of heaven :

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

The muses' darling for true sapience,
 In princes' courts this babe shall spend his days;
 Kings shall admire his learned eloquence,
 And write in brazen books his endless praise:
 By Pallas' gifts he shall achieve a crown,
 Advance his fame, and lift him to renown.

Thus when the fairy queen had ended her prophecy upon the children, and had left them golden fortunes lying in their cradles, she vanished away, leaving the lady rejoicing at her safe delivery, and wondering at the gifts of Proserpine, which she conjectured to be but shadows to dazzle her eyes, and things of fading substance; but when she had laid her hands upon the rich covering of damask taffety, which covered her mossy bed, and felt that it was the self-same form that it seemed, she cast her eyes, with a cheerful look, up to the majesty of Heaven, and not only gave thanks for received benefits, but for his merciful kindness in making her the happy mother of three such goodly children. But we will now return again to the noble champion St. George, who, after waiting some time, returned back to her sumptuous cabin, which he found strangely decked with glorious habiliments, his lady lying in her child-bed, as glorious as if she had been the greatest empress in the world, and three princely boys sweetly sleeping in their several cradles; whose first sight his heart was so ravished with joy, for a time it withheld the passage of his tongue: but at when he found the silver tablets lying under the pillow, and read the happy fortunes of his children, he ran his lady embracing her lovingly, and kindly demanded true discourse of this accident, and by whose prophecy his children's prophecy; who, with a countenance like the purple-morning, replied in this manner:

"My most dear and well-beloved lord, the pain hath not been less painful than the stroke of my delivery more joyful than the pleasures the winds carried my groans to every corner, whereby both trees and herbs assisted, beast, birds, and feathered fowls, with every that nature framed on this earth, seemed

to forsake
 queen
 like im
 wisdom
 Pallas
 she m
 bring
 these
 ubly
 broi
 jure

in the midst of my torments, when my soul was ready to forsake this worldly habitation, there appeared to me a woman crowned with a golden diadem, in state and gesture superious Juno, and in beauty to divine Diana; her form might compare with Apollo's, her judgment with Minerva's, and her skill with Lucina's; for no sooner entered my presence, but my travails ceased, my babes being brought forth to light by the virtue of her skill; she prepared rich and sumptuous cradles, which were brought into my cabin; likewise these mantles, and this embroidered coverlet she frankly bestowed upon me, and so distantly vanished away."

which words St. George gave her many kind embraces; at last, her hunger increased, and her desire thirsted for food, that, except she received some comfortable sustenance, her life were in danger. This extreme of Sabra caused St. George to buckle on his armour, and unsheath his trusty sword, ready to gore the entrails of the deer; who swore, by the honour of true knight, never to rest in peace, till he had purchased her heart's desire.

And thereupon, with his falchion ready charged, he went into the woods, leaving no thorny brake nor mossy cave unchecked, till he had found a herd of fallow deer; from the number he singled out the fattest to make his lady a sumptuous banquet; but in the time of his absence, there befell to Sabra a wonderful accident; for there came rushing into the cabin three most wild and monstrous beasts, a lioness, a tigress, and a she-wolf, which took the children out of their cradles, and bore them to their secret

At which sight, Sabra, like one bereft of sense, started from her bed, and to her power offered to follow the beasts, but in vain; for before she could get without her cabin, they were past sight, and the children's cry without her ears: then, like a discontented woman, she turned back, and tore her breast, rending her hair, and ranging up and down her cabin, using all the rigour she could devise against them; and had not St. George returned the sooner, she most violently committed her own slaughter; but at length, when he beheld her face stained with tears, her divested of ornaments, and her ivory breast all to be

rent, he cast down his venison in all haste, and asked the cause of her sorrow.

"Oh!" said she, "this is the wofulest day that ever happened to me; for in the time of your unhappy hunting, a lioness, a tigress, and a wolf, came into the cabin, and took my children from their cradles: what is become of the children I know not; but greatly I fear by this time they are eaten within their hungry bowels."

"Oh! simple monuments," quoth he, "for such babes. Well, Sabra, if the monsters have bereaved me my children, this bloody sword, that dived into the entrails of the fallow deer, shall rive my woful heart in twain. Accursed be this fatal day, the planets that predominated, and the sun that shines thereon; heaven blot it from the year, and let it never more be numbered, but accounted for a calamitous day throughout the world; let all the trees be blasted in those accursed woods; let herbs and grass consume and die, and all things perish in this wilderness. But breathe I out these curses in vain, whenas methinks I see my children in untamed lions' dens, crying for help and succour? I come, sweet babes! I come, either to redeem you from tigers' wrathful jaws, or make my grave within their hungry bowels!"

Then took he up his sword besmeared in blood, and went a man bereaved of wit and sense, ranged up and down the wilderness, searching every corner for his children; but the lady remained still in her cabin, lamenting for their loss, washing their cradles with her pearly tears.

Many ways wandered St. George, sometimes in valleys where wolves and tigers lurk; sometimes on mountains where lions' whelps do sport and play; and many times in dismal thickets, where snakes and serpents live.

Thus wandered St. George up and down the wilderness for the space of two days, hearing no news of his children. At last he approached the sight of a pleasant river, where he smoothly glided down betwixt two mountains, into which streams he purposed to cast himself; and so by a desperate death give end to his sorrows; but as he was committing his body to the mercy of the waters, and his soul to the pleasure of the heavens, he heard afar off the rueful shout, as he thought, of a comfortless babe: which sudden sight caused him to refrain from his desperate purpose, and

more discretion to tender his own safety. Then casting eyes aside, it was his happy destiny to spy three inhuman beasts lying at the foot of a hill, tumbling themselves again the warm sun, and his three pretty babes sucking from the dugs their most unkind milk; which spectacle so encourage the champion, that without farther advisement, with his single sword, he assailed at one time the three monsters, but so furiously they pursued him, that he little prevailed; and being almost breathless, was forced to get into an orange-tree, else he had been buried in their merciless bowels. But when the three wild beasts perceived him above their reach, and that by no means they could come near him with their wrathful jaws, they so rent and tore the root of the tree, that if by policy he had not prevented them, the tree had been pulled in pieces: for at that time it was so full of ripe oranges, and so overladen, that the branches seemed to bend, and the boughs to break; of which fruit he cast such abundance down to the beasts, whereby they restrained their furies, and fed so fast thereon, that in a short time they grew drunk, and quite overcome with a heavy sleep: this happy fortune caused St. George nimbly to leap off the tree, and with his keen-edged sword cut off their heads from their bodies; which being done, he went to his children, lying upon a mossy bank, who so pleasantly smiled in his face, that they made him greatly to rejoice: therefore taking them up in his arms, he spake these words following:

‘Come, come, my pretty babes, your safe deliverance from these inhuman monsters will add long life unto your mother, and hath preserved your father from a desperate death; from henceforth let heaven be your guide, and send you as happy fortunes as Remus and Romulus, the first founders of imperious Rome, which in their infancies were nursed with the milk of a ravenous wolf.”

And approaching the cabin, where he left his lady mourn for the loss of her children, at his return he found her without sense or moving, being not able to give him a joyful welcome, whereat he fell into this extreme passion of

“Fortune! Fortune!” quoth he, “how many griefs thou upon my head? Wilt thou needs enjoin me to sorrow? See, Sabra, see, I have redeemed our

sons, and freed them from the tigers' bloody jaws, w
wrathful countenance did threaten death."

Which comfortable speech caused her presently to re
and to take the infants in her arms, laying them swe
upon her breasts. The kind embraces, loving speeches,
joyful conference that passed betwixt the champion and
lady, were now too long to be discoursed: but to be al
they remained in the wilderness without farther disturba
either of wild beasts, or other accident, till Sabra had
covered her child-bed sickness: and then, being condu
by happy stars, they returned back the ready way to Cl
tendom, where after some few days' travel, they arrive
the Bohemian court, where the king of that country, w
two other bordering princes, most royally christened
children, the eldest they named Guy, the second Alexan
and the third David; which being performed, and the
umphs ended, which in a most sumptuous manner co
nued for the space of one month, then the Bohemian k
for the great love he bare to St. George, provided most
nourably for his sons' bringing up.

First he appointed three several ambassadors, with
things necessary for so princely a charge, to conduct
three infants to three several countries. The first, and eld
whose fortune was to be a soldier, he sent to the imperial
of Rome (being then the wonder of the world for martial
cipline), there by the emperor to be trained up. The seco
whose fortune was to be a courtly prince, he sent to the
and plentiful country of England, being the pride of Chris
dom for all delightful pleasures: the third and last, wh
fortune was to be a scholar, he sent into Germany, unto
university of Wittenburg, being thought at that time to
the excellentest place of learning that remained through
the whole world.

Thus were St. George's children provided for by the
hemian king; for when the ambassadors were in readin
the ships for their passage furnished, and attendants ap
pointed, St. George, in company of his lady, the king
Bohemia with his queen, and a train of lords, and gen
men, and ladies, conducted them on ship-board, where
*wind served them so prosperously, that in a short t
they had bade adieu to the shore, and sailed o
away. But as St. George returned back to the*

court, it was his chance to come by an old ruinated monastery, under whose walls in former time his father was buried, the which he knew by certain verses carved in stone over his grave, by the commons of the country (as you may read before in the beginning of this history). Over the same he requested of the king that he might erect a stately monument, that the remembrance of his name might live for ever, and not be buried in the grave of obscurity. To which reasonable demand the king most willingly consented, and presently gave special commandment that the cunningest architects that remained within his dominion should forthwith be sent for, and withal gave a ton of gold forth of his own treasury, towards the performance thereof. The sudden report of this memorable deed being bruited abroad, caused workmen to come from every place of their own accord, with such willingness, that they in a short time finished it. The foundation of the tomb was of the purest marble, whereon was engraven the frame of the earth, and how the watry ocean was divided, with woods, groves, hills, and dales; so lively pourtrayed, that it was a wonder to behold: the props and pinnacles of alabaster, beset with knobs of jasper stone; the sides and pillars of the clearest jet; upon the top stood four golden lions, holding up as it were an element, wherein was curiously contrived the golden sun and moon, and how the heavens have their usual courses, with many other things wrought both in gold and silver, which for this time I omit, because I am forced at large to discourse of the princely proceedings of St. George, who, after the monument was finished, with his lady, most humbly took their leave of the king, thanked him for his love, kindness, and courtesy, and so departed towards Egypt and Persia, of whose adventures you shall hear more in the chapter following.

CHAP. XVIII.

MANY strange accidents and dangerous adventures St. George with his lady passed, before they arrived within the territories of Egypt, which I want memory to repeat, *and art to describe.* But at last when Fortune smiled, *which before had long time crossed their intents with her*

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

constant chances, and had cast them happily upon the Egyptian shore, being the nurse and mother of Sabra's first creation; the twelve peers unto whom St. George before time committed the guiding of the land, and keeping of his crown, as you heard before discoursed, now met him and his lady at the sea-side, most richly mounted upon their costly trapped steeds, and willingly surrendered up his sceptre, crown, and regiment; and after, in company of many princely estates, both of dukes, earls, lords, knights, and royal gentlemen, they attended them to the city of Grand Cairo, being then under the subjection of the Egyptian monarchy, and the greatest city in the world, for it was in breadth full threescore miles, and had by just account, within the walls, twelve thousand churches, besides abbeyes, priories, and houses of religion; but when St. George with his stately attendants entered the gates, they were presently entertained with such a joyful sound of bells, trumpets, and drums, that it seemed like the royalty of Cæsar in Rome, where angels, and to exceed the world's conquest: the streets he returned from the world's conquest: the streets he beautified with stately pageants, and the walls hung with Indian ingenious capacity, and the pavement strewn with all manner of odoriferous flowers, and the walls hung with Indian verlets, and curious tapestry.

Thus passed they the streets in great solemnity, ing at the curiosity of the pageants, and listening where, in the first entry of the court, was co-learned orations, till they entered the gates of head a golden pendant firmament, as it were a hundred angels: from thence it seemed and ambrosia, likewise the goddess of plenty the clouds, Ceres, the goddess of plenty things, as of corn, olives, grapes, hert throne of gold, beautified with all r who at the coming by of St. George, them with two garlands of wheat, in bands of silver, to signify that ed to a plentiful country, both But at Ceres' ascension up in seen most strange and plea place to place, as though from heaven, and had g

delight
crown
crown
where
a c
po
er
t

delightful pastimes: but as St. George with his lady, crowned with garlands of wheat, passed through the second court, they beheld a pageant most strangely contrived, wherein stood Mars, the angry god of war, environed with a camp of armed soldiers, as if they were with their weapons ready charged to assault some strong hold, or invincible city; their silver trumpets seemed to sound cheerfully, their thundering drums courageously, their silken streamers to flourish valiantly, and themselves to march triumphantly. All which seemed to give more content to St. George, than all the delightful pleasures before rehearsed; for there was nothing in all the world that more rejoiced his heart, than to hear the pleasant sound of war, and to see the soldiers brandish forth their steeled weapons. After he had sufficiently delighted himself in these martial sports, and was ready to depart, the god of war descended his throne, and presented him with the richest armour that ever eye beheld, and the bravest sword that ever knight handled; for they have been kept within the city of Grand Cairo for the space of five hundred years, and held for the richest monuments in the country. Also he presented Sabrina with a mirror of such an inestimable price, that it was valued at a king's ransom; for it was made by magic art: the virtues and qualities thereof were so precious, that it is almost incredible to report: for therein one might behold the secret mysteries of all the liberal sciences, and by art discourse what was practised in other princes' courts; if any hill or mountain, within a thousand miles of the place where it remained, were enriched with a mine of gold, it would describe the place and country, and how deep it lay closed in the earth; by it one might truly calculate upon the birth of children, succession of princes, and continuance of commonwealths, with many other excellent gifts and virtues, which for this time I omit. Then in great state passed St. George to the third court, which was richly beautified with all gallant sights as the others were; for there was most lively portrayed the manner of Elysium, how Love and Juno sat invested in their royal thrones, and likewise how all the gods and goddesses took their places by degrees in parliament; the sight was pleasant and the device most excellent, their music admired, and their songs heavenly.

Thus, passed St. George, with his lady, through the three courts, till they came to the palace; wherein was provided against their coming a statelier banquet than had the Macedonian monarch at his return into Babylon, when he had conquered the middle-earth; the curious cases, and well-replenished dishes, were so many that I want art and eloquence to describe them; but to be short, it was the most sumptuous banquet that ever they beheld since their departure from the English court, and so artificially served, as though that all the world had been present. Many days continued this sumptuous cheer, and accompanied with such princely triumphs, as Art herself wants memory to describe.

The coronation of Sabra, which was royally performed within three months following, requires a golden pen to write it, and a tongue washed in the conservatives of the Muses' honey to declare it: Egypt was honoured with triumphs, and Grand Cairo with tilts and tournaments. Through every town was proclaimed a solemn and festival day in the remembrance of their new-crowned queen; no tradesman nor artificer was suffered to work that day, but was charged, upon pain of death, to hold it for a day of triumph, a day of joy, and a day of pleasure. In which royalties St. George was a principal performer, till thirst of honour summoned him to arms; the remembrance of the Christian champions in Persia caused him to breviate the pastimes, and to buckle on his steely coralet, which had not glittered in the fields of Mars in four-and-twenty days; of which noble deeds, and adventurous proceedings, I will at large discourse, and leave all other pastimes to the now-invested queen and her ladies.

CHAP. XIX.

NOW must we return to the Christian champions, and speak of their battles in Persia, and what happened to them in St. George's absence; for if you remember before, being in Egypt, when he had news of his lady's condemnation in England, for the murder of the earl of Coventry, he caused *them* to march into Persia, and encouraged them to revenge *his* wrongful imprisonment upon the soldan's provosts; in

which country, after they had marched about fifty miles, burning and spoiling his territories, they were intercepted by the soldan's power, which was about the number of three hundred thousand fighting men. But the muster-rolls of the Christians were likewise numbered, and they amounted not to above one hundred thousand able men: at which time, betwixt the Christians and Pagans happened a long and dangerous battle, the like in any age was seldom fought; for it continued without ceasing for the space of five days, to the great effusion of blood on both parties; but at last the Pagans had the worst; for when they beheld their fields bestrewed with mangled bodies, and that the rivers for twenty miles' compass did flow with crimson blood, their hearts began to fail, and incontinently fled like sheep before the wolf. Then the valiant Christians, thirsting after revenge, speedily pursued them, sparing neither young nor old, till the ways were strewn with lifeless bodies, like heaps of scattered sand; in which pursuit and honourable conquest they burned two hundred forts and towns, battering their towers of stone as level with the ground as harvest reapers do fields of ripened corn. But the soldan himself, with many of his approved soldiers, escaped alive, and fortified the city of Grand Belgor, being the strongest town of war in all the kingdom of Persia, before whose walls we will leave the Christian champions planting their puissant forces, and speak of the damnable practices of Osmond within the town, where he accomplished many admirable accidents by magic art: for when the Christians' army had long time given assaults to the walls, sending their fiery bullets to their lofty battlements, like storms of winter's hail, whereby the Persian soldiers were not able any longer to resist, they began to yield, and commit their lives to the mercy of the Christian champions. But when the soldan perceived the soldiers' cowardice, and how they would willingly resign his happy government to foreign rule, he encouraged them still to resist the Christians' desperate encounters, and within thirty days, if they had not the honour of the war, then willingly to condescend to their country's conquest; which princely resolution encouraged the soldiers to resist, intending not to yield up their city till death had made triumph on their bodies. Then departed he unto a sacred tower, where he found Osmond sitting in a

chair, studying by magic how long Persia should remain unconquered, who at his entrance drove him from his charms with these speeches:

"Thou wondrous man of art," said the soldan, "whom for necromancy the world hath made famous! now is the time to express the love and loyalty thou bearest thy sovereign; now is the time thy charming spells must work for Persia's good; thou seest my fortunes are deprest, my soldiers dead, my captains slaughtered, my cities burned, my fields of corn consumed, and my country almost conquered. I that was wont to cover the seas with fleets of ships, now stand amazed to hear the Christians' drums, that sound forth doleful funerals for my soldiers. I that was wont with armed legions to drink up rivers as we marched, and made the earth to groan with bearing of our multitudes: I that was wont to make whole kingdoms tremble at my frowns, and force imperious potentates to humble at my feet; I that have made the streets of many a city to run with blood, and stood rejoicing when I saw their buildings burnt; I that have made the mothers' wombs the infants' tombs, and caused cradles for to swim in streams of blood: may now behold my country's ruin, my kingdom's fall, and mine own fatal overthrow. Awake, great Osmond, from thy dreaming trance, awake, I say, and raise a troop of black infernal fiends, to fight against the damned Christians, that like swarms of bees do flock about our walls; prevent, I say, my land's invasion, and, as I am great monarch of Asia, I'll make thee king over twenty provinces, and sole commander of the ocean: raise up, I say, thy charmed spirits, leave burning Acheron empty for a time, to aid us in this bloody battle."

These words were no-sooner ended, but there rattled such a peal of canons against the city walls, that they made the very earth shake; whereat the necromancer started from his chair, and in this manner encouraged the soldan.

"It is not Europe," quoth he, "nor all the petty bands of armed knights, nor all the princes in the world, that shall abate your princely dignity: am not I the great magician of this age, that can both loose and bind the fiends, and call the blackfaced furies from low Cocytus? Am not I that skilful artist, which framed the charmed tower amongst the Amazonian dames, which all the witches in the

could never spoil? Therefore let learning, art, and all the secrets of the deep assist me in this enterprise, and then let frowning Europe do her worst; my charms shall cause the heavens to rain such rattling showers of stones upon their heads, whereby the earth shall be over-laden with their dead bodies, and hell over-filled with their hateful souls; senseless trees shall rise in human shapes, and fight for Persia. If wise Medea was ever famous for arts, that did the like for safeguard of her father's state, then why should not Ozmond practise wonders for his sovereign's happiness? I'll raise a troop of spirits from the lowest earth more black than dismal night, who in ugly shapes shall haunt them up and down, and when they sleep within their rich pavilions; legions of fiery spirits will I raise up from hell, that like to dragons spitting flames of fire, shall blast and burn the damned Christians in their tents of war: down from the crystal firmament I will conjure troops of airy spirits to descend, that like to virgins clad in princely ornaments shall link those Christian champions in the charms of love; their eyes shall be like the twinkling lamps of heaven, and dazzle so their warlike thoughts, and their lively countenance more bright than fairies shall lead them captive to a tent of love, which shall be artificially erected up by magic spells; their warlike weapons, that were wont to smoke in Pagans' blood, shall, in my charmed tent, be hung upon the bowers of Peace; their glittering armours, that were wont to shine within the fields of Africa, shall henceforth for evermore be stained with rust; and themselves, sur-named for martial discipline the wondrous champions of the world, shall surfeit with delightful loves, and sleep upon the laps of the airy spirits, that descend the elements in virgins' shapes; terror and despair shall so mightily oppress their merciless soldiers, that they shall yield the honourable conquest to your excellency: such strange and wonderful accidents by art shall be accomplished, that heaven shall frown at my enchantments, and the earth tremble to hear my conjurations; therefore, most mighty Persian, number up thy scattered bands, and to-morrow in the morning set open thy gates, and march thitherwards, with thy armed soldiers; leave not a man within the city, but let every one that is able to bear arms fight in the honour of Persia, and before the closing of the night I'll make thee conqueror,

and yield up the bragging Christians as prisoners to thy mightiness."

"If this prove true, renowned Osmond, as thou hast promised," said the soldan, "earth shall not harbour that too dear for thee; for thou shalt have myself, my kingdoms, crowns, and sceptres, at command. The wealthy river Ganges shall pay thee yearly tribute with her treasure, the place where Midas washed her golden wish away. All things that nature framed precious, shalt thou be lord and sole commander of, if thou prevent the invasion of my country."

And thereupon he departed the chamber, and left the necromancer in his study; and as he gave commandment, his captains made in readiness their soldiers, and furnished their warlike horses, and by the sun's uprising marched into the fields of Belgor, where, upon the north side of the enemy, they pitched their camp. On the other side, when the warlike Christians had intelligence, by their courts of guard, how the Persians were entered the fields ready to give them battle, sudden alarums sounded in their ears, rumours of conquest encouraged so the soldiers, that presently they were in readiness to entertain the Persians in a bloody banquet. Both armies were in sight, with blood-red colours wavering in the air; the Christian champions, richly mounted on their warlike coursers, placed themselves in the fore-front of the battle, like courageous captains, fearing neither death nor unconstant chance of fortune. But the soldan, with his petty princes, like cowards, were environed and compassed with a ring of armed knights, where, instead of nimble steeds, they sat in iron chariots. Divers heroical and many princely encouragements past between the two armies before they entered battle: but when the drums began to sound alarm, and the silver trumpets gave dreadful echoes of death; when the cross of Christendom began to flourish, and the arms of Mahomet to be advanced; even then began so terrible and bloody a battle, that the like was never found in any age; for before the sun had mounted to the top of heaven, the Pagans received so great a massacre, and fell before the Christian champions, that they were forced to wade up to the knees in blood, and their soldiers to fight upon heaps of slaughtered men: the fields were altered from a green colour to a purple hue, the dales were steeped in

crimson gore, and the hills and mountains covered with dead men's rattling bones. And let us not forget the wicked necromancer Osmond, that during the time of that dangerous encounter kneeled in a low valley, near unto the camps, with his black hair hanging down unto his shoulders, like a wreath of snakes, and with his silver wand circling the earth, where, when he heard the sound of drums in the air, and the brazen trumpets giving dreadful sounds of war, he entered into these fatal and damned speeches :

"Now is this battle," quoth he, "furiously begun, for methinks I hear the soldan cry for help : now is the time my charming spells must work for Persia's victory, and Europe's fatal overthrow :" which being said, thrice did he kiss the earth, thrice beheld the elements, and thrice besprinkled the circle with his own blood, which with a silver razor he let from his left arm ; and after began again to speak in this manner :

"Stand still, you wandering lamps of heaven, move not, sweet stars, but linger on, till Osmond's charms be brought to full effect. O thou great Dæmon, prince of damned ghosts ; thou chief commander of those fearful shapes that nightly glide by unbelieving travellers ; even thou that holdest the snakey sceptre in thy hand, sitting upon a throne of burning steel, even thou that-tossest burning fire-brands abroad, even thou whose eyes are like to unlucky comets ; even thee I charge to let my furies loose, open thy brazen gates, and leave thy boiling cauldron empty ; send up such legions of infernal fiends that may in number countervail the blades of grass that beautify those bloody fields of Belgor."

These fatal speeches were no sooner finished, but there appeared such a similitude of spirits, both from the earth, water, air, and fire, that it is almost incredible to report ; which he caused to run into the Christian army ; whose burning falchions not only annoyed the soldiers with fear and terror, but also fired the horses' manes, burned the trappings, consumed their banners, scorched trees and herbs, and dimmed the elements with such an extreme darkness, as though the earth had been covered with eternal night. He caused the spirits likewise to raise such a tempest, that it tore up mighty oaks by the roots, removed hills and mountains, and blew up men into the air, here and all

yet neither his magic arts, nor all the furies and wicked spirits, could any whit daunt the most noble and magnanimous minds of the six champions of Christendom ; but, like unconquered lions, they purchased honour where they went, colouring their swords in Pagans' blood, making the earth true witnesses of their victorious and heroical proceedings, whom they had attired in a blood-red livery. And though St. George was absent in that terrible battle, yet merited they as much honour and renown, as though he had been there present ; for the accursed Pagans fell before their warlike weapons, as leaves do from the trees, when the blustering storms of winter enter on the earth. But when the wicked necromancer, Osmond, perceived that his magic spells took no effect, and how, in despite of his enchantment, the Christians got the better of the day, he accursed his art, and banned the hour and time wherein he attempted so wicked an enterprise, thinking them to be preserved by angels, or else by some celestial means ; but yet not purposing to leave off at the first repulse, he attempted another way, by necromancy, to overthrow the Christians.

First, he erected up, by magic art, a stately tent, outwardly in show like to the compass of earth ; but furnished inwardly with all the delightful pleasures, that either art or reason could invent ; only framed to enchant the Christian champions with enticing delight, whom he purposed to keep as prisoners therein. Then fell he again to his conjuration, and bound a hundred spirits by due obedience to transform themselves into the likeness of beautiful virgins ; which in a moment they accomplished ; and they were framed in form and beauty like to the darlings of Venus ; in comeliness comparable with Thetis, dancing on the silver sands ; and in all proportion like Daphne, whose beauty caused Apollo to descend the heavens ; their limbs were like the lofty cedars, their cheeks to roses dipt in milk, and their eyes more bright than the stars of heaven ; also they seemed to carry in their hands silver bows, and on their backs hung quivers of golden arrows ; likewise upon their breasts they had pictured the god of love, dancing upon Mars' knee.

Thus, in the shape of beauteous damsels, caused he these spirits to enter the Christians' army, and, with the golden bait of their enticing smiles, to tangle the champions in the snares of love, and with their smiling beauties lead

from their soldiers, and to bring them prisoners into his enchanted tent. Which commandment being no sooner given, but these virgins, more swift than the winds, glided into the Christians' army, where their glittering beauties so dazzled the eyes of the six champions, and their sober countenances so entrapped their hearts with desire, that their princely valours were abated, and they stood gazing at their excellent proportions, as though Medusa's shadow had been pictured upon their faces: to whom the enticing ladies spake in this manner:

"Come, princely gallants, come, away with arms, forget the sounds of bloody war, and hang your angry weapons on the bower of Peace: Venus, you see, hath sent her messengers from Paphos, to lead you to the paradise of love; there heaven will rain down nectar and ambrosia, sweet for you to feed upon, and there the melody of angels will make you music; there shall you fight upon beds of silk, and encounter with enticing kisses."

These golden promises so ravished the champions, that they were enchanted with their loves, and vowed to take their last farewell of knighthood and magnanimous chivalry.

Thus were they led from their warlike companies, to the necromancer's enchanted tent, leaving their soldiers without guiders, in danger of confusion. But the queen of chance so smiled upon the Christians, that the same time St. George arrived in Persia, with a fresh supply of knights, of whose noble achievements I purpose now to speak: for no sooner had he entered the battle, and placed his squadrons, but he had intelligence of the champions' misadventures, and how they lay enchanted in a magic tent, sleeping in pleasure upon the laps of infernal furies, which Osmond had transformed, by his charms, into the likeness of beautiful damsels; which unexpected news constrained St. George to breathe from his sorrowful heart this woful lamentation:

"Unconstant Fortune," quoth he, "why dost thou entertain me with such bitter news? Are my fellow-champions come from Christendom to win immortal honour with their swords, and lie they now bewitched with beauty? O shame and great dishonour to Christendom! O spot to knighthood and true chivalry! This news is far more bitter to my soul, *than was the poisoned dregs that Antipater gave to Alexander in his drunkenness, and a deadlier pain unto my heart.*

than was that juice that Hannibal sucked from his fatal ring. Come, soldiers, come, you followers of those cowardly champions, unsheath your warlike weapons, and follow him whose soul hath vowed either to redeem them from the necromancer's charms, or die with honour in that enterprise. If ever mortal creatures warred with damned furies, and made a passage to enchanted dales, where devils dance, and warlike shadows in the night; then, soldiers, let us march unto that pavilion, and chain the cursed charmer to some blasted oak, that hath so highly dishonoured Christendom."

These resolute speeches were no sooner finished, but the whole army, before daunted with fear, grew so courageous, that they protested to follow him through more dangers than did the Grecian knights with noble Jason in the isle of Colchos. Now began the battle again to renew, and the drums to sound fatal knells for the Pagan soldiers, whose souls the Christians' swords by numbers sent to burning Acheron. But St. George with his sword made lanes of slaughtered men, and with his angry arm made passage through the thickest of their troops, as though that death had been commander of the battle: he caused crowns and sceptres to swim in blood, and headless steeds with jointless men to fall as fast before his sword, as drops of rain before thunder: and ever in great danger he encouraged his soldiers in this manner: "Now, for the fame of Christendom, fight; captains, be now triumphant conquerors, or Christian martyrs."

These words so encouraged the soldiers' hearts, that they neither feared the necromancer's charms, nor all the flaming dragons, nor fierce drakes, that filled the air with burning lights, nor daunted at the strange encounters of hellish legions, that like to armed men with burning falchions haunted them. So fortunate were their proceedings, that they followed the invincible champion to the enchanted tent; whereas the other champions lay surfeiting in love, whilst thousands of their friends fought in coats of steel, and merited renown by their noble achievements; for no sooner arrived St. George, with his warlike followers, before the pavilion, but he heard, as it were, the melody of the Muses likewise his ears were almost ravished with the sweet song of the enchanted virgins: so pleasant and heavenly were the sights in the tent, and so delightful in his eyes, *had been enchanted with their charms, if he had not*

borne the honour of knighthood in his thoughts, and dishonour would redound to Christendom's reproach; with his sword he let drive at the tent, and cut it in sand pieces; which being done, he apparently before the necromancer sat upon a block of steel, feed-spirits with drops of blood; whom, when the chamberlain, he caused his soldiers to lay hold upon him, and chained him fast to the root of an old blasted oak, since neither art, nor help of all his charms, nor all arts of his devils, could ever after loose him, where he him to his lamentations, filling the air with echoes and speak how St. George redeemed the champions from enchantments.

When he beheld them disrobed of their warlike attire, their armour hung up, and themselves secretly sleeping in the laps of ladies, he fell into these discontented

“Heaven,” said he, “how my soul abhors this spectacle! Champions of Christendom arise, brave knights stand up, and look about like men. Are you the chosen of your countries, and will you bury all your honours in ladies' laps? For shame, arise, I say; they have of crocodiles, the songs of syrens to enchant. To brave knights; let honour be your loves; blush to our friends in arms, and blush to see your native men steeping the fields of Mavors with their blood. Arise, arise, St. George calls, the victory will tarry none: arise, and tear the womanish attire; surfeit with like robes; put on your steely corslets, your glittering gorgets, and unsheath your conquering weapons, for your field may be converted into a purple ocean.”

His heroic speeches were no sooner finished, but the knights, like men amazed, rose from their ladies' bosoms, ashamed of their follies, they submissively craved pardon and vowed by protestations never to sleep in beds nor ever unbuckle their shields from their weary backs; they had won their credits in the field again, nor should be counted his deserved followers, till their triumphe enrolled amongst the deeds of martial knights. Putting themselves with approved corslets, and taking their swords, they accompanied St. George to the field of their enemies, and left the necromancer chained.

to the tree, who at their departure breathed forth these bitter curses :

" Let hell's horror, and tormenting pains," quoth he, " let their eternal punishment ; let flaming fire descend the elements and consume them in their warlike triumphs, and let their ways be strewed with venomous thorns, that all the legs may rankle to the knees, before they march to their native country. But why exclaim I thus in vain, when Heaven itself preserves their happiness ? Now all my magicks are ended, and all my spirits forsaken me in need, and here I am fast chained up to starve and die. Have I had power to rend the vale of earth, and shake the mighty mountains with my charms ? Have I had power to raise up dead men's shapes from kingly tombs, and can I not unchain myself from this accursed tree ? O no ! for I am fettered up by the immortal power of the Christian's God against whom because I did rebel, I am now condemned to everlasting fire. Come all ye necromancers in the world, come all you sorcerers and charmers, come all you scholars from the learned universities, come all you witches, bewitches, and fortune-tellers, and all that practise devilish arts, come take example by the story of my eyes."

This being said, he violently, with his own hands, tore his hair from his head, as a sufficient revenge, because by the direction of their wills, he was first trained in that damnable art. Then betwixt his teeth he bit in two his loathsome tongue, because it muttered forth so many charms : then into his thirsty bowels he thrust his hands, because they had so often held the silver wand, wherewith he had made his charmed circles ; and for every letter, mark, and character that belonged to his conjuration, he inflicted a several torment upon himself : and at last, with sightless eyes, speechless tongue, handless arms, and dismembered body, he was forced to give up his condemned ghost ; where, after his life of life was vanished from his earthly trunk, the heavens seemed to smile at his sudden fall, and hell began to roar at the conquest of his death ; the ground whereon he died, was ever after that time unfortunate, and to this present time is called, in that country, " a vale of walking spirits."

Thus have you heard the damnable life and miserable fate of this accursed necromancer Osmond, whom we will now leave to the punishments due to such a wicked offender,

peak of the seven noble and magnanimous Christian champions.

After St. George had ended these enchantments, they never sheathed up their swords, nor unlocked their armour, till the subversion of Persia was accomplished, and the sultan with his petty kings, was taken prisoner. Seven days the battle continued without ceasing; they slew two hundred thousand soldiers, besides a number that fled away and drowned themselves; some cast themselves headlong down from the top of high trees; some made slaughter of themselves, and yielded to the mercy of the Christians; but the sultan, with his princes, riding in their iron chariots, endured the Christians' encounters, till the whole army was discomfited, and then by force and violence they were compelled to yield. The sultan happened into the hands of St. George, and six viceroys to the other six champions: where, after they had sworn allegiance to the Christian knights, and had promised to forsake their Mahomet, they were not only set at liberty, but used most honourably; but the sultan himself, having a heart fraught with despite and tyranny, contemned the champions' courtesies, and utterly disdained their Christian governments, protesting that the heavens should first lose their wonted brightness, and the seas forsake their swelling tides, before his heart should yield to their intended desires; whereupon St. George being resolved to revenge his injuries, commanded that the sultan should be disrobed from all his princely attire, and in base apparel sent to prison, even to the dungeon where he himself had endured so long imprisonment, as you heard in the beginning of this history, which strict commandment was presently performed; in which dungeon the sultan had not long continued, sufficing his hungry stomach with the bread of musty bran, and stanching his thirst with channel-water, but he began to grow desperate and weary of his life, and at length ran his head against a marble pillar standing in the middle of the dungeon, and dashed out his brains; the news of whose death, when it came to the champions' ears, they offered no violence to his lifeless body, but entombed him in a sumptuous sepulchre; and after that, St. George took upon him the government of Persia, and there established good and Christian laws; also he gave to the other six champions *ix several kingdoms belonging to the crown of Persia, and*

surnamed them six viceroys or petty kings. This being done, he took truce with the world, and triumphantly marched towards Christendom with the conquest of three imperial diadems, that is to say, of Egypt, Persia, and Morocco; in which journey he erected many stately monuments, in remembrance of his victories and heroical achievements; and through every country that they marched, there decked to them an innumerable company of Pagans, that desired to follow him into Christendom, and to be christened in their faith, protesting to forsake their gods, whose worshippers were none but tyrants, and such as delighted in nothing but shedding of blood: to whose requests St. George presently condescended, not only in granting them their desires, but also in honouring them with the favour of his princely countenance.

In this princely manner marched St. George with his warlike troops through the territories of Africa and Asia. But when the Christian champions approached the watery world, and began to go on board their ships, the earth seemed to mourn at their farewells, and the seas to rejoice at their presence: the waves couched as smooth as crystal ice, and the winds blew such gentle gales, as though the sea-gods had been the directors of their fleet.

Thus in great pleasure they passed their time away, committing their fortunes to the mercy of the winds and the waters, who did so favourably serve them, that in a short time they arrived upon the banks of Christendom; where, being no sooner come on shore, and past the dangers of the seas, but St. George, in presence of thousands of his followers, kneeled down on the ground, and gave God praise for his happy arrival. After which he gave command that the army should be discharged, and every one rewarded according to his desert; which within seven weeks was performed, to the honour of Christendom.

After this, St. George earnestly requested the other six champions, that they would honour him with their presence home to his country of England, and there receive the comfort of joyful ease, after the bloody encounters of so many dangerous battles. This motion of St. George not only obtained their consents, but added a forwardness to *their willing minds*; so incontinently they set forward towards England, upon whose chalky cliffs they in a short

ved: and after this took their journey towards the
ondon, where their entertainments were so honour-
formed, that I want the eloquence of Cicero, and
ric of Calliope, to describe it.

gentle reader, hast thou heard the first of the
achievements, noble adventures, and honourable
these renowned and worthy champions. The se-
relates the noble achievements and strange fortunes
orge's three sons; the loves of many gallant la-
combats and tournaments of many valiant knights,
dies of mighty potentates. Likewise the rest of the
ventures of the renowned Seven Champions; also
ier and place of their honourable deaths, and how
ie to be called the Seven Saints of Christendom.

THE
SEVEN CHAMPION
OF
CHRISTENDOM.

PART II.—CHAP. I.

AFTER St. George, with the other six champions of Christendom, had brought into subjection all the eastern parts of the world, as you heard in the former part of the history, they returned to England, where in the famous city of London they sojourned, a place not only beautified with sumptuous buildings, but graced with a number of valiant knightly and gallant gentlemen.

Here the Christian champions laid their arms aside, and hung they up their weapons on the bower of peace. Their glittering corslets rusted in their armouries, they did not hear the warlike sound of drums nor silver trumpet; there stood no sentinels nor courts of guard, nor were the steeds prepared to the battle, but all things tended to lasting peace.

But at last St. George's three sons, Guy, Alexander, and David, being all three born at one birth, as you have heard before, in the wilderness, and sent into three several kingdoms by their careful father to be trained up; being at some ripeness of age, they desired much to visit their parents, to whom they had not seen from their infancies.

This request so pleased their tutors, that they furnished them with a stately train of knights, and sent them safely into England, where they arrived all three at the famous city of London, where their entertainments were most princely, and their welcome so honourable that I want art to describe, and memory to express.

I omit what sumptuous pageants and delightful shows the citizens provided, and how the streets of London were beautified with tapestry, the solemn bells that rang

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS, &c. 177

welcomes, and the silver strained instruments that
 em pleasant entertainment. Also I pass over the
 joy, who prized their sights more precious in his
 an if he had been made sole monarch of the golden
 of rich America. Also their mother's welcomes to
 1, who gave them more kisses than she breathed
 oans at their deliveries from her painful womb in
 lerness.

ther champions' courtesies were not of the least, nor
 mallest in account, to these three young gentlemen :
 e short, St. George in his own person conducted them
 eir lodgings, where they spent that day and the night
 g in royal banqueting amongst their princely friends.
 o sooner appeared the morning sun upon the moun-
 s, and the clear countenance of the elements made
 of some ensuing pastime, but St. George com-
 a solemn hunting for the welcome of his sons.

began the knights to arm themselves in troops, and
 nt upon their jennets, and some, with well-armed
 ears in their hands, prepared for the game on foot ;
 George, with his sons clad in green vestments, like
 , with silver horns hanging at their backs, in scarfs
 ured silk, were still the foremost in this exercise.
 e Sabra (intending to see her sons' valour in the
 hether they were in courage like their father or no)
 a gentle palfrey to be provided, whereon she mounted,
 itness of these Sylvan sports ; she was armed with a
 breast-plate, wrought like to the scales of a dolphin,
 er hand she bore a silver bow of the Turkish fashion,
 Amazonian queen, or Diana hunting in the groves of
 a.

, in this gallant manner, rode forth these hunters to
 incely pastimes, where, after they had ridden about
 es from the city of London, there fell from St. George's
 ree drops of blood ; whereat he suddenly started, and
 ithal he heard the croaking of a flight of night ravens,
 vered by the forest side, all which he judged to be
 signs of some ensuing tragedy : but having a princely
 he was nothing discouraged thereat, nor little mis-
 the woful accident that after happened, but with a
 esolution entered the forest, accounting such fore-
 tokens for old wives' ceremonies, wherein they ha-

not passed the compass of half a mile, but they start a swift stag, at whom they uncoupled their hounds, and g bridled to their horses ; but now behold how frowning fate changed their pleasant pastime to a sad and bloody tragedy for Sabra, proffering to keep pace with them, delighting behold the valiant encounters of her young sons, and be careless of herself, through the over-swiftness of her ste she slipped beside her saddle, and so fell directly upon thorny brake of brambles, the pricks whereof (more she than spikes of iron) entered into every part of her delicate body ; some pierce the lovely closets of her star-bright eye whereby (instead of crystal pearled tears) there issued dro of purest blood ; her face, before that blushed like the morning's radiant countenance, was now changed into a crimson red ; her milk-white hands, that lately strained the ivy lute, did seem to wear a bloody scarlet glove ; and her tender paps, that had often fed her sons with the milk of nature, were all rent and torn with those accursed brambles from whose deep wounds there issued such a stream of purple gore, that it turned the grass from a lively green to crimson hue, and the abundance of blood that trickled from her breast began to enforce her soul to give the work-woful farewell. And when she perceived that she must force commit herself to the fury of imperious death, she breathed forth this dying exhortation :

"Dear lord," said she, "in this unhappy hunting may you lose the truest wife that ever lay by any prince's side yet mourn not you, nor grieve you my sons, nor you brave Christian knights ; but let your warlike drums convey royalty to my tomb, that all the world may write in brass books, how I have followed my lord, through many a bloody field, and for his sake, have left my parents, friends, a country ; but now the cruel Fates have wrought their spite, and finished my life, because I am not able to perform what love he hath deserved of me. And now to you sons this blessing do I leave behind : even by the pains that forty weeks I once endured for your sakes, when as you lay enclosed in my womb, and by a mother's love that ever since I have borne you, imitate and follow your father all his honourable attempts ; harm not the silly infant, the helpless widow ; defend the honour of distressed ladies and give freely unto wounded soldiers ; seek not to



sted virgins with your lust, and adventure ever-
edeen true knights from captivity ; live evermore
enemies to Paganism, and spend your lives in the
nd defence of Christ, that babes (as yet unborn)
come may speak of you, and record you in the
fame to be true Christian champions. This is my
and this is the testament I leave behind ; for now
chillness of pale death closing the closets of mine
arewell, vain world ; dear lord, farewell ; sweet
famous followers of my George, and all true
knights, adieu."

words were no sooner ended, but with a heavy
ielded up the ghost ; whereat St. George fell upon
s body, tearing his hair, and rending his hunter's
a his back in many pieces.

s likewise, whose sorrows were as great as his,
ever to neglect one day, but daily to weep some
n their mother's grave, till from the earth did
e mournful flower, to bear remembrance of her
id the violet that sprung from chaste Adonis's blood,
us wept to see him slain. Likewise the other six
s began now a little to recover themselves, and
sted, by the honour of true knighthood, to ac-
St. George unto the Holy Land bare footed, with-
hose or shoe, only clad in russet gaberdines, like
pilgrims of the world, and never to return till
aid their vows at that blessed sepulchre.

this sorrowful manner wearied they the time
ng the wood with echoes of their lamentations,
ling their dolours to the whistling winds ; but at
black Night began to approach, and with her
tle to overspread the crystal firmament, they
her dead body back to the city of London, where
of this tragical accident drowned their friends in
orrow ; for the news of her untimely death was
ruited abroad, but the same caused both old and
ament the loss of so sweet a lady.

eral grief of the citizens continued for the space
ays ; at the end whereof, St. George with his sons
er champions interred her body very honourably,
f over the same a rich and costly monument
is state, like the tomb of Mausolus, which was

called one of the wonders of the world); for thereon was portrayed the queen of chastity with her maidens, bathing themselves in a crystal fountain, as a witness of her wondrous chastity, against the lustful assaults of all lascivious attempts.

Thereon was also lively pictured a turtle-dove sitting upon a tree of gold, in sign of true love that she bore to her betrothed husband.

I leave to speak of the curious workmanship of the pinnacles, that were framed all of the purest jet, enamelled with silver and jasper stones: and I omit the pendants of gold, the escutcheons of princes, and the arms of countries that beautified her tomb. Her statue or picture was carved cunningly in alabaster, and laid as it were upon a pillow of green silk, like to Pygmalion's ivory image, and directly over the same hung a silver tablet, whereon, in letters of gold, was this epitaph written:

Here lies the wonder of this worldly age,
For beauty, wit, and princely majesty,
Whom spiteful Death, in his imperious rage,
Procur'd to fall through cursed cruelty:
For as she sported in a fragrant wood,
Upon a thorny brake she spilt her blood.

Let ladies fair, and princes of great might,
With silver pearly tears bedew this tomb;
Accuse the fatal sisters of despite,
For blasting thus the pride of nature's bloom;
For here she sleeps within this earthly grave,
Whose worth deserves a golden tomb to have.

Seven years she kept her pure virginity,
In absence of her true betrothed knight,
When many did pursue her chastity,
Whilst he remained in prison day and night;
But yet we see that things of purest prize,
Forsake the earth to dwell above the skies.

Ladies, come mourn with doleful melody,
And make this monument your settled bow'r;
Here shed your brackish tears eternally,
Lament both year, month, week, day, &c

For here she rests whose like can ne'er be found,
Here Beauty's pride lies buried in the ground.

Her wounded heart, that yet doth freshly bleed,
Hath caus'd seven knights a journey for to take
'To fair Jerusalem, in pilgrims' weeds,
The fury of her angry ghost to slake:
Because their Sylvan sport was chiefest guilt,
And only 'cause her blood was timeless spilt.

Thus, after the tomb was erected, and all things performed according to St. George's direction, he left his sons in the city of London, under the government of the English king; and, in company of the other six champions, he took his journey towards Jerusalem.

They were attired after the manner of pilgrims, in russet gaberdines down to their feet; in their hands they bore staves of ebon-wood, tipped at the ends with silver, the pikes whereof were of the strongest Lydian steel, of such a sharpness, that they were able to pierce a target of tortoise-shell; upon their breasts hung crosses of crimson silk, to signify they were Christian pilgrims, travelling to the sepulchre of Christ.

In this manner set they forward from England in the spring time of the year, when Flora had beautified the earth with nature's tapestry, and made their passages as pleasant as the gardens of Hesperides, adorned with all kind of odoriferous flowers. When as they crossed the seas, the silver waves seemed to lie as smooth as crystal ice, and the dolphins to dance above the waters as a sign of a prosperous journey. In travelling by land the ways seemed so short and easy, and the chirping melody of birds made them such music as they passed, that in a short season they arrived beyond the borders of Christendom, and had entered the confines of Africa.

There were they forced, instead of downy beds, nightly to rest their weary limbs upon heaps of sun-burnt moss; and instead of silken curtains and curious canopies, they had the clouds of heaven to cover them. Now their naked legs and bare feet, that had wont to stride the stately steeds, and to *trample in fields of Pagans' blood*, were forced to climb *the craggy mountains*, and to endure the torments of prick-

g briers, as they travelled through the desert places and unfortless solitary wildernesses.

Many were the dangers that happened to them in their journey before they arrived in Judea, princely their achievements, and most honourable their adventures; which for this time I pass over, leaving the champions for a time in their travel towards the sepulchre of Christ, and speak what happened to St. George's three sons in visiting their mother's tomb in the city of London.

CHAP. II.

THE swift-footed steeds of Titan's fiery car had almost finished a year since Sabra's funeral was solemnized; in which time St. George's three sons had visited their mother's tomb oftener than there were days in the year, and had shed more sorrowful tears thereon than are stars in the glittering horizon; but at last these three young princes fell at a civil discord and mortal strife, which of them should bear the truest love to their mother's dead body, and which of them should be held in greatest esteem: for before many days were expired, they concluded to offer up their several devotions at her tomb; and he that devised a gift of the rarest price, and of the strangest quality, should be held worthy of the greatest honour, and accounted the noblest of them all.

The first, thinking to exceed his brothers in the strangeness of his gift, repaired unto a cunning enchantress, who abode in a secret cave adjoining to the city, whom he procure (through many rich gifts and large promises) by art to devise a means to get the honour from his brethren, and give a gift of that strange nature, that all the world might wonder at the report thereof.

The enchantress (being won with his promises) by art; magic spells devised a garland containing all the diverse of flowers that ever grew in earthly gardens; and though were then in the dead time of the winter, whenas the sicicles had disrobed both herbs and flowers of their beauty and the snow lay freezing on the mountain tops, yet was *garland contrived after the fashion of a rich imperial crown with as many several flowers as ever Flora placed*

downs of rich Arcadia; in diversity of colours like the glittering rainbow, when it shineth in greatest pride, and casting such an odoriferous scent and savour, as though the heavens had rained down showers of camphire, bis, or sweet-smelling ambergris.

This rare and exceeding garland was no sooner framed by enchantment, and delivered into his hands, but he left the enchantress sitting in her ebon chair, and upon a block of steel, practising her fatal arts, with her hair hanging about her shoulders like wreaths of snakes, or envenomed serpents; and so returned to his mother's tomb, where he hung it upon a pillar of silver that was placed in the middle of the monument.

The second brother also repaired to his mother's tomb, and brought in his hand an ivory lute, whereon he played such inspiring melody, that it seemed like the harmony of angels, or the celestial music of Apollo, when he descended heaven for the love of Daphne, whom he turned into a bay-tree; the music being finished, he tied his lute in a damask scarf, and with great humility he hung it at the west end of the tomb, upon a knob of a jasper-stone.

Lastly, the third brother likewise repaired with no outward devotion or worldly gift; but clad in a vesture of white silk, bearing in his hand an instrument of death, like an innocent lamb going to sacrifice, or one ready to be offered up for the love of his mother's soul.

This strange manner of repair caused his other brothers to stand attentively, and with diligent eyes to behold his purpose.

First, after he had (submissively, and with great humility) let fall a shower of silver tears from the cisterns of his eyes, in remembrance of his mother's timeless tragedy; he pricked his naked breast with a silver bodkin, which he had brought in his hand, from whence there trickled down about thirty drops of blood, which he after offered to his mother's tomb in a silver basin, as an evident sign that there could be nothing more dear, nor of more precious price, than to offer up his own blood for her love. This ceremonious gift caused his two other brothers to swell in hatred like to chafed lions, and run with fury upon him, intending to catch him by the hair of the head, and drag him round about their mother's tomb, *till his brains were dashed against a marble pavement, and*

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

sprinkled upon her grave; but this wicked entered the majesty of heaven, that ere they could achieve their intents, or stain their hands with his blood, as it were the noise of dead men's bones rattling on ground, whereupon looking fearfully about them, the ghastly shape, pale like unto ashes, in countenance, smiling their mother, with her breast besmeared in blood, her body wounded with a number of scars; and so with dismal and rueful look, she spake unto her desperate sons in this manner:

"Oh you degenerate from nature's kind! Why do you seek to make a murder of yourselves? Can you endure to see my body rent in twain, my heart split in sunder, and my womb dismembered? Abate this fury; stain not your hands with your own blood, nor make my tomb the spectacle of more death. Unite yourselves in concord, that my discontented soul may sleep in peace, and never more be troubled with your unbridled humours. Make haste, I say, arm yourselves in steel corslets, and follow your valiant father to Jerusalem, he is there in danger and distress of life: away, I say, or else my angry ghost shall never leave this world, but hunt you up and down with ghastly visions."

This being said, she vanished from their sight into the brittle air; whereat for a time they stood amazed, and almost bereft of wits, through the terrors of her words; but soon last recovering their former senses, they all vowed a continual unity, and never to proffer the like injury again, but live in brotherly concord till the dissolution of their earth bodies.

So in haste they went unto the king, and certified him of all things that had happened; and falling upon their knees before his majesty, requested at his hands the honour of knighthood, with leave to depart in pursuit of their trespass, and the other champions, that were fallen into great distress.

The king, purposing to accomplish their desires, fulfilled their requests, presently condescended, and gave them the honour of knighthood, but furnished with rich habiliments of war, answerable to their nimble minds: first, he frankly bestowed upon each stately palfreys, bred upon the bright mount

dials, in colour of an iron-grey, beautified with silver hairs, and in pace swifter than Spanish jennets; for boldness and courage like to Bucephalus, the horse of Alexander the Macedonian, or Caesar's steed, that never daunted in the field; and they were trapped with rich trappings of gold, after the Morocco fashion, with saddles framed like unto iron chairs, with backs of steel, and their foreheads were beautified with spangled plumes of purple feathers, whereon hung many golden pendants. The king likewise bestowed upon them three costly swords, wrought of purest Lybian steel, with lances bound about with plates of brass; at the tops whereof hung silken streamers, beautified with the English cross, being the crimson badge of knighthood and honour of adventurous champions. Thus, in this royal manner, rode these three young knights from the city of London, in company of the king, with a train of knights and gallant gentlemen, who conducted them to the sea-side, where they left the young knights to their future fortunes, and returned back to the English court.

Now are St. George's sons floating upon the seas, making their first adventures in the world, that after ages might applaud their achievements, and enrol their fames in the records of honour. Fate, prosper them successfully; and, gentle Fortune, smile upon their travels: for three braver knights did never cross the seas, nor make their adventures into strange countries.

CHAP. III.

MANY days had not these three magnanimous knights endured the danger of the swelling waves, but with a prosperous and successful wind they arrived upon the territories of France; where being no sooner safely set on shore, but they bountifully rewarded their mariners, and betook themselves fully to their intended travels.

Now began their costly trapped steeds to pace it like the scudding winds, and with their warlike hoofs to thunder on the beaten passages; now began true honour to flourish in their princely breasts, and the renown of their father's achievements to encourage their desires. Although tender

youth sat but budding on their cheeks, yet partly manhood triumphed in their hearts; and although their childish arms as yet never tried the painful adventures of knighthood, yet bore they high and princely cogitations in as great esteem, as when their father slew the burning dragon in Egypt for preservation of their mother's life.

Thus travelled they to the farther part of the kingdom of France, guided only by the direction of Fortune, without any adventure worth the noting, till at last, riding through a mighty forest standing on the borders of Lusitania, they heard (afar off as it were) the rueful cries of a distressed woman; which in this manner filled the air with echoes of her moans:

"O Heavens!" said she, "be kind and pitiful unto a maiden in distress, and send some happy passengers that may deliver me from these inhuman monsters."

This woful and unexpected noise caused the knights to alight from their horses, and to see the event of this accident: so after they had tied their steeds to the body of a pine-tree, by the reins of their bridles, they walked on foot into the thickest of the forest, with their weapons drawn, ready to withstand any assailment whatsoever; and, as they drew near to the distressed virgin, they heard her breathe forth this pitiful moving lamentation the second time:

"Come, come, some courteous knight! or else I must forego that precious jewel which all the world can never again recover."

These words caused them to make the more speed, and to run the nearest way for the maiden's succour. Where, approaching her presence, they found her tied by the locks of her own hair to the trunk of an orange tree, and three cruel and inhuman Negroes standing ready to despoil her of her pure and undefiled chastity, and with their lusts to blast the blooming bud of her dear and unspotted virginity.

But when St. George's sons beheld her lovely countenance besmeared in dust, that before seemed to be as beautiful as roses in milk, and her crystal eyes imbrued in floods of tears, at one instant they ran upon the Negroes, and sheathed their angry weapons in their loathsome bowels; the lechers being slain, their blood sprinkled about the forest, and their bodies cast out as a prey for ravens.

OF CHRISTENDOM.

beasts to feed on, they unbound the maiden, and like courteous knights, demanded the cause of her captivity, and by what means she came into that solitary forest.

"Most noble knights," quoth she, "and true renowned men at arms, to tell the cause of my passed misery were a trouble unto my soul, for the discourse thereof will burst my heart with grief; but considering your nobilities, the which I do perceive by your princely behaviour and kind courtesies extended towards me, being a virgin in distress, under the hands of these lustful Negroes, whom you have justly murdered, shall so much embolden me, though unto my heart's great grief, to discourse the first cause of my miserable fortune.

"My father," quoth she, "whilst gentle fortune smiled upon him, was duke and sole commander of the state of Normandy, a country now situated in the kingdom of France, whose lands and revenues in his prosperity were so great, that he continually kept as stately a train, both of knights and gentlemen, as any prince in Europe; wherefore the king of France greatly envied, and by bloody wars deposed my father from his princely dignity, who, for safeguard of his life, in company of me his only heir and daughter, betook us to these solitary woods, where ever since we have secretly remained in a poor cell or hermitage, which by our industrious pains hath been built with plants of vines and oaken boughs, and covered over head with clods of earth, and turfs of grass. Seven years we have continued in great extremities, sustaining our hunger with the fruits of trees and quenching of our thirst with the dew of heaven, falling nightly upon fragrant flowers; and here, instead of princely attire, embroidered garments, and damask vestures, we have been constrained to clothe ourselves with flowers, which we have painfully woven up to gether: thus in this manner continued we in this solitary wilderness, making both birds and beasts our chief companions; these merciless tawny Moors, who, as you see, came into our cell, thinking to have found some store of treasure; but casting their gazing eyes upon my beauty, they were presently enchanted with lustful desires, only to croak the great bud of my virginity: then with furious and dismal violences, and with hearts more cruel than tyrannous Roman emperor, when he beheld

entrails of his natural mother laid open by his inhuman and merciless commandment, or when he stood upon the top of a mighty mountain, to see that famous and imperial city of Rome set on fire, by the remorseless hands; of his unrelenting ministers, that added unhallowed flames to his unholy furies. In this kind, I say, these merciless and wicked-minded Negroes with violent hands took my aged father, and most cruelly bound him to the blasted body of a withered oak, standing before the entry of his cell; where neither the reverend honour of his silver hairs, glittering like the frozen icicles upon the northern mountains, nor the strained sighs of his breast, wherein the pledge of wisdom was enthronized, nor all my tears or exclamations could any whit abate their cruelties; but (grim dogs of Barbary) they left my father fast bound unto the tree, and like egregious vipers took me by the trammels of my golden hair, dragging me like a silly lamb unto this slaughtering-place, intending to satisfy their lust with the flower of my chastity. Being used thus, I made my humble supplication to the Highest Majesty, to be revenged upon their cruelties: I reported to them the rewards of bloody ravishments; yet neither the fears of heaven, nor the terrible threats of hell, could mollify their bloody minds; but they protested to persevere in that wickedness, and vowed that if all the leaves of the trees, that grew within the wood, were turned into Indian pearls, yet should they not redeem my chastity from the stain of their insatiable and lustful desires. This being said, they bound me with the trammels of mine own hair to this orange-tree, and at the very instant they proffered to defile my unspotted body, you happily approached, and not only redeemed me from their tyrannous desires, but quit the world from three of the wickedest creatures that ever nature framed; for which, most noble and invincible knights, if ever virgin's prayers may prevail, humbly will I make my supplications to the deities, that you may prove as valiant champions as ever put on helms and that your fames may ring to every prince's ear, as bright Hyperion doth shew his golden face."

This tragical tale was no sooner ended, but the knights embraced the sorrowful maiden betwixt them and earnestly requested her to conduct them unto where she left her father bound unto the withered

which she willingly consented, and thanked them highly for their kindness; but before they approached to the old man's residence, what for the grief of his banishment, and violent rage of his daughter, he was forced to yield up his miserable life to the mercy of unavoidable death.

When St. George's valiant sons, in company of this sorrowful maiden, came to the tree, and, contrary to their expectations, found her father cold and stiff, void of sense and feeling, also his hands and face covered with green moss, which they supposed to be done by the robin-red-breast, and other little birds, who do use naturally to cover the bare parts of any body that they find dead in the field, they all fell into a new confused extremity of grief; but especially his daughter, having lost all joy and comfort in this world, made both heaven and earth resound with her exceeding lamentations. Thus when the three young knights perceived his comfortless sorrow of the virgin, and how she had vowed never to depart from those solitary groves, but to spend the remnant of her days in company of her father's dead body, they courteously assisted her to bury him under a chesnut-tree, where they left her behind them bathing her grave with her tears, and returned back to their horses, where they left them at the entry of the forest tied to a yew pine, and so departed on their journey; where we will leave them for a time, and speak of the Seven Champions of Christendom, that were gone on pilgrimage to the city of Jerusalem, and what strange adventures happened to them in their travel.

CHAP. IV.

Now we speak of the favourable clemency that smiling shewed to the Christian champions in their travels to Jerusalem; for after they were departed from England, they journeyed in their pilgrims' attire through many countries, at last they arrived upon the confines of Syria, which is a country not only beautified with its costly buildings framed by the curious architecture of the Arabian's device, but also furnished with all the pleasures that nature in her greatest liberality could bestow. In this fruitful dominion long time the Christian champions rested their weary steps, and made their abode in the

house of a rich and courteous Jew, a man that spent his wealth chiefly for the succour and comfort of travellers and wandering pilgrims; his house was not curiously erected up of carved timber-work, but framed with quarries of blue stones, and supported with many stately pillars of the purest marble. The gates and entry of his house were continually kept open, in sign of his bountiful mind; over the portal thereof did hang a brazen table, whereon was most curiously engraven the picture of Ceres, the goddess of plenty, decked with garlands of wheat, wreaths of olives, bunches of vines, and with all manner of fruitful things; the chamber wherein these champions took their nightly repose and golden sleep, was garnished with as many windows of crystal glass as there were days in the year, and the walls painted with as many stories as were years since the world's creation. It was likewise built four-square, after the manner of pyramids in Greece; on the north side were painted high mountains of snow, whose tops seemed to reach the clouds, and mighty woods overhung with silver icicles, which is the nature of the northern climate. Lastly, upon the west side of the chamber sat the god of the seas, riding upon a dolphin's back, a troop of mermaids following him, with their golden trammels floating upon the silver waves. Thus in this chamber rested these weary champions a long season, where their food was not delicious, but wholesome, and their services not curious, but comely. The courteous Jew, their friendly host, whom nature had honoured with seven comely sons, daily kept them company, and not only shewed them the curiosities of his habitation, but also described the pleasant situation of his country.

Some days were spent in this manner, to the exceeding great pleasure of the Christian knights; and when the dark night approached, and the wonted time of sleep summoned them to their silent and quiet rests, the Jew's children, being seven as brave and comely boys as ever dame nature framed, filled the seven champions' ears with such sweet and delicate melodies, gently strained from their ivory lutes, that no Arion, when all the art of sweet music consented with his tune, voice, and hand, when he won favour of the dolphin *being forsaken of men*, was comparable thereto; where the Christians were enchanted with such delights, that their sleeps seemed to be as pleasant as were the sweet joy

Elysium. But upon a time, after the courteous Jew had intelligence how they were Christian knights, and such admired martial champions, whom fame had canonized to be the wonders of the world for martial discipline and knightly adventures; and finding a fit opportunity, as he walked in their companies, upon an evening, under an arbour of vine-branches, he revealed to them the secrets of his soul, and the cause of his so sad and solitary dwelling. So standing bare-headed in the middle of the champions, with his white hair hanging down to his shoulders, in colour like the silver swan, and softer than the down of thistles, or Median silk untwisted, he began, with a sober countenance and gallant demeanour, to speak as followeth:

"I am sure," quoth he, "you invincible knights, that you marvel at my solitary course of living, and that you greatly muse wherefore I exempt myself from the company of worldlings, except my seven sons, whose sights are my chief comfort, and the only prolongers of my life; therefore prepare your ears to entertain the strangest discourse that ever tongue pronounced, or wearied old man in the height of his extremity delivered.—I was, in my former years, whilst fortune smiled upon my happiness, the principal commander and chief owner of a certain fountain, of such wonderful and precious virtue, that it was valued to be worth the kingdom of India: the water thereof was so strange in the operation, that in four-and-twenty hours it would convert any metal, as brass, copper, iron, lead, or tin, into rich refined gold; the stony flint into pure silver, and any kind of earth into excellent metal. By the virtue thereof, I have made the leaves of trees a flourishing forest of riches, and the blades of grass valuable as the jewels that be found in the country of America. The virtue thereof was no sooner noised through the world, but it caused many foreign knights to try the adventure; and by force of arms to bereave me of the honour of this fountain. But at that time nature graced me with one-and-twenty sons, whereof seven be yet living, and the only comfort of my age; but the other fourteen, whom frowning fortune hath bereaved me of, many a day by their valiant prowess and matchless fortitudes, defended the fountain from many great and furious assailers; for there was no knight in all the world that was found so hardy, or of such invincible courage, that if they but once attempted to

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

counter with any of my valiant sons, they were either
slain in the combat. The fame of their
valours, and the riches of the fountain, ran through many
strange countries; and lastly, came to the ears of a furious
giant, dwelling upon the borders of Arabia; who at the re-
port thereof came, armed with his steely coat, with a mighty
bar of iron on his neck, like to furious Hercules, that burst
the brazen gates of Cerberus, and bore the conqueror of my sons,
Atlas upon his shoulders; he was the conqueror of my sons,
and the first cause of my sudden downfall. But when I
thus had intelligence of the overthrow of fourteen of my
sons, and that he had made conquest of my wealthy foun-
tain, I, with the rest of my children, thinking all hope of re-
covery to be past, betook ourselves to this solitary course of
life, where ever since, in this mansion or hermitage, we
have made our abode and residence, spending our wealth to
the relief of travelling knights and wandering pilgrims,
hoping once again that smiling fortune would advance us to
some better hap; and, to be plain, right worthy champions,
since then my hope was never at the height of full perfection
till this present time, wherein your excellent presences al-
most assure me that the hideous monster shall be conquered
my fountain revenged."

The champions with great admiration gave ear to
strange discourse of this reverend Jew, and intended,
quital of his extraordinary kindness, to undertake
venture. and the more to encourage the other, St

began in this manner to utter his mind, speaking by
Jew their host, and his valiant fellow-champions

"I have not without great wonder, most re-
courteous old man, and do not a little lament
mirable fountain, and neither am I less so-
kind and liberal a disposition should be dis-
exceeding riches; and known enemy to all
man a monster, and the fruition of so excee-
ness, should have the wealth is the cause
for to the wicked, knights to thy sons
press. But that which most grieveth
so many valiant knights to thy sons
fortunate to fall into the hands of the
be comforted, kind old man, for I

Maker,
reveng
the d
thy b

with
cos
no
to
n

aker, we were directed hither to punish that hateful giant ; revenge the injuries offered to thine age ; satisfy with his death the death of thy children, if they be dead ; and restore to thy bounteous possession that admirable rich fountain again.

" And now to you, my valiant champions, I speak, that with me through many dangers have adventured : let us courageously attempt this rare adventure, wherein such honour to our names, such happiness to our friends, such glory to God consists, in recovering right to the wronged, and punishing rightfully the wrongers of the oppressed ; and that there be no contention among us, who shall begin this adventure, for I know all you thirst after honour, therefore let lots be made, and to whomsoever the chief lot falleth, let him be foremost in assailing the giant, and so good fortune be our guides."

The champions, without more words disrobing themselves from their pilgrims' attire, every one elected forth an armour, fitting to their portly bodies, then ready in the Jew's house ; instead of their ebony staves tipped with silver, they wielded in their hands stealed blades ; and their feet, that had wont to endure a painful pilgrimage upon the bare ground, were now ready dressed to mount the lofty stirrup ; but, as I said, they purposed not generally to assail the giant, but singly, every one to try his own fortune, thereby to obtain the greater honour, and their deeds to merit the higher fame : therefore the lots being cast among themselves, which should begin the adventure, the lot fell first to St. Denis, the noble champion of France, who greatly rejoiced at his fortune, and so departed for that night, to get things in readiness ; but the next morning, no sooner had the golden sun displayed his beauty in the east, but St. Denis arose from his sluggish bed, and attired himself in costly armour, and mounted upon a steed of iron-grey, with a spangled plume of purple feathers on his bargonet, spangled with stars of gold, resembling the azure firmament, beautified with glittering stars. Where, after he had taken leave of the other champions, and had demanded of the Jew where the giant had his residence, he departed forward on his journey, and before the sun had mounted to the top of heaven, he approached the giant's presence, who as then sate upon a block of steel, directly before the golden fountain, satisfying his

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

anger with raw flesh, and quenching his thirst with the juice of ripe grapes.

The first sight of this ugly and deformed proportion, almost daunted the valour of the French champion, that he stood in amaze, whether it was better to try the adventure, or return with dishonour back to his other fellow-knights; but having a heart furnished with true magnanimity, he chose so committing his trust to the unconstant queen of chance, ly, that the strokes of his sword sounded like a weighty blow hammered upon an anvil. But so smally regarded the giant the puissant force of this single knight, that he would scarce rise from the place where he sat; but yet remembering a strange dream, that a little before he had in his sleep, which revealed unto him how that a knight would come from the northern climates of the earth, and vanquish him by fortitude; adventure of the fountain, and with a grim countenance he ran upon therefore, not minding to be taken at an advantage, he suddenly started up, and with a horse, armour, furniture and a St. Denis, and took him, horse, armour, furniture and a under his arm, as lightly as a strong man would take a sleeping infant from his cradle, and bore him to a hollow rock, stone, bound about with bars of iron, standing near upon prison he closed the French champion, amongst other knights, that were sons to the courteous Jew heard before discoursed; and being proud of the he returned to the block of steel; where we will sitting glorying in his own conceit, and speak champions remaining in the Jew's house, French knight's fortunate return; but when possession of the elements, and no news champion's success, they judged present was slain in the adventure, or else disprisoner; and therefore they cast lots for the next morning should try his fortune French knight's quarrel; so the lot fell to the champion of Spain, whereat his more than if he had been made king. So, in like manner, on the next

attired
champ
swift
proud
in co
tified
brea
ner
ch
co

attired himself in rich and costly armour like the other champion, and mounted upon a Spanish gennet, in pace most swift and speedy, and in portly state like to Bucephalus, the proud steed of Macedonian Alexander; his caparison was in colour like to the waves of the sea; his burgonet was beautified with a spangled plume of sable feathers, and upon his breast he bore the arms of Spain. Thus in this gallant manner departed he from the Jew's habitation, leaving the other champions at their divine contemplations for his happy success; but his fortune chanced contrary to his wishes, for at the giant's first encounter he was likewise borne to the rock of stone, to accompany St. Denis.

This giant was the strongest and hardest knight at arms that ever set foot upon the confines of Damasco; his strength was so invincible, that at one time he durst encounter with a hundred knights. But now return we again to the other champions, whom, when night approached, and likewise missing St. James, they cast lots the third time, and it fell to the noble champion of Italy, St. Anthony; who, on the next morning attired himself in costly habiliments of war, and mounted upon a Barbarian palfrey, as richly as did the valiant Jason, when he adventured into the isle of Colchos for the golden fleece, and for Medea's love; his helmet glittered like an icy mountain, decked with a plume of ginger-coloured feathers, and beautified with many silver pendants. But his shining glory was soon blemished with a cloud of mischance, for although he was as valiant as ever brandished weapon in the field of Mars, yet he found a disability in his fortitude to withstand the furious blows of the giant, in such sort that he was forced to yield himself prisoner like the former champions.

The next lot that was cast chanced to St. Andrew of Scotland, a knight as highly honoured for martial discipline as any of the rest; his steed was clad with a caparison after the manner of the Grecians; his armour varnished with green oils, like the colour of the summer fields; upon his breast he bore a cross of purple silk, and on his burgonet a goodly plume of feathers; but yet Fortune so frowned upon his enterprise, that he nothing prevailed, but committed his life to the mercy of the giant, who likewise imprisoned him with the other knights. The fifth lot fell to St. Patrick of Ireland, as brave a knight as ever nature created, and as adven-

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

turous in his achievements. If ever Hector upon his Phrygian steed pranced up and down the streets of Troy, and made that age admire his fortitude, this Irish knight might countervail his valour: for no sooner had the moon forsook the azure firmament, and had committed her charge to the golden burnished sun, but St. Patrick approached the sight of the giant, mounted upon his Irish hobby, clad in a corslet proof, beantified with silver nails: his plume of feathers of the colour of virgin's hair; his horse covered with plates of orange-tawny silk, and his saddle bound about with a veil of steel, like an iron chair. The sight of this valiant champion so daunted the courage of the giant, that he thought him to be the knight that the vision had revealed; therefore with whom the adventure should be accomplished; therefore with no cowardly fortitude he assailed the Irish knight, who with as princely valour endured the encounter; but the unkind destinies not intending to give him the honour of the victory, compelled the champion to yield to the giant's force, and like a captive to accompany the other imprisoned champions. The next lot fell to St. David of Wales, who nothing discouraged at the other Christian knights, but at the morning sun's uprise into the azure firmament glittered in his silver armour before the fountain, with a golden griffin shining on his breast where he endured a long and dangerous combat with the giant making the skies resound with echoes of their strokes; and at last, when the giant perceived that St. David began to grow almost breathless in defending the huge and mighty blows of his steeled bat, chiefly through his long encounter the giant renewed his strength, and so redoubled his strokes that St. David was constrained, like to the other Champions, to yield to the giant's mercy.

But now the heroical champion of England, St. George, remaining in the Jew's pavilion pondering in his heart the bad success of the other six champions, and that he should turn to try his fortune the next morning in the field, he fell into great contemplation: said he, "I that have for Christian knights in fields of purple blood, and enemies to swim in streams of crimson gore, should be confound this bloody and inhuman monster, that ever vexed and confuted six of the bravest knights that ever lived. I slew the burning dragon in Egypt; I con-

e giant that kept the enchanted castle amongst the Amazonians : then, Fortune, let me accomplish this dangerous adventure, that all Christians and Christian knights may applaud my name."

In this manner spent he away the night, hoping for the happy success of the next day's enterprise, whereon he vowed, by the honour of his golden garter, either to return a worthy conqueror, or to die with honour valiantly. And when the day began to beautify the eastern elements with a fair purple colour, he repaired to the Jew's armoury, and clad himself in a black corslet, mounting himself upon a pitchy-coloured steed, adorned with a blood-red caparison, in sign of a bloody and tragical adventure; his plume of feathers was like a flame of fire quenched in blood, as a token of speedy revenge; he armed himself, not with a sturdy lance, bound with plates of brass, but took a javelin made of steel, the one end sharpened like the point of a needle, at the other end a ball of iron, in fashion of a mace or club. Being thus armed, according to his wished desires, he took leave of the Jew and his seven sons, all attired in black and mournful ornaments, praying for his happy and fortunate success, and so departed speedily to the golden fountain, where he found the giant sleeping carelessly upon his block of steel, dreading no ensuing danger. But when the valiant champion St. George was alighted from his horse, and sufficiently beheld the deformed proportion of the giant, how the hair of his head stood staring upright, like the bristles of a wild boar, his eyes gazing open like two blazing comets, his teeth long and sharp, like to spikes of steel, the nails of his hands like the talons of an eagle, over which were drawn a pair of iron gloves; and every other limb huge and strongly proportioned, like to the body of some mighty oak; the worthy champion awakened him in this order: "Arise," said he, "unreasonable deformed monster, and either make delivery of the captive knights, whom thou wrongfully detainest, or prepare thy ugly self to abide the uttermost force of my warlike arm and death-prepared weapon."

At which words the furious giant started up, as one suddenly amazed or affrighted from his sleep, and without making any reply at all, took his iron mace fast in both his hands, and with great terror let drive at the most worthy English champion, who with exceeding cunning and nimbleness de-

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

aded himself from the danger, by speedily avoiding the violent blows; and withal returned on his adversary a mighty thrust, with the sharp end of the javelin, which rebounded from the giant's body, as if it had been run against an adamantine pillar. Which St. George perceiving, turned his heavy round ball end of his massy javelin, and so mightily assailed the giant, redoubling his heavy blows with such courageous fortitude, that at last he beat his brains out of his deformed head, whereby the giant was constrained to yield up the ghost, and to give such a hideous roar, as though the whole frame of the earth had been shaken with the violence of some clap of thunder. This being done, St. George cast his loathsome carcass as a prey to the fowls and ravenous beasts to seize upon; and after diligently searched up and down, till he found the rock wherein all the knights and champions were imprisoned; which with his steely javelin he burst in sunder, and delivered them presently from their servitudes, and after returned most triumphantly back to the Jew's pavilion, in as great majesty and royalty as Vespa- sian with his Roman nobles and peers returned into the confines of flourishing Italy, from the admired and glorious conquest of Jerusalem and Judea.

But when the reverend Jew saw the English champions, and likewise beheld his fourteen sons safely delivered, his joy so mightily exceeded the bounds of reason, that he suddenly swooned, and lay for a time in a dead trance; the great exceeding pleasure he received. But having recovered his decayed senses, he gladly conducted their several lodgings, and there they were presented, and their wounds washed in white wine, and after banqueted them in the best manner he could, at which banquet their younger sons could not but be amazed, that had not only delivered their father, but restored, by that ugly giant's death, the possession of his aged father to the re-possession of his sons, after St. George, with the other six champions, there for the space of thirty days, with his sons in their former desire, the government of the golden fow-

elves
ward o
at Jer

TH
rest
an
by
a

ves again in their pilgrim's attire, and so departed forward on their intended journey to visit the holy sepulchre at Jerusalem.

CHAP. V.

THE champions, after this battle of the golden fountain, never rested travelling till they arrived at the holy hill of Sion, and had visited the sepulchre, which they found most richly built of the purest marble, garnished curiously by cunning architecture, with many carbuncles of jasper, and pillars of jet. The temple gates were of burnished gold, and the portals of refined silver: and in it commonly burns a sweet-smelling taper, always maintained by twelve of the noblest virgins dwelling in Judea, clad in silken ornaments. Many days offered up these worthy champions their ceremonious devotions to that sacred tomb, washing the marble pavements with their true and unfeigned tears, and witnessing their true and hearty zeal, with their continual volleys of discharged sighs. But at last, upon an evening, when Titan's golden beams began to descend the western element, as those princely-minded champions, in company of these twelve admired maidens, kneeled before the sepulchre, offering up their evening orisons, an unseen voice from a hollow vault in the temple uttered these words:

"You magnanimous knights of Christendom, whose true nobilities hath circled the earth with reports of fame, whose bare feet for the love of our sweet Saviour have set more weary steps upon the parched earth, than there be stars within the golden canopy of heaven, return, return into the bloody fields of war, and spend not the honours of your time in this ceremonious manner, for great things by you must be accomplished, such as in time to come shall fill large chronicles, and cause babes as yet unborn to speak of your achievements. And you chaste maidens, that spend your time in the service of God, ever by the plighted promise you have made to true virginity, I charge you to furnish forth these warlike champions with such approved furniture as hath been offered to this royal sepulchre by those travelling knights, which have fought under the banner of Christendom.

This is the pleasure of high Fates, and this, for the redress of all wronged innocents in earth, must be with all immediate dispatch forthwith accomplished."

This unexpected voice was no sooner ended, but the temple seemed strangely to resound, like the melody of celestial angels, or the holy harmony of cherubims; whereupon the twelve virgins arose from their contemplations, and conducted the seven champions to the farther side of Mount Sion, and there bestowed upon them seven of the bravest steeds that they ever beheld, with martial furniture answerable thereunto, befitting knights of such esteem. Thus the Christian champions, being proud of their good fortunes, attired themselves in rich and sumptuous corselets, and after mounted upon their warlike coursers, kindly bidding the ladies adieu, betook them to the world's wide journey.

This travel began at that time of the year when the summer's queen began to spread her beauteous mantle amongst the green and fresh boughs of the high and mighty cedars, whenas all kind of small birds flew round about, recreating themselves in the beauty of the day, and with their well-turned notes making a sweet and heavenly melody. At which time, I say, these mighty and well-esteemed knights, the Seven Champions of Christendom, took their way from Jerusalem, which they thought to be most used; in which they had not many days travelled through the deserts, and over many a mountain-top, but they grew feeble for lack of their accustomed victuals, and could not hide nor dissemble their great hunger. But one evening, when they had spent the day in great extremity, and night grew on, they happened into a thicket of mighty trees, whenas the silver moon with her bright beams glittered most clearly; yet to them it seemed to be as dark as pitch, for they were very sore troubled for lack of that which should sustain them, and their faces did shew and declared the perplexities of their stomachs. So they sat them down upon the green and fresh herbs, very pensive of their extreme necessity, providing to take their rest that night; but all was in vain, for that corporal necessities would not consent thereunto; but without sleeping for that night, till the next day in the morning that they turned to their accustomed travel and journey, thinking to find some food for the cherishing of their stomachs, and had their eyes always gazing abo

apy some village or house, where they might satisfy their hunger and take their rest. Thus in this helpless manner spent they away the next day, till the closing of the evening light, by which time they grew so faint they fell to the ground with feebleness.

But the next morning, by that time the golden sun had almost mounted to the top of heaven, and the glorious prime of the day began to approach, travelled on till they came into a field very plain, where in the midst of it was a little mountain, out of which there appeared a great smoke, which gave them to understand that there should be some habitation in that place. Then the princely-minded St. George said to the other champions: "Take comfort with yourselves, and by little and little come forward with an easy pace, for I will ride before to see who shall be our host this ensuing night; and of this, brave knights and champions, be all assured, whether he be pleased or no, he shall give us lodging and entertainment like travelling knights;" and therewithal he set spurs to his horse, and swiftly scoured away; his beast was so speedy, that in a short time he approached the mountain, where, at the noise and rushing of his horse in running, there arose from the ground a terrible giant, of so great height, that he seemed to be a big-grown tree, and for hugeness like to a rock of stone; but when he cast his staring eyes upon the English knight, which seemed to him like two brazen plates, or two torches ever flaming, he laid his hand upon a mighty club of iron which lay by him, and came with great lightness to meet St. George; but when he approached his presence, thinking him to be a knight of but small valour and fortitude, he threw away his iron bat, and came towards the champion, intending with his fists to buffet and beat out his brains; but the courage of the English champion so exceeded, that he forgot the extremity of hunger, and like a courageous knight raised himself in his stirrups, otherwise he could not reach his head, and gave him such a blow upon his forehead with his falchion, that he cut his head half in sunder, and his brains in great abundance ran down his deformed body, so that amazed he fell to the ground, and presently died: his fall seemed to make the ground to shake, as though a stony tower had been overturned; for as he lay upon the earth he

seemed to be a great oak blown up by the roots with a tempestuous whirlwind.

At that instant the rest of the champions came to that place, with as much joy at that present, as before they were sad and sorrowful.

And when St. Denis, with the other knights, saw the greatness of the giant, and the deformity of his body, they advanced his valour beyond imagination; but after some few speeches passed, St. George desired the rest of the champions to go and see what store of victuals the giant had prepared for him.

Whereupon they concluded, and so generally entered the giant's house, which was cut out of hard stone, and wrought out of a rock: therein they found a very large copper cauldron standing upon a trevet of steel, the feet and supporters thereof were as big as great iron pillars; under the same burned a huge flaming fire, that it sparkled like the fiery furnace in burning Acheron.

Within the cauldron were boiling the flesh of two fat bullocks, prepared only for the giant's dinner.

The sight of this ensuing banquet gave them such comfort, that every one fell to work, hoping for their travail to eat part of the meat; one turned the beef in the cauldron, another increased the fire, and others pulled out the coals, so that there was not any idle, in hope of the benefit to come.

The hunger they had, and their desire to eat, caused them to fall to their meat before it was half ready, as though that it had been over-sodden; the two knights of Wales and Ireland, not intending to dine without bread and drink, searched in a secret hollow cave, wherein they found two great loaves of bread, as big in compass as the circle of a well, and two great flagons full of as good wine as ever they tasted, which with great joy and pleasure they brought from the cave, to the exceeding contentment of the other champions. And after they had thus gratified their hunger, St. George requested the champions to take horse, and mounted himself upon his palfrey; they travelled from thence through a narrow path, which seemed to be used by the giant, and so with great delight they travelled all the rest that day, till night closed in the beauty of the heavens; which time they had got to the top of a high mountain

rom whence, a little before night, they did discover marvellous great plains, which were inhabited with fair cities and towns, at which sight these Christian champions received great contentment and joy : and so without any staying they made haste onward on their journey, till such time as they came to a low valley lying betwixt two running rivers, where, in the midst of the way, they found an image of fine crystal, the picture and lively form of a beautiful virgin, which seemed to be wrought by the hands of some most excellent workman, all bespotted with blood.

And it appeared by the wounds that were cunningly formed in the same picture, that it was the image of some lady that had suffered torments, as well with terrible cutting of irons, as cruel whippings ; the lady's legs and arms did seem as though they had been wrung with cords, and about the neck as though she had been forcibly strangled with a napkin. The crystal picture lay upon a rich adorned bed of black cloths, under an arbour of purple roses ; by the curious fair-formed image sat a goodly aged man, in a chair of cypress-wood ; his attire was after the manner of the Arcadian shepherds, not curious but comely, yet of a black and sable colour, as a sure sign of some deadly discontentment ; his hair hung down below his shoulders, like untwisted silk, in whiteness like down of thistles ; his beard overgrown, dangling down as it were frozen icicles upon a hawthorn tree ; his face wrinkled and over-worn with age, and his eyes almost blind, bewailing the griefs and sorrows of his heart.

Which strange and woful spectacle, when the Christian champions earnestly beheld, they could not by any manner of means refrain from the shedding some few tears, in seeing before them the picture of a woman of such excellent beauty, which had been oppressed with cruelty ; but the pitiful English knight had the greatest compassion when he beheld the counterfeit of this tormented creature ; who taking truce with his sorrowful heart, he courteously desired the old father, sitting by this woful spectacle, to tell the cause of his sorrow, and the discourse of that lady's passed fortunes, for whose sake he seemed to spend his days in that solitary order : to whom the old man, with a number of sighs, thus kindly replied :

" Brave knights, to tell the story of my bitter woes, and

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

my endless sorrows, will constrain a spring of
ple from the conduits of my aged eyes, and make
on of my heart rive in twain, in remembering of
served miseries; but now Fortune, I see, hath smiled
e, in sending you hither to work just revenge for the
an murder of my daughter, whose perfect image lieth
carved in fine crystal, as the continual object of my
ef; and because you shall understand the true discourse
her timeless tragedy, I have written it down in a paper
book, which my sorrowful tongue is not able to reveal."

And thereupon he pulled from his bosom a golden-covered
book, with silver clasps, and requested St. George to read it
to the rest of the knights, to which he willingly conde-
scended; so sitting down amongst the other champions upon
the green grass, he opened the book, and read over the con-
tents, which contained these sorrowful words following.

CHAP. VI.

"In former times, whilst fortune smiled upon me, I was
wealthy shepherd, dwelling in this unhappy country,
only held in great estimation for my wealth, but also
two fair daughters, which nature had made most excel-
lent in beauty, in whom I took such exceeding joy and
that I accounted them my chiefest happiness; but
the end, that which I thought should most content
the occasion of these my endless sorrows.

"My two daughters were endowed with wondrous
and accompanied with no less modesty; the
reason whereof there repaired to my shames
virtues was much blazed in many parts of
divers strange and worthy knights, with great
with my daughters; but above them
named Leoger, a knight of a Black C
remaineth), being in distance from
leagues, in an island encompassed w

"This Leoger, I say, was so en-
of my daughters, that he desired
them in marriage; when I, little
cruelty that after followed, by
honour that might redound

orthy knight, as I thought, and of much fortitude, I quickly fulfilled his desire, and granted to him my eldest daughter in marriage; where, after Hymen's holy rites were solemnized in great pomp and state, she was conducted, in company of her new-wedded lord, to the Black Castle, more like a princess in state, than a shepherd's daughter of such low degree.

"But still I retained in my company the youngest, being of far more beauty than her eldest sister; of which this traitorous and unnatural knight was informed, and her surpassing beauty so excelled, that in a small time he forgot his new-married wife and sweet companion, and wholly gave himself over to my other daughter's love, without consideration that he had married her sister. So this inordinate and lustful love kindled and increased in him every day more and more; and he was so troubled with this new desire, that he daily devised with himself by what means he might obtain her, and keep her in despite of all the world. In the end he used this policy and deceit to get her home into his castle: when the time grew on, that my eldest daughter his wife should be delivered, he came in great pomp, with a stately train of followers, to my cottage, and certified me that his wife was delivered of a goodly boy, and thereupon requested me, with very fair and loving words, that I would let my daughter go unto her sister, to give her that contentment which she desired, for that she did love her more dearly than her own soul. Thus his crafty and subtle persuasions so much prevailed, that I could not frame an excuse to the contrary, but must needs consent to his demands; so straightway when he had in his power that which his soul so much desired, he presently departed, giving me to understand that he would carry her to his wife, for whose sight she had so much desired, and at whose coming she would receive so much joy and contentment: her sudden departure bred such sorrows in my heart (being the only stay and comfort of my declining age) that the fountains of my eyes rained down a shower of salt tears upon my aged breast, so dear is the love of a father unto his child; but to be short, when this lustful-minded caitiff, with his pompous train, came in sight of his castle, he commanded his followers to ride forwards, that with my daughter he might have private conference. And entering alone

with her into the most private part of a thick wood, he there began to open his lustful thoughts unto her, perswading her to submit to his wicked desires; but when his fair words and enticing speeches could not prevail, he whipped her tender body, after stripping her to the waist, with the reins of his bridle, in such a cruel manner, that she fainted away. After she had a little recovered herself, he thus expostulated with her:

“Hadst not thou better consent to my pleasure, than thus suffer thyself to be tormented? Dost thou think it better to endure this torment, than to live a most loving, sweet, and contented life?”

“And therewith his anger so increased, that he stared on her face with his accursed eyes, fixed in such sort that he could not withdraw them back. Which being perceived by this distressed virgin, as one far more desirous of death than of life, with a furious voice she said, ‘Oh traitor, thou wicked monster, thou utter enemy to all humanity, thou shameless creature, more cruel than the lion in the deserts of Hyrcania; thou stain of knighthood, and the bloodiest wretch that ever nature framed in this world! wherein dost thou contemplate thus thyself? Thou fleshly butcher, thou unmerciful tiger, thou lecherous hog, and dishonour of thy progeny! make an end, I say, of these my torments, for now it is too late to repent thee; gore my unspotted breast with thy bloody weapon, and send my soul into the bosom of Diana, whom I behold sitting in her celestial palace, accompanied with numberless troops of vestal virgins, ready to entertain my bleeding ghost into her pleasant mansion.’

“This merciless knight seeing the steadfastness that she had in the defence of her honour, with a cruel and infernal heart took a silken scarf which the damsel had girded at her waist, and with a brutal anger doubled it about her neck, and pinched it so strait that her soul departed from her terrestrial body. O you valiant knights, that by your prowess come to the reading of this dismal tragedy, and come to the hearing these bloody lines contained in this golden book, consider the great constancy and chastity of this unfortunate maiden, and let the grief thereof move you to take vengeance of this cruelty shewed without any desert.

“So when the infernal knight saw that she was dead, he took his horse and rode after his fellows, and in a

time he overtook them, and looked with so furious and ireful a countenance, that there was none durst be so hardy to ask him where my daughter was ; but only one of his squires that bore me great affection for the kindness and courtesy I offered to him at his lady's and my daughter's nuptials, who having a suspicion, by the great alteration that appeared in his master, and being very desirous to know what was become of the damsel, because he came alone without bringing the damsel with him, neither could he have any sight of her, he then presently withdrew himself back, and followed the footings of the horse, and ceased not until he came to the place where this cruelty was wrought ; whereat he found the maiden dead : at the view whereof he remained almost beside himself, in such sort, that he had well near fallen to the ground. The sorrowful squire remained thus a good while before he could speak ; but at last, when he came again to himself, he began with a dolorous complaint to cry out against Fortune, because she had suffered so great cruelty to be committed upon this damsel. And making this sorrowful lamentation, he unloosed her from the tree, and laid her upon part of her apparel which he found lying by, all besmeared in blood. He afterward cut down branches from the trees, and gathered grass from the ground to cover the body, and left it lying so, that it seemed to be a mountain of green grass, or a thicket of springing trees, and then determined with himself, in the best manner that he could, to dissemble the knowledge of the bloody fact. So he took his horse and rode the next way towards the castle, in which he rode so fast, that he overtook the knight and his company at the entering of the gates, whereat the lustful tyrant alighted, and without speaking to any person entered into his closet ; by reason whereof this kind and courteous squire had time to declare all things he had seen to the new-married lady, and the dolorous end of her sister.

“ This sudden and unlooked for sorrow, mixed with anger and wrath, was such in the lady, that she caused the squire not to depart from the castle until such time as more occasion served, and to keep all things in secret that he had seen : she herself remained very sorrowful, making great lamentation to herself in secret, as if she would not be perceived, yet with a soft voice she said :

“ ‘ Oh unfortunate lady, born in a sorrowful hour, when some blazing and unlucky comet reigned ! Oh unhappy Destinies, that made me wife unto so cruel a knight, whose foul misdeeds have made the very elements to blush ! but yet I know that Fortune will not be so far unkind, but that she will procure a strange revenge upon his purple stained soul. Oh you immortal powers ! revenge me on this wicked homicide : if not, I swear that I will with mine own hands, put in practice such an enterprise, and so stain my unspotted heart with wilful murder, that all the Fates above, and all the bright celestial planets, shall sit, and look from their immortal palaces, and tremble at the terror of my hate.’ ”

“ This being said, she took in her hand a dagger of the knight's, and in her arms her young son, being but of the age of forty days, saying, ‘ Now do I wish so much evil unto the world, that I will not leave a son of so wicked a father alive ; for I will wash my hands in their accursed bloods, were they in number as many as king Priam's children.’ ”

“ And entering the chamber where the knight her husband was, and finding him tumbling upon his bed from one side to the other, without taking any rest, but in his fury rending and tearing the silken ornaments ; where, with a sorrowful, weeping, and terrible voice, she called him traitor, and, like a fierce tigress, with the dagger that she brought in her hand, before his face she cut the throat of the innocent babe, and threw it to him on the bed, and therewithal said, ‘ Take there, thou traitor, the fruit that thy wicked seed created in my body,’ and then she threw the dagger at him also in hope for to have killed him ; but fortune would not that it should take effect, for it struck against the tester of the bed, and rebounded back unto her hands, which, when the lady saw that it nothing prevailed, she turned upon herself her outrageous fury : so taking the bloody dagger, she thrust it into her heart in such sort, that it parted in two pieces, and she fell down dead betwixt his arms that was the occasion of all this bloody cruelty. The great sorrow hereat, that this false and unhappy knight received, was so strange, that he knew not what counsel to take : but thinking upon a severe vengeance that might succeed these cruel acts, he straightway devised that the body of the lady should be secretly buried ; which being done by himself the saddest time of the night, in a solitary garden unde

castle wall, he heard a hollow voice breathe from the deep vaults of the earth this manner of speech following :

“ ‘ For the bloody fact which thou so lately hast committed, thy life draws near to a shameful end ; and thy castle, with all thy treasure therein, shall be destroyed, or fall into the hands of him whose daughter thou hast so cruelly murdered.’ ”

“ Upon this, he determined to use a secret policy, which was, to set watch and ward in every passage near unto his castle, and to arrest all such travellers as by adventure landed upon that island, not suffering them to pass until such time as they had promised by oath to aid and assist him even unto death, against all his enemies. In the mean time the aforementioned squire, which had seen and heard all the tragical dealings that have been here declared, in the best wise he could, returned again unto my cottage, and told me all that you have heard, which was unto me very sorrowful and heavy news. Judge here then, gentle knights, and ye beholders of this woful tragedy, what sorrow I, unfortunate wretch, sustained, and what anguish I received, for at the hearing thereof I fell into a senseless swoon, and being come again to myself, I besmeared my milk-white hairs in dust, that before were as clean as tried silver ; and with my tears, being the true signs of sorrow, I bathed the bosom of my mother earth, and my sighs passed with such abundance from my tormented heart, that they stayed the passage of my speech, and my tongue could not reveal the grief that my woful thoughts conceived. In this dumb silence and sorrow of mind I remained three days and three nights, numbering my silent passions with the minutes of the day, and my nightly griefs with the stars when frosty-bearded Winter has clad the elements with sparkling diamonds ; but at last, when my amazed griefs were something abated, my eyes (almost blind with weeping) requiring some sleep, thereby to mitigate the sorrows of my heart, I made my repair into a certain meadow adjoining near unto my cottage, where amongst the green springing downs I purposed to take some rest, and to lock up the closets of my fearful eyes with golden slumber, thinking it to be the greatest content my sobbing heart required : but before I could settle my senses to a quiet sleep, I was constrained to breathe *this woful lamentation from my oppressed soul :*

" 'Oh unhappy chance!' quoth I; 'Oh cruel and most spiteful Fortune! why didst thou not make me lose this bitter and sorrowful life in my childhood? Or why didst thou not permit and suffer me to be strangled in my mother's womb, or to have perished in my cradle or at my nurse's pap? Then had my heart never felt this sorrow, my ears heard the murder of my children, nor mine eyes had ever wept so many helpless tears.'

" At the end of this sorrowful lamentation, what for grief and what for want of natural rest, my eyes closed together and my senses fell into a heavy sleep.

" But as I lay slumbering in the green meadows, I dreamed that there was a great and fierce wild man, which stood before me with a sharp falchion in his hand, making as though he would kill me; whereat methought I was so frightened, that I gave many terrible shrieks, calling for succour to the empty air. Then methought there appeared before my face a company of courteous knights, which said unto me—Fear not, old man, for we be come from thy daughter to aid and succour thee: but yet for all this the wild man vanished not away, but struck with his falchion upon my breast, whereat it seemed to open, and then the wild Centaur put his hand into the gaping wound, and pulled out my bleeding heart; whereat, the same instant, methought that one of the knights likewise laid hold upon my heart, and they strove together with much contention. who should pull it from the other's hands; but in the end each of them remained with a piece in his hand, and my heart parted in two.

" Then the piece which remained in the wild man's keeping turned into a hard stone, and the piece which remained in the power of the knight converted into red blood, and so they vanished away. Then straight after this, there appeared before mine eyes the image of my murdered daughter, in the self-same manner and form as you behold her portrayed: who, with a naked body besmeared in blood, reported unto me the true discourse of her unhappy fortunes, and told me what place and where her body lay in the woods, dishonoured for want of burial: also desiring me not *of myself* to attempt the revenge, for it was impossible; but *to entomb* her corpse by her mother, and cause the picture *of her body* to be most lively portrayed and wrought of fine

crystal, in the same manner that I found it in the woods and after erect it near unto a common passage, where adventurous knights do usually travel; and assuring me that thither would come some certain Christian champions that should revenge this injury and inhuman murder. Which words being finished, methought she vanished away with a grievous and heavy groan, leaving behind her certain drops of blood sprinkled upon the grass: whereat, with great perplexity and sorrow, I awaked out of my dream, bearing it in my grieved mind, not telling it to one, not so much as to the vast air, but with all expedition performed her bleeding soul's request. Where ever since, most courteous and noble knights, I have here lamented her untimely death and my unhappy fortune, spending the time in writing her doleful tragedy in blood-red lines, which I see with great grief you have read in this book of gold. Therefore, most curious knights, if ever honour encouraged you to fight in noble adventures, I now most earnestly entreat you, with your magnanimous fortitudes, to assist me to take revenge for that great cruelty that hath been used against my unfortunate daughter."

At the reading of this sorrowful history, St. George with the other champions shed many tears, wherewith there did increase in them a farther desire of revenge; and being moved with great compassion, they protested by their promises made to the honour of knighthood, to persevere speedily on their vowed revenge and determined purpose: so sealing up a promise to their plighted oaths, protesting that sooner should the lives of all the famous Romans be raised from death, from the time of Romulus to Cæsar, and all the rest unto this time, than they be persuaded to return from their promises, and never to travel back into Christendom till they had performed their vows; and thus burning with desire to see the end of this sorrowful adventure, St. George clasped up the bloody-written book, and gave it again to the shepherd; and so they proceeded forward towards the island where the knight of the Black Castle had his residence guided only by the direction of the old man, whose age limbs seemed so lusty in travelling, that it prognosticated a lucky event: in which journey we will leave the champion for a time, with the wonderful provision that the knight of the Black Castle made in his defence, the success w

will be the strangest that ever was reported, and return and speak of St. George's three sons in the pursuit of their father; where we left them (as you heard before) travelling from the confines of Barbary, where they redeemed the Norman lady from the tawny Moors.

CHAP. VII.

MANY and dangerous were the adventures of the three young princes in the pursuit of their father St. George, and many were the countries, islands, and princes' courts that they searched to obtain a wished sight of his martial countenance, but all to small purpose; for fortune neither cast them happily upon that coast where he and the famous champions had their residence, nor luckily sounded in their ears the place of their arrival. In which pursuit I omit and pass over many noble adventures that these three princes achieved, as well upon the raging ocean as upon the firm land, and only discourse upon an accident that happened to them in an island bordered upon the confines of Armenia, near unto the island where the knight of the Black Castle remained, as you heard in the last chapter; upon which coast after they were arrived, they travelled in a broad and straight path, until such time as they came to a very fair and delectable forest, whenas sundry creeping birds had gathered themselves together, to refresh and shroud themselves from the parching heat of the golden sun, filling the air with the pleasures of their shrill-tuned notes. In this forest they travelled almost two hours, and then they went up to the top of a small mountain which was at hand, from the which they discovered very fair and well-towered towns, princely palaces, very sumptuous to behold; likewise they discovered from the hill a fair fountain wrought all of marble like unto a pillar, out of which did proceed four spouts running with water, which fell into a great cistern, and coming to it, they washed their hands, refreshed their faces, and so departed.

After they had looked round about them on every side, and towards their right hand, they espied, amongst a company of green trees, a small tent of black cloth, towards which these young princes directed their courses with an

OF CHRISTENDO

easy pace ; but when they had entered nobody therein, they remained silent : they could hear any stirring, but they heard any thing, but only they found little feet upon the sand, which caused them to desire to know whose footsteps they seemed to be some lady's or damsel's : they followed them, and the more the ladies seemed to haste : so long the trace, that at the end they approached, whereat they found scattered about yellow hair, which seemed like threads : going to gather them up, they perceived they were wet with drops of blood, whereby they that in great anger they were pulled from : likewise they saw in divers places how they were with spots of crimson blood : then with the same they had before, they went up to the top of the mountain, and having lost the footsteps, they began again by gathering up the hair ; where they travelled far upon the mountain, but towards the top they heard a grievous complaint, which was the voice of a woman in great distress, and the knights did understand were these :

“ O Love ! now shalt thou no more retain thy longer dominion over me ; for Death, I will cut my thread of life, and finish these my misadventures. How often have I asked revenge of Fortune against that wicked wretch, the causer of my banishment, but yet she has refused my request : how oft have I made my sad complaint, yet have the fatal Furies stopped the mournful cries.” And with this she heaved a sorrowful sigh ; which being done, the knights turned their eyes to the place where they heard this complaint, and discovered in the trees a lady who was endued with singular beauty, so excellent that it almost deprived them : she captivated their senses in the snares of love, as yet they never lost. She had her hair which hung diffusedly down her come, and the violence she used against herself,

...ed with blood,
her nails upon
er damsel, which
she was clad in
es of the fields, and
oon in a clear winter
is delectable sight, the
discover themselves, but
es which grew into
of this sad accident; where,
ce, they heard her thus to

...ter:
she, "the unhappy figure of
wounded my heart, and left me
est cruelty that ever knight of
hath it been possible that I have
thee, the child of such a father
of my liberty! O you sovereign
y establish in my mind the remem-
y adulterous father! O girl! born
do I desire the guiders of thy for-
ing beauty may have such force and
shining beams thereof may take re-
honour of thy mother. Give ear, dear
thy dying mother, thou that art born in
y generation, by the loss of my virginity,
thee upon my blessing, even at my hon-
ear thee by the bond of nature, never
to be enjoyed by any one, until thy
and be offered up in sacrifice unto my
hat to appease the fury of my discor-
ver part of my former honour."
such-like words spake the afflicted
il amazement of the three young kni-
ded not to discover themselves, but
for they conjectured that her
aduction of some strange accident.
carely give unto her dying mo-
the which she pulled from her
grieved queen subscribed
that was the causer of her b

an end
speak
"I
her
as
w
u
b

an end of her writing, they heard her, with a dying breath, speak unto her daughter these sorrowful words following:

"Come, daughter," quoth she, "behold thy mother at her latest gasp, and imprint my dying request in thy heart, as in a table of brass, that it never may be forgotten; time will not give longer respite, that with words I may shew unto thee my deep affections, for I feel my death approaching, and the fatal sisters ready to cut my thread of life asunder between the edges of their shears, insomuch that I, most miserable creature, do feel my soul trembling in my flesh, and my heart quivering at this my last and fatal hour; but one thing, my sweet and tender child, do I desire of thee before I die, which is, that thou wouldest procure that this letter may be given to that cruel knight, thy disloyal father, giving him to understand of this my troublesome death, the occasion whereof was his unreasonable cruelty."

And making an end of saying this, the miserable queen fell down, not having any more strength to sit up, but let the letter fall out of her hand; the which her sorrowful daughter presently took up, and falling upon her mother's breast, she replied in this sorrowful manner:

"O, my sweet mother, tell me not that you will die, for it adds a torment more grievous unto my soul than the punishment which Danaus's daughters feel in hell; I had rather be torn in pieces by the fury of some merciless monster, or to have my heart parted in twain by the hands of him that is my greatest enemy, than to remain without your company. Sweet mother, let these my youthful years and this green budding beauty encourage you still to revive, and not to leave me comfortless, like an exile in the world; but if the gloomy Fates do triumph in your death, and abridge your breathing trunk of life, and your soul must needs go wander in the Elysian shades, with Trusa's shadow, and with Dido's ghost; here I protest, by the great and tender love I bear you, and by the due obedience I owe unto your age, either to deliver this your letter into the hand of my unkind father, or with these my rueful fingers to rend my heart in sunder; and before I will forget my vow, the silver-streamed Tigris shall forsake her course, the sea her tides, and the glittering queen of night her usual changes, **neither shall any forgetfulness be an occasion to withdraw my mind from performing your dying request**

Then this weak queen, whose power and strength were wholly decayed, and her hour of death grew near at hand, with a feeble voice, she said, "O you sacred and immortal gods! and all you bright celestial powers of happiness, into your divine bosoms now do I commend my dying soul, asking no other revengement against the causer of my death, but that he may die like me for the want of love."

After this, the dying queen never spake a word more, for at that instant the cruel Destinies gave an end unto her life; but when Rosana perceived her to be dead, and she left to the world devoid of comfort, she began to tear the golden trammels from her head, and most furiously to beat her white ivory breast, filling the empty air with clamours of her moans, making the skies like an echo to resound her lamentations, and at last taking her mother's letter into her hands, washing it with floods of tears, and putting it next unto her naked breast, she said, "Here lie thou, near adjoining to my bleeding heart, never to be removed until I have performed my dying mother's testament. Oh works, and the last work of those her dying hands, here do I swear by the honour of true virgins, not to part it from my grieved bosom, until such time as love has rent the disloyal heart of my unkind father;" and speaking this, she kissed it a thousand times, breathing forth millions of sighs, and so with a blushing countenance, as red as Aurora's glittering beams, she rose, and said to herself, "What is this, Rosana? Dost thou think to recall thy mother's life, with ceremonious complaints, and not perform that which by her was commanded thee? Arise, arise, I say, gather unto thyself strength and courage, and wander up and down the world, till thou hast found thy disloyal father, as thy true heart hath promised to do."

These words were no sooner finished, but St. George's sons, like men whose hearts were almost overcome with grief, came from the pine trees, and discovered themselves to the damsel, and courteously requested her to discourse the story of all her past miseries, and as they were true Christian knights they promised her, if it lay in their power, to release her sorrows, and to give end unto her *miseries*. Rosana, when she beheld these courteous and *well-demeanoured* knights, which in her conceit carried *relenting* minds, and considering how kindly they dealt

be partners in her griefs, she stood not upon curious terms, nor upon excellencies, but most willingly condescended to their requests ; so when they had prepared their ears to entertain her sad and sorrowful discourse, with a sober countenance she began in this manner :

" Lately I was," quoth she, " whilst fortune smiled on me, the only child and daughter of this lifeless queen, that you behold here lying dead ; and she, before my birth, whilst fortune granted her prosperity, was the maiden queen of a country called Armenia, adjoining near unto this unhappy island ; who in her young years, when her beauty began to flourish, and her high renown to mount upon the wings of Fame, she was so entrapped with the golden bait of blind Cupid, and so entangled with the love of a disloyal knight, called the Knight of the Black Castle ; who after he had flourished in the spoil of her virginity, and had left his fruitful seed springing in her womb, grew weary of her love, and most discourteously left her as a shame unto her country, and a stain unto her kindred, and after gave himself to such lustful and lascivious manner of life, that he unlawfully married a shepherd's daughter in a foreign land, and likewise ravished her own sister, and after committed her to a most inhuman slaughter in a desert wood. This being done, he fortified himself in his Black Castle, and only consorted with a cunning necromancer, whose skill in magic is now grown so excellent, that all the knights in the world can never conquer the castle, where ever since he hath remained in despite of the whole earth.

" But now speak I of the tragical story of my unhappy mother. Whenas I, her unfortunate babe, began first to struggle in her womb, wherein I wish I had been strangled, she heard news of her knight's ill demeanour, and how he had given himself to the spoil of virginity, and had for ever left her love, never intending to return again ; the grief whereof so troubled her mind, that she could not in any wise dissemble it ; and so upon a time, being amongst her ladies, calling to remembrance her spotted virginity, and the seed of dishonour placed in her womb, she fell into a wonderful and strange trance, as though she had been oppressed with sudden death ; which when her ladies and damsels beheld, they presently determined to unbrace her rich ornaments, and to carry her unto her bed, but as

made signs with her hands that they should depart and leave her alone, whose commandment was straightways obeyed, not without great sorrow of them all, for their loves were dear unto her. This afflicted queen, when she saw that she was alone, began to exclaim against her fortune, reviling the Fates with bitter exclamations.

“ ‘ O unconstant queen of chance,’ said she, ‘ thou that hast warped such strange webs in my kingdom ; thou that gavest my honour to that tyrant’s lust, which without all remorse hath left me comfortless, it is thou that didst constrain me to set my life to sale, and to sell my honour as it were with the cryer, compelling me to do that which hath spotted my princely estate, and stained my bright honour with black infamy. Woe is me for virginity ! that which my parents gave me charge to have respect unto—but I have carelessly kept it, and smally regarded it : I will therefore chastise my body, for thus forgetting of myself, and be so revenged for the little regard that I have made of my honour, that it shall be an example to all noble ladies, and princes of high estate in the whole world. Oh miserable queen ! oh fond and unhappy lady ! thy speeches be too foolish ; for although thy desperate hand should pull out thy despised heart from thy bleeding breast, yet can it not make satisfaction for thy dishonour. O you clouds, why do you not cast some fiery thunderbolt down upon my head ! Or why doth not the earth gape and swallow my infamous body ! Oh false and deceitful lord, I would thy loving and amorous words had never been spoken, nor thy quick-sighted eyes ever gazed upon my beauty ! then had I flourished still with glory and renown, and lived a happy virgin of chaste Diana’s train.’ ”

“ With these and other like lamentations this grieved queen passed away the time from day to day, till she grew big with child. At which she received double pain, for that it was impossible to cover or hide it : and seeing herself in this case, like a woman hated and abhorred, she determined to discover herself publicly unto her subjects, and deliver her body unto them to be sacrificed unto their gods ; and with this determination one day she caused certain of *her nobles* to be sent for, who straightway came, according to *her commandment* ; but when she perceived her lords, *knights*, and gentlemen of honour were come thither before

her, she covered herself with a rich robe, and sat up in her bed in her private chamber, being so pale and lean, that all they that saw her had great compassion upon her sorrow. Being all set round about her bed, and keeping silence, she revealed to them the cause of her grief in this manner:

“ ‘ My lords,’ quoth she, ‘ I shame to entitle myself your queen and sovereign, in that I have defamed the honour of my country, and little regarded the welfare of my commonwealth: my glittering crown methinks is shaded with a cloud of black disgrace, and my princely attire converted into unchaste habiliments, in which I have both lost the liberty of my heart, and withal my wonted joy, and now am constrained to endure perpetual pain, and an ever-pining death; for I have lost my honour, and reaped nothing but shame and infamy. To conclude, I have foregone the liberty of a queen, and sold myself to a slavish sin. Only mine own is the fault, and mine own shall be the punishment. Therefore, without making any excuse, I here surrender up my body unto your powers, that you may, as an evil queen, sacrifice me unto our gods, for now, my lords, you shall understand that I am dishonoured by the Knight of the Black Castle; he it is that hath bereaved me of my honour, but with my consent I must needs confess, and left me, for a testimony of this my evil deed, big with child, by which my virgin’s glory is converted to a monstrous scandal.’ And with this she made an end of her lamentable speech.

“ But when those, earls, lords, and honourable personages that were present, had understood all that the queen had said unto them, like men greatly amazed, they changed their colours, in sign of anger, looking one upon another, without speaking any words, but printing in their hearts the fault done by their queen, to the great disgrace of their country; they, without any farther consideration, deprived her from all princely royalty, both of crown and dignity, and pronounced her perpetual banishment from Armenia, like subjects not to be governed by such a defamed princess.

“ So at the time appointed, like a woman forlorn and hated of all companies, she stored herself with sufficient treasure, and betook herself to her appointed banishment. After whose departure, the Armenians elected themselves another *prince*, and left their lustful queen wandering in unknown

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, when instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shaded with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fair dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phoebus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, they would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me that strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermillion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life, where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, tending the time until I find some courteous knight that will conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for

OF CHRISTENDOM.

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, her eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George and his sons to express the like sorrow; where after they fell a few tears from their eyes, and had taken their time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and vowed never to depart from her company till they had conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers, and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body in, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour after, with the point of their daggers, they engraven an epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree :

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bend,
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered the grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their way towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them for their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, as he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as good souldiers, for the spoil and murder of those three virgins whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his hirelings hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein he failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consulted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms

should work wonders in his castle: which magical accomplishments we will pass over till a more convenient time, because I purpose to explain the history in good order to the reader.

First, speak we of St. George, with the other Christian knights, that came in revenge of the shepherd and his unfortunate daughter, who with good success arrived upon the shore of the island where this wicked Leoger and the magician had fortified their Black Castle, in which country the champions, like the invincible followers of Mars, fearing no danger, nor the frowns of unconstant Fortune, betook themselves to the readiest way towards the castle; in which journey they were almost ravished with the pleasure of the island: for entering into a narrow and straight lane, garnished on both sides with trees of divers sorts, they heard how the summer birds recorded their pleasant melodies, and made their sweet and accustomed songs without fear of any man to molest them. In which row of pleasant trees, that delighted them on both sides, there wanted not the green laurel so much esteemed among learned scholars; nor the sweet myrtle tree, loved by ladies; nor the high cypress, so much regarded of lovers; nor the stately pine, which for his flourishing height is called the prince of trees: whereby they judged it to be rather an habitation for gods and goddesses than a terrestrial country, for that the golden sun with his glittering beams did pass through those green and pleasant trees without any hindrance of black clouds, for the skies were clear as tried silver: likewise the western wind did softly shake the shivering leaves, whereby it made as sweet a harmony as if they had been celestial cherubims: a thousand little streamed brooks ran upon the enamelled ground, making sundry fine works by their crooked turnings; and joining one water with another, with a very gentle meeting, made such silver music, that the champions with the pleasure thereof were almost ravished, and smally regarded whether their horses went right or no; and travelling in this sort, they rode forward till they came into a marvellous great and wide meadow, being of such exceeding fairness, that I am not able with a pen to paint out the excellency thereof; whereas were feeding both wild and tame harts, adorned with great and cragged horns: likewise the furious wild boar, the fierce lion, and the simple lamb

were altogether feeding with so great friendship, as on the contrary by nature they were enemies.

Whereat the noble champions were almost overcome in their own conceits, and amazed in their imaginations, to see so strange love, clean contrary to nature, and that there was no difference betwixt the love of wild beasts and tame. In this manner they travelled along, till on a sudden they arrived before the buildings of the Black Castle. Below, under the castle, there was an arch with a gate, which seemed to be of diamonds, and was compassed about with a moat or ditch, and was almost two hundred paces broad, and every gate had his drawbridge, all made of red boards, which seemed as though they had been bathed all in blood. After this, the champions rode to the other side of this goodly castle, wondering at the curious and sumptuous workmanship, where they espied a pillar of beautiful jasper stone, all wrought full of precious stones of strange works, which pillar was of great value, and was garnished with chains of gold, that were made fast unto it by magic art; at which pillar likewise hung a very costly silver trumpet, with certain letters carved about the same, which contained these words following:

If any dare attempt this place to see,
By sounding this, the gate shall open'd be;
A trumpet here enchain'd by magic art,
To daunt with fear the proudest champion's heart:
Look thou for blows that enterest in this gate,
Return in time, repentance comes too late.

Which when St. George beheld, and had understood the meaning of those mystical letters, without any more tarrying, he set the silver trumpet to his mouth, and sounded such a vehement blast, that it seemed to echo in the foundation of the castle; whereat the principal gate presently opened, and the draw-bridge was let down, without the help of any visible hand, which made the champions wonder, and to stand amazed at this strange accident; but yet, intending not to return like cowards daunted with a puff of wind, they alighted from their warlike steeds, and delivered them into the old shepherd's hands, to be fed upon the fragrant and green grass, till they had performed the adven-

ture of the castle, which they vowed either to accomplish or never to return : so locking down their beavers, and drawing forth their keen-edged falchions, they entered the gates, and being safe within, the champions looked about them to see if they could espy any body, but they saw nothing but a pair of winding stairs, whereat they descended. They had not gone many steps, but therein was so great a darkness, that scarce they could see any light, so that it rather seemed the similitude of hell, than any other worldly place ; yet, groping by the walls, they kept there going down those narrow and turning stairs, which were very dark, and at such length, that they thought they descended into the middle of the earth.

They spent a great time in descending those stairs, but in the end they came into a very fair and large court, compassed with iron gates like unto a prison, or a place provided to keep untamed lions, wherein casting their eyes up to the top of the castle, they beheld the wicked knight walking with the necromancer upon a large gallery, supported with great pillars of brass ; likewise there were attending upon them seven giants, clothed in mighty iron coats, holding in their hands bats of steel : to whom the bold and venturous champion of England spake with an undaunted courage and loud voice in this manner, saying : " Come down, thou wicked knight, thou spoil of virginity, thou that art environed with these monstrous giants, these wondering works of nature. Come down, I say, from thy brazen gallery, and take to thee thy armour. Thou that hast a heart to commit a virgin's rape, for whose revenge we come ; now likewise have a courage in thy defence, for we vow never to depart out of thy castle till we have confounded thee, or be by thy force discomfited."

At which words he held his peace, expecting an answer ; whereat the wicked knight, when he heard St. George, began to fret and fume like a starved lion, famished with hunger, even so raged Leoger the knight of the Black Castle, threatening forth fury from his sparkling eyes, and in this vile manner re-answered the noble champion of England.

" Proud knight," quoth he, " or peasant, whatsoever thou art, I pass not the smallest hair of my head, for thy upbraiding me with thy unruly tongue. I will return thy unruly speeches on thyself, for the pavements of my cas-

shall be sprinkled with thy cursed blood, and the bones of those thy unhappy followers shall be buried in the sinks of my channels. If thou hadst brought the army of Cæsar, that made all lands to tremble where he came, yet were they but as a blast of wind unto my force. Seest thou not my giants, which stand like oaks upon our brazen gallery? they at my command shall take you from the places where you stand, and throw you over the walls of this my castle, in such sort, that they shall make you flee into the air more than ten falchions high. And for that thou hast upbraided me with the disgrace done unto a virgin, I tell thee, if I had thy mother here, of whom thou tookest first the air of life, my hand should split her womb, that thou mightest see the bed of thy conception, as Nero did in Rome: or if thy wife and children were here present before thy face, I would abridge their lives, that thy accursed eyes might be witnesses of their bloody murders: so much wrath and hate rageth in my heart, that all the blood in thy body cannot wash it thence."

At which words the giants, whom he hired to defend him from his foes, came unto him very strongly armed, with weapons in their hands, and requested him to be quiet, and to abate his so incensed anger, and they would fetch unto his presence all those braving knights that were the occasion of this his disquietness and anger; and so, without tarrying for an answer, they departed down to the court, and left the knight of the castle with the magician standing still upon the gallery to behold the following encounters. But when the giants approached the champions' presence, and saw them so well proportioned and furnished, knights of so gallant statures, they flourished about their knotty clubs, and purposed not to spend the time in words but in blows.

Then one of the fiercest and cruellest giants of them all (which was called Brandamond) seeing St. George to be forwardest in the enterprise, and judging him to be the knight that had so braved his lord, he began with a stern countenance to speak unto him in this manner:

"Art thou that bold knight," said the giant, "that with thy witless words hath so angered the mighty Leoger, the lord of this castle? If thou be, I advise thee by submission to seek to appease his furious wrath before revenge be taken upon thy person. Also I do charge thee (if thou wilt re

main with thy life) that thou dost leave thy armour, and yield thyself, with all these followers, with their hands bound behind them, and go and ask forgiveness at his feet."

To which St. George, with a smiling countenance, answered: "Giant," said he, "thy counsel I do not like, nor thy advice will I receive; but rather do we hope to send thee and all thy followers without tongues to the infernal king of fiery Phlegethon; and for that you shall not have any more time to speak such folly and foolishness, either return your ways from whence you came, and repent of this which you have said, or else prepare yourselves to a mortal battle."

The giants, when they heard the champions' resolutions, and how slightly they regarded their proffers, without any longer tarrying they straightway fell upon St. George and his company, intending with their knotty bats of steel to beat them as small as flesh unto the pot: but the queen of chance so smiled upon the Christian champions, that the giants smally prevailed, for betwixt them was fought a long and terrible battle, in such danger, that the victory hung wavering on both sides, not knowing to whom it would fall; the bats [and falchions made such a noise upon one another's armour, that they sounded like to the blows of the Cyclops working upon their anvils; and at every blow that they gave, fire flew from their steeled corslets like sparkles from their flaming furnaces in hell; the skies resounded back the echoes of their strokes; the ground shook as though it had been oppressed with an earthquake; the pavement of the court was overspread with an intermixing of blood and sweat, and the walls of the castle were mightily battered with the giants' clubs. By the time that glittering Sol began to decline from the top of heaven, the giants began to faint; whereat the Christian knights with more courage began to increase in strength, and with such vigour assailed the giants, that before the golden sun had dived to the western world, the giants were quite discomfited and slain: some lay with their hands dismembered from their bodies, weltering in purple gore; some had their brains sprinkled against the walls; some lay in channels with their entrails trailing down in streams of blood; and some jointless, with bodies cut in pieces, so that there was not one left alive to withstand the Christian champions.

Whereat St. George with the other six knights fell upon their knees, and thanked the Immortal Rector of all good chance for their victory. But when the knight of the Black Castle, who stood upon the gallery during all the time of the encounter, saw how all the giants were slain by the prowess of these strange knights, he raged in great wrath, wishing that the ground might gape and swallow him, before he were delivered into the hands of his enemies, and presently would have cast himself headlong from the top of the gallery, thereby to have dashed out his brains against the pavement, had not the necromancer, who likewise beheld the event of the encounter, intercepted him in his intended drift, promising to perform by art what the giants could not do by force. So the necromancer fell to his magic spells and charms, by which the Christian champions were mightily troubled and molested, and brought in danger of their lives by a fearful and strange manner, as shall be hereafter shewn: for as they stood after their long encounter un buckling their armours to take the fresh air and dress their bloody wounds received in their last conflict, the magician caused by his art a spirit, in the likeness of a lady of a marvellous and fair beauty, to look through an iron grate, who seemed to lean her face upon her hand very pensively, and distil from her crystal eyes great abundance of tears. When the champions saw this beautiful creature, they remained in great admiration, thinking with themselves that by some hard misfortune she was imprisoned. At which this lady did seem to open her fair and crystalline eyes, looking earnestly upon St. George, and giving a grievous sigh, she withdrew herself from the grate; whose sudden departure caused the Christian knights to have a great desire to know who it should be, suspecting that by the force of some enchantment they should be overthrown. But casting up their eyes again to see if they could see her, they could not, but they saw, in the very same place, a woman of great and princely stature, who was all armed in silver plates, with a sword girded at her waist, sheathed in a golden scabbard, and had hanging at her neck an ivory bow and a gilt quiver: this lady was of so great beauty, that she seemed almost to exceed the other; but, in the same sort as the other did, upon a sudden she vanished away, leaving the champions less troubled in their thoughts than before they were

The Christian knights had not long time bewailed the absence of the two ladies; but that, without seeing any body, they were stricken with such furious blows upon their backs, that they were constrained to stoop with one knee upon the ground; yet with a trice they rose again, and looking that to see who they were that struck them, they perceived them to be the likeness of certain knights, which in great haste seemed to run in at a door that was at one of the corners of the court; and with the great anger that the champions received, seeing themselves so hardly entreated, they followed with their accustomed lightness after the knights, in at the same door; wherein they had not entered three steps, but that they fell down into a deep cave, which was covered over in such a subtle sort, that whoever did tread on it, straightway fell into the cave, except he was advertised thereof before. Within the cave it was as dark as the silent night, and no light at all appeared; but when the champions saw themselves treacherously betrayed in the trap, they greatly feared some farther mischief would follow, to their utter overthrow; so with their swords drawn, they stood ready charged to make their defence against whatsoever should after happen: but by reason of the great darkness that they could not see any thing, neither discover wherein they were fallen, they determined to settle themselves against something, either post, pillar, or wall, and groping about the cave, they searched in every place for some other door that might bring them forth out of the darksome den, which they compared to the pit of hell.

And as they went groping and feeling up and down, they found that they did tread upon no other things but dead men's bones, which caused them to stand still; and not long after they espied a secret window, at which entered a little clearness and gave some light into the den where they were, by which they espied a bed most richly furnished with curtains of silk, and golden pendants, which stood in a secret room of the cave, hung with rich tapestry of a sable colour; which bed when the champions beheld, and being somewhat weary of their long fight which they had with the giants in the court of the castle, they required some rest, and desired to sleep upon the bed, but not all at one instant, for they feared some danger to be at hand; and therefore St. George as one most willing to be their watchman, and keep v

in so dangerous a place, caused the other champions to take their repose upon the bed, and he would be as wakeful as the cock against all dangerous accidents : so the six Christian knights repaired to the bed, whereon they were no sooner laid, but presently they fell into a heavy enchanted sleep, in such sort that they could not be awaked by any manner of violence. The bed was enchanted by the necromancer's charms in such manner, that whosoever but sate upon the sides, or but touched the furniture of the bed, were presently cast into as heavy a sleep as if they had drank the juice of owaille, or the seed of poppy. Where we will leave them for a time, like men cast into a trance, and speak of the terrible adventure that happened to St. George in the cave, who, little mistrusting of their enchantments, stood like a careful guard, keeping the furious wolf from the spoil of the silly sheep : but upon a sudden his heart began to throb, and his hair to stand upright upon his head, yet, having a heart fraught with invincible courage, he purposed not to awake the other knights, but of himself to withstand whatsoever happened ; so being in these princely cogitations, there appeared unto him, as he thought, the shape of a magician, with a visage lean, pale, and full of wrinkles, with locks of black hair hanging down to his shoulders, like to wreaths of envenomed snakes, and his body seemed to have nothing upon it but skin and bones, who spake unto St. George in this despiteful manner :

" In an evil hour," said the magician, " camest thou hither, and so shall thy lodgings be, and thy entertainment worse ; for now thou art in a place where thou shalt look for no other thing but to be meat unto some furious beast, and thy surmounting strength shall not be able to make any defence."

The English champion, whose heart was oppressed with extreme wrath, answered : " O false and accursed charmer, whom ill chance confound for thy condemned arts, and for whom the fiends have digged an everlasting tomb in hell, what fury hath incensed thee, that with thy false and devilish charms thou dost practise so much evil against travelling and adventurous knights ? I hope to obtain my liberty in despite of all thy mischief, and with the strength of this arm to break all thy bones in sunder."

" All that thou dost and wilt do, I suffer at thy hands ;

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phoebus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermilion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for that

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had let fall a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phœbus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermilion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father *hath his residence*, that I may there perform my mother's *dying will*."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for th

grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and shed such a shower of pearly tears upon the face of her mother, that it constrained St. George's heart to feel the like sorrow; where after they had let tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a brief relief, they took Rosana by the hand, and proposed to depart from her company till they had safely arrived to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and death of her mother, they took their daggers and went under a bay-tree, and buried her body there; so that greedy ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious hawks in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and at the point of their daggers, they engraved this on the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Whose willing mind requited was with teen,
For she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
Here her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Whose luckless fate and fame shall never die.

After they had made this epitaph, and covered her with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey to the Black Castle, where we will leave them in a while, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he took his castle by magic art, according to the learned bidding of a necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred by all company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, and the strange stories you heard in the two former chapters, was suddenly smitten with sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified strongly his castle, and with his treasure bought furious giants to defend it; wherein if they should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a necromancer, that he with charms and spells

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phoebus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermillion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for that

OF CHRISTENDOM.

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her eyes, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears, that it constrained the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained the sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had fallen a few tears from their eyes, and had taken some time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and tested never to depart from her company till they had conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus as the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the untimely death of her mother, they took their time, and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her in, that hungry ravens might not seize upon her, that hungry bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies after, with the point of their daggers, they wrote an epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree :

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy
Her willing mind requited was with thee
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie
Her luckless fate and fame shall never

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered the grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their way towards the Black Castle, where we will follow them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leo when he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested in every company, as well by noble knights as by the common people, for the spoil and murder of those three whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon him, fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with him he hired many furious giants to defend it; when he failed, and should chance to be overcome, he called for a wicked necromancer, that he with charms

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phœbus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermillion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for that

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had let fall a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phœbus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

" Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermillion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for that

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had let fall a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phoebus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermilion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for the

extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and eyes rained such a shower of pearled tears upon the less body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's as to express the like sorrow; where after they had let all a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

worth, for that we have buried all our honours, dignities, and fames, in slothful slumbers upon a silken bed."

And thereupon he fell upon his knees, and said, "Thou that art the Guider of all our fortunes, unto thee I invoke aid and call, and desire thee to help us, and do not permit us to have our fames taken away for this dishonour; and let us merit dignity by our victories, and that our bright renowns may ride upon the glorious wings of Fame; whereby the babes as yet unborn may speak of us, and in time to come fill whole volumes with our princely achievements."

These and such-like speeches pronounced this discontented champion, till such time as the elements cleared, and that golden-faced Phoebus glittered with 'splendent brightness into the cave through a secret hole, which seemed in their conceits to dance about the veil of heaven, and to rejoice at their happy deliveries,

In this joyful manner returned they up to the court of the castle, with their armours buckled fast unto their bodies, which had not been unbraced in seven days before; where they met with the three knights coming to salute them, and to give them the courtesies of knighthood.

But when St. George saw his sons, whom he had not seen in two years before, he was so ravished with joy, that he swooned in their bosoms, being not able to give them his blessing; so great was the pleasure he took in their sights.

Here I leave the joyful greeting betwixt the father and his sons, to those that know the secret love of parents to their children, and what dear affection long absence breedeth. For when they had sufficiently opened the integrity of their souls to each other, and had at large explained how many dangers every knight and champion had passed since their departure from England, whenas they began their first intended pilgrimage to Jerusalem, as you heard in the beginning of this book, they determined to search the castle, and to find out Leoger, with his associate, the wicked enchanter, that they might receive due punishments for their committed offences; but they, like wily foxes, were fled from the hunter's traps, and had left the empty castle to the spoil of the Christian champions. But when Rosana saw her dismissed from her purpose, and that she could not perform her mother's will against her disloyal father, she protested by

An extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearled tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had let fall a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the dialoyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

declared unto you.

" Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermillion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent

xtreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears upon the less body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's ns to express the like sorrow; where after they had let all a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phœbus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermilion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for the

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearly tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had let fall a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

islands big with child, void of succour and relief, where instead of her princely bed covered with canopies of silk, she took her nightly repose upon the green grass, shadowed with the sable curtains of the skies; and the nurses that were provided against her delivery were nymphs and fairies dancing in the night by Proserpine's commandment. Though in great grief continued she many days, contenting herself with her appointed banishment, making her lamentations to whispering winds, which seemed in her conceit to re-answer her complaints; at length the glittering moon had ten times borrowed light of golden Phœbus, and the night's clear candle was now almost extinguished, by which time approached the hour of her laboursome travail; where, without help of a woman, she was delivered of me her unhappy daughter, where ever since I have been nourished in these unfrequented woods, and many times, when I came to years of discretion, my woful mother would discourse unto me this lamentable story of both our miseries, which I have most truly declared unto you.

"Likewise she told me, that many times in my infancy when she wanted milk in her breasts to nourish me, there would come a lioness, and sometimes a she-bear, and gently give me suck, and, contrary to the nature of wild beasts, they would many times sport with me; whereby she conjectured that the immortal powers had preserved me for strange fortune; likewise at my birth nature had pictured upon my breast, directly betwixt my two paps, the lively form of a purple rose, which as yet doth beautify my bosom with a vermillion colour; and this was the cause that my mother named me Rosana, answerable to my nature's mark. After this, we lived many a year in great distress, penury, and want, entreating Time to redress our woes more often than we had lived hours; the abundance of our tears might suffice to make watery seas, and our sighs countervail the stars. But at last, the fatal Sisters, listening to my mother's moans, and to my great sorrows, deprived her of life: where now I am left a comfortless orphan to the world, attending the time until I find some courteous knight that may conduct me to the Black Castle, where my disloyal father hath his residence, that I may there perform my mother's dying will."

These words being finished, Rosana stood silent, for the

her extreme grief hindered the passage of her tongue, and her eyes rained such a shower of pearled tears upon the lifeless body of her mother, that it constrained St. George's sons to express the like sorrow; where after they had let fall a few tears from their eyes, and had taken truce for a time with grief, they took Rosana by the hand, and protested never to depart from her company till they had safely conducted her to the Black Castle. Thus after this, when the Christian knights had pitifully bewailed the misery and untimely death of her mother, they took their daggers and digged a grave under a bay-tree, and buried her body therein, that hungry ravens might not seize upon it, nor furious bears tear it in pieces, nor ravenous harpies devour it; and after, with the point of their daggers, they engraved this epitaph in the bark of the bay-tree:

Here lies the body of a hapless queen,
Whose great good will to her small joy did bring;
Her willing mind requited was with teen,
Though she deserv'd, for love, a regal king:
And, as her corpse enclosed here doth lie,
Her luckless fate and fame shall never die.

So when they had made this epitaph, and covered her grave with green turfs, they departed forward on their journey towards the Black Castle, where we will leave them in their travels, and return to the disloyal Leoger, and how he fortified his castle by magic art, according to the learned skill of a cunning necromancer.

CHAP. VIII.

THE wicked Leoger, when he grew detested and abhorred in every company, as well by noble knights as gallant ladies, for the spoil and murder of those three virgin dames, whose pitiful stories you heard in the two former chapters, and fearing sudden vengeance to fall upon his head, he fortified himself strongly in his castle, and with his treasure hired many furious giants to defend it; wherein if they failed, and should chance to be overcome, he consorted with a wicked necromancer, that he with charms and spells

should work wonders in his castle : which magical accomplishments we will pass over till a more convenient time, because I purpose to explain the history in good order to the reader.

First, speak we of St. George, with the other Christian knights, that came in revenge of the shepherd and his unfortunate daughter, who with good success arrived upon the shore of the island where this wicked Leoger and the magician had fortified their Black Castle, in which country the champions, like the invincible followers of Mars, fearing no danger, nor the frowns of unconstant Fortune, betook themselves to the readiest way towards the castle ; in which journey they were almost ravished with the pleasure of the island : for entering into a narrow and straight lane, garnished on both sides with trees of divers sorts, they heard how the summer birds recorded their pleasant melodies, and made their sweet and accustomed songs without fear of any man to molest them. In which row of pleasant trees, that delighted them on both sides, there wanted not the green laurel so much esteemed among learned scholars ; nor the sweet myrtle tree, loved by ladies ; nor the high cypress, so much regarded of lovers ; nor the stately pine, which for his flourishing height is called the prince of trees : whereby they judged it to be rather an habitation for gods and goddesses than a terrestrial country, for that the golden sun with his glittering beams did pass through those green and pleasant trees without any hindrance of black clouds, for the skies were clear as tried silver : likewise the western wind did softly shake the shivering leaves, whereby it made as sweet a harmony as if they had been celestial cherubims : a thousand little streamed brooks ran upon the enamelled ground, making sundry fine works by their crooked turnings ; and joining one water with another, with a very gentle meeting, made such silver music, that the champions with the pleasure thereof were almost ravished, and smally regarded whether their horses went right or no ; and travelling in this sort, they rode forward till they came into a marvellous great and wide meadow, being of such exceeding fairness, that I am not able with a pen to paint out the *excellency* thereof ; whereas were feeding both wild and *tame harts*, adorned with great and cragged horns : likewise *the furious wild boar*, the fierce lion, and the simple lambs,

OF CHRISTENDOM.

re altogether feeding with so great friendship, as on strary by nature they were enemies.

Whereat the noble champions were almost overcome by their own conceits, and amazed in their imaginations, to : strange love, clean contrary to nature, and that there was no difference betwixt the love of wild beasts and tame. In this manner they travelled along, till on a sudden they arrived before the buildings of the Black Castle. Below the castle, there was an arch with a gate, which seemed to be of diamonds, and was compassed about with a moat or ditch, and was almost two hundred paces broad, and every gate had his drawbridge, all made of red boards, which seemed as though they had been bathed all in blood. Afterwards, the champions rode to the other side of this goodly castle, wondering at the curious and sumptuous workmanship, where they espied a pillar of beautiful jasper stone, all wrought with all of precious stones of strange works, which pillar was of great value, and was garnished with chains of gold, that were made fast unto it by magic art ; at which pillar likewise hung a very costly silver trumpet, with certain letters inscribed about the same, which contained these words following :

If any dare attempt this place to see,
By sounding this, the gate shall open'd be ;
A trumpet here enchain'd by magic art,
Shall daunt with fear the proudest champion's heart :
Look thou for blows that enterest in this gate,
Return in time, repentance comes too late.

When St. George beheld, and had understood the meaning of those mystical letters, without any more tarrying, he took the silver trumpet to his mouth, and sounded a vehement blast, that it seemed to echo in the foundations of the castle ; whereat the principal gate presently opened, and the draw-bridge was let down, without the help of any other hand, which made the champions wonder, and amazed at this strange accident ; but yet, instead of returning like cowards daunted with a puff of wind, they alighted from their warlike steeds, and delivered themselves into the old shepherd's hands, to be fed upon the fresh green grass, till they had performed the adventure.

should work wonders in his castle: which magical accomplishments we will pass over till a more convenient time, because I purpose to explain the history in good order to the reader.

First, speak we of St. George, with the other Christian knights, that came in revenge of the shepherd and his unfortunate daughter, who with good success arrived upon the shore of the island where this wicked Leoger and the magician had fortified their Black Castle, in which country the champions, like the invincible followers of Mars, fearing no danger, nor the frowns of unconstant Fortune, betook themselves to the readiest way towards the castle; in which journey they were almost ravished with the pleasure of the island: for entering into a narrow and straight lane, garnished on both sides with trees of divers sorts, they heard how the summer birds recorded their pleasant melodies, and made their sweet and accustomed songs without fear of any man to molest them. In which row of pleasant trees, that delighted them on both sides, there wanted not the green laurel so much esteemed among learned scholars; nor the sweet myrtle tree, loved by ladies; nor the high cypress, so much regarded of lovers; nor the stately pine, which for his flourishing height is called the prince of trees: whereby they judged it to be rather an habitation for gods and goddesses than a terrestrial country, for that the golden sun with his glittering beams did pass through those green and pleasant trees without any hindrance of black clouds, for the skies were clear as tried silver: likewise the western wind did softly shake the shivering leaves, whereby it made as sweet a harmony as if they had been celestial cherubims: a thousand little streamed brooks ran upon the enamelled ground, making sundry fine works by their crooked turnings; and joining one water with another, with a very gentle meeting, made such silver music, that the champions with the pleasure thereof were almost ravished, and smally regarded whether their horses went right or no; and travelling in this sort, they rode forward till they came into a marvellous great and wide meadow, being of such exceeding fairness, that I am not able with a pen to paint out the *excellency* thereof; whereas were feeding both wild and *tame harts*, adorned with great and cragged horns: likewise *the furious wild boar*, the fierce lion, and the simple lamb

together feeding with so great friendship, as on the
by nature they were enemies.

At the noble champions were almost overcome in
in conceits, and amazed in their imaginations, to see
ge love, clean contrary to nature, and that there
difference betwixt the love of wild beasts and tame.
manner they travelled along, till on a sudden they
before the buildings of the Black Castle. Below
he castle, there was an arch with a gate, which
to be of diamonds, and was compassed about with a
ditch, and was almost two hundred paces broad, and
ite had his drawbridge, all made of red boards, which
as though they had been bathed all in blood. After
champions rode to the other side of this goodly castle,
ng at the curious and sumptuous workmanship, where
ied a pillar of beautiful jasper stone, all wrought
precious stones of strange works, which pillar was
value, and was garnished with chains of gold, that
ade fast unto it by magic art; at which pillar like-
ng a very costly silver trumpet, with certain letters
about the same, which contained these words fol-

any dare attempt this place to see,
sounding this, the gate shall open'd be;
rumpet here enchain'd by magic art,
daunt with fear the proudest champion's heart:
ok thou for blows that enterest in this gate,
urn in time, repentance comes too late.

h when St. George beheld, and had understood the
; of those mystical letters, without any more tarry-
set the silver trumpet to his mouth, and sounded
vehement blast, that it seemed to echo in the foun-
of the castle; whereat the principal gate presently
and the draw-bridge was let down, without the help
visible hand, which made the champions wonder,
tand amazed at this strange accident; but yet, in-
not to return like cowards daunted with a puff of
ey alighted from their warlike steeds, and delivered
o the old shepherd's hands, to be fed upon the fra-
d green grass, till they had performed the adven-

should work wonders in his castle: which magical accomplishments we will pass over till a more convenient time, because I purpose to explain the history in good order to the reader.

First, speak we of St. George, with the other Christian knights, that came in revenge of the shepherd and his unfortunate daughter, who with good success arrived upon the shore of the island where this wicked Leoger and the magician had fortified their Black Castle, in which country the champions, like the invincible followers of Mars, fearing no danger, nor the frowns of unconstant Fortune, betook themselves to the readiest way towards the castle; in which journey they were almost ravished with the pleasure of the island: for entering into a narrow and straight lane, garnished on both sides with trees of divers sorts, they heard how the summer birds recorded their pleasant melodies, and made their sweet and accustomed songs without fear of any man to molest them. In which row of pleasant trees, that delighted them on both sides, there wanted not the green laurel so much esteemed among learned scholars; nor the sweet myrtle tree, loved by ladies; nor the high cypress, so much regarded of lovers; nor the stately pine, which for his flourishing height is called the prince of trees: whereby they judged it to be rather an habitation for gods and goddesses than a terrestrial country, for that the golden sun with his glittering beams did pass through those green and pleasant trees without any hindrance of black clouds, for the skies were clear as tried silver: likewise the western wind did softly shake the shivering leaves, whereby it made as sweet a harmony as if they had been celestial cherubims: a thousand little streamed brooks ran upon the enamelled ground, making sundry fine works by their crooked turnings; and joining one water with another, with a very gentle meeting, made such silver music, that the champions with the pleasure thereof were almost ravished, and smally regarded whether their horses went right or no; and travelling in this sort, they rode forward till they came into a marvellous great and wide meadow, being of such exceeding fairness, that I am not able with a pen to paint out the *excellency thereof*; whereas were feeding both wild and *tame harts*, adorned with great and cragged horns: likewise *the furious wild boar*, the fierce lion, and the simple lamb

together feeding with so great friendship, as on the
y by nature they were enemies.

At the noble champions were almost overcome in
in conceits, and amazed in their imaginations, to see
ge love, clean contrary to nature, and that there
difference betwixt the love of wild beasts and tame.
manner they travelled along, till on a sudden they
before the buildings of the Black Castle. Below
he castle, there was an arch with a gate, which
to be of diamonds, and was compassed about with a
ditch, and was almost two hundred paces broad, and
ite had his drawbridge, all made of red boards, which
as though they had been bathed all in blood. After
champions rode to the other side of this goodly castle,
ng at the curious and sumptuous workmanship, where
ied a pillar of beautiful jasper stone, all wrought
precious stones of strange works, which pillar was
value, and was garnished with chains of gold, that
ade fast unto it by magic art; at which pillar like-
ng a very costly silver trumpet, with certain letters
about the same, which contained these words fol-

ny dare attempt this place to see,
sounding this, the gate shall open'd be;
rumpet here enchain'd by magic art,
daunt with fear the proudest champion's heart:
ok thou for blows that interest in this gate,
turn in time, repentance comes too late.

h when St. George beheld, and had understood the
; of those mystical letters, without any more tarry-
set the silver trumpet to his mouth, and sounded
vehement blast, that it seemed to echo in the foun-
of the castle; whereat the principal gate presently
and the draw-bridge was let down, without the help
visible hand, which made the champions wonder,
tand amazed at this strange accident; but yet, in-
not to return like cowards daunted with a puff of
ey alighted from their warlike steeds, and delivered
o the old shepherd's hands, to be fed upon the fra-
d green grass, till they had performed the adven-

should work wonders in his castle: which magical accomplishments we will pass over till a more convenient time, because I purpose to explain the history in good order to the reader.

First, speak we of St. George, with the other Christian knights, that came in revenge of the shepherd and his unfortunate daughter, who with good success arrived upon the shore of the island where this wicked Leoger and the magician had fortified their Black Castle, in which country the champions, like the invincible followers of Mara, fearing no danger, nor the frowns of unconstant Fortune, betook themselves to the readiest way towards the castle; in which journey they were almost ravished with the pleasure of the island: for entering into a narrow and straight lane, garnished on both sides with trees of divers sorts, they heard how the summer birds recorded their pleasant melodies, and made their sweet and accustomed songs without fear of any man to molest them. In which row of pleasant trees, that delighted them on both sides, there wanted not the green laurel so much esteemed among learned scholars; nor the sweet myrtle tree, loved by ladies; nor the high cypress, so much regarded of lovers; nor the stately pine, which for his flourishing height is called the prince of trees: whereby they judged it to be rather an habitation for gods and goddesses than a terrestrial country, for that the golden sun with his glittering beams did pass through those green and pleasant trees without any hindrance of black clouds, for the skies were clear as tried silver: likewise the western wind did softly shake the shivering leaves, whereby it made as sweet a harmony as if they had been celestial cherubims: a thousand little streamed brooks ran upon the enamelled ground, making sundry fine works by their crooked turnings; and joining one water with another, with a very gentle meeting, made such silver music, that the champions with the pleasure thereof were almost ravished, and smally regarded whether their horses went right or no; and travelling in this sort, they rode forward till they came into a marvellous great and wide meadow, being of such exceeding fairness, that I am not able with a pen to paint out the *excellency* thereof; whereas were feeding both wild and *tame harts*, adorned with great and cragged horns: likewise *the furious wild boar*, the fierce lion, and the simple lambs,



other feeding with so great friendship, as on the
y nature they were enemies.

: the noble champions were almost overcome in
conceits, and amazed in their imaginations, to see
love, clean contrary to nature, and that there
ference betwixt the love of wild beasts and tame.
ner they travelled along, till on a sudden they
fore the buildings of the Black Castle. Below,

castle, there was an arch with a gate, which
be of diamonds, and was compassed about with a
tch, and was almost two hundred paces broad, and
had his drawbridge, all made of red boards, which
though they had been bathed all in blood. After
ampions rode to the other side of this goodly castle,
at the curious and sumptuous workmanship, where
l a pillar of beautiful jasper stone, all wrought
cious stones of strange works, which pillar was
due, and was garnished with chains of gold, that
fast unto it by magic art; at which pillar like-
a very costly silver trumpet, with certain letters
out the same, which contained these words fol-

dare attempt this place to see,
unding this, the gate shall open'd be;
mpet here enchain'd by magic art,
unt with fear the proudest champion's heart:
thou for blows that enterest in this gate,
n in time, repentance comes too late.

hen St. George beheld, and had understood the
those mystical letters, without any more tarry-
the silver trumpet to his mouth, and sounded
ement blast, that it seemed to echo in the foun-
he castle; whereat the principal gate presently
l the draw-bridge was let down, without the help
ble hand, which made the champions wonder,
d amazed at this strange accident; but yet, in-
to return like cowards daunted with a puff of
alighted from their warlike steeds, and delivered
he old shepherd's hands, to be fed upon the fra-
green grass, till they had performed the adven-

rewarded, tell me (even by the nature of true love) if thou dost not know where she is: shew unto me her abiding place, that I may go thither, and give a discharge of this my great fault by yielding unto death."

"O cruel and without love," answered Rosana, "what discharge canst thou give unto her that already, through thy cruelty, is dead and buried, only by the occasion of such a foresworn knight?"

This penitent and grieved knight, when he understood the certainty of her death, with a sudden and hasty fury he struck himself on the breast with his fist; and lifting his eyes unto the clouds, in manner of exclamation, against the Fates, giving sorrowful sighs, he threw himself to the ground; tumbling and wallowing from one side unto the other, without taking any ease, or having any power or strength to declare the inward grief which at that time he felt; but with lamentation, which did torment his heart, he called continually on the Armenian queen; and in that devilish fury wherein he was, drew out his dagger, and lifting up the skirt of his shirt of mail, he thrust it into his body, and with calling upon his wronged lady he finished his life, and fell to the ground.

This sad and heavy lady, when she beheld him so desperately to gore his martial breast, and to fall lifeless to the earth, she greatly repented herself that she had not discovered her name, and revealed to him how that she was his unfortunate daughter, whose face before that time he had never beheld; and as a lion (though all too late) who seeing before her eyes a young lioness evil entreated of the hunter, even so she ran unto her murdered father, and with great speed pulled off his helmet, and unbraced his armour, which was in colour according to his passion, but yet as strong as any diamond, made by magic art. Also she took away his shield, which had on it a russet flag, and in the midst thereof was pourtrayed the god of love with two faces: the one was very fair and bound with a cloth about his eyes, and the other was made marvellous fierce and furious. This being done, with a fair linen cloth she wiped off the blood from his wounded body. And when she was certain that it was he after whom she had travelled so many steps, and that he was without life, with a furious madness she tore her attire from her head, and rent her golden hair.



t in pieces, and then returned again and wiped his body; making such sorrowful lamentation, that had seen her would have been moved to compassion. she took his head betwixt her hands, striving to lift it to lay it upon her lap; but seeing, for all this, there was no moving him; she joined her face unto his dead cheeks, and with sorrowful words she said: "O father, open thine eyes and behold me; open thine ears, and look upon me, thy sorrowful daughter. Be so favourable, let me receive some contentment in this life remaineth. O strengthen thyself to look upon me, wherein such delight may come to me that we may accompany the other. Oh my lord and only father, that in former times my unfortunate mother's tears were not sufficient to reclaim thee, make me satisfy the great travail which I have taken in seeking thee, come now in death, and joy in the sight of thy daughter, and die not without seeing her: open thine eyes, that she may gratify thee in dying with thee."

being said, Rosana began again to wipe his body, till it was again all bathed in blood, and felt his eyes open, and his face and head, till such time as she touched his breast, and put her hand on the mortal wound, she held it still, and looked upon him whether he lived or no.

At length she perceived his dim eyes to open; and his countenance a little gathered together; and when he saw himself in her arms, and understood by her words that she was his daughter, whom he had by the unfortunate queen of Arragon, he suddenly strove against weakness: he cast his arms about the neck of the fair Rosana; and then, with a weak voice, the wounded knight said: "My daughter, unfortunate by my disloyalty! I do repent that I have been pitiless unto thy mother, and ungrateful to thee, in making thee to travel with great sorrow in quest of me; and now thou hast found me, I must leave thee in this sorrowful place. Yet before my death, my daughter, give me some few gentle kisses. This only I crave for the little time I have to tarry; and afterwards I desire thee to entomb my body in thy mother's tomb, though it be far in distance from this unlucky place."

"O my dear lord," answered she, "do you request me to give your body a sepulchre? I think it more requisite to seek some to give it unto us both; for I know my life cannot continue long, if the angry Fates deprive me of your company." And without strength to proceed any farther in speeches, she kissed his face with many sighs; and having within herself a terrible conflict, she tarried for the answer of her dying father, who, with pain and great anguish of death, said:

"Oh my child, how happy should I be, that thus embracing one in another's arms we might depart together. Then should I be joyful in thy company, and account myself happy in my death. But, alas! I must leave thee unto the world! Daughter, farewell! Good Fortune preserve thee: and for ever may she take thee into her favour." And when he had said these words, inclining his neck upon the face of Rosana, he died. Which when this sorrowful lady saw, she kissed his pale lips; and giving sorrowful sighs, she began a most heavy lamentation, calling herself unhappy and unfortunate, and laid herself upon the dead body, cursing her destinies, so that it was lamentable to hear.

At length, remembering the promise that she made him, which was to give his body burial in her mother's tomb; which was the occasion that she did somewhat cease her lamentation; and taking unto herself more courage than her sorrowful grief would consent unto, she put the body under a broad-branched pine-apple tree, and covered it with leaves and green grass, and withal hung his armour upon the boughs, in hope that the sight thereof would cause some adventurous knight to approach her presence, that in kindness would assist her to entomb him. This done, here we will leave Rosana weeping over her father's body, and speak of the necromancer after his flight from the Black Castle.

CHAP. XIV.

I AM sure you do well remember, when the Christian knights had conquered the Black Castle, which was kept by



OF CHRISTENDOM.

295

ment, how the furious necromancer, to preserve his
from the same, carried by his art through the air
in chariot drawn by two flying dragons; in which he
over many parts of the eastern climates.

It, being weary of his journey, he put himself into
rest of a forest, wherein he never rested, till he came
mighty broad river. There he alighted from his
for to refresh himself. And as he found himself all
ere came into his mind many thoughts of his fore-
life, and how he was vanquished by the Christian
; for which with great anger he gave terrible sighs,
an to curses, not only the hour of his birth, but the
world, and all the generations of mankind.

rise he remembered the great sorrow and travail
ever since had endured, and what toil travelling
do endure. In these variable cogitations spent he
away, till golden Phœbus began to withdraw him-
his accustomed lodging. All that night passed
with such sorrowful lamentations for his late dis-
that all the woods and mountains did resound his
clamations, till that Sol with his glittering beams
gain to recover the earth. Which being seen by
ician, he arose up, and intending to prosecute his
; but lifting up his eyes towards the elements, he
red hanging upon a high pine-apple-tree the armour
er.

armour was hung there by Rosana, in the remem-
of his death, as you heard in the last chapter. And
it had almost lost the wonted colour, and began to
rough the abundance of rain that had fallen thereon,
all that it seemed of a great value, and of a wonder-
ness. So without any farther circumspection or re-
took down the knight's armour, and armed himself
th; and when he had lacked no more to put on but
net, he heard a voice that said :
not so hardy, thou knight, as to undo this trophy,
hou prepare thyself to win it by the sword."
magician at this unexpected noise cast his head on
side, and espied Rosana newly awaked from a
sleep, most richly armed with a strong enchanted
, after the manner of the Amazonians; but for all
made an end of arming himself; and having lace

on his burgonet, he went towards the demander, with his sword ready drawn in his hand, inviting her to a mortal battle.

Rosana, who saw his determination, provided to defend herself and offend her enemy.

The valiant Amazonian, when her enemy came unto her, struck him so terrible a blow upon the visor of his helmet, that with the fury thereof she made sparkles of fire to issue out with great abundance, and forced him to bow his head unto his breast. The magician returned her his salutation, and struck her such a blow upon her helmet, that with the great noise thereof it made a sound in all the mountains: and so began between them a fearful battle. Fortune, not willing to use her utmost extremity, inclined the foil to neither party, nor as yet gave the conquest to any. All the time of the conflict, the furious magician and the valiant Amazonian, thought on no other thing, but either of them endeavoured to bring the other to an overthrow, striking at each other such terrible blows, and with so great fury, that many times it made either of them senseless; and both seeking the great force one of the other, were marvellously incensed with anger.

Then the valiant lady threw her shield at her back, that with more force she might strike and hurt her enemy; and therewithal gave him so strong a blow upon the burgonet, that he fell quite astonished to the earth, without any feeling.

But when the magician came again to himself, he returned Rosana such a terrible blow, that if it had chanced to hit right upon her, it would have cloven her head in pieces; but with great discretion she cleared her head in such sort, that it was struck in vain; and with great lightness she retired, and struck the magician so furiously, that she made him once again to fall to the ground astonished, and there appeared at the visor of his helmet great abundance of blood, that issued out of his mouth; but presently he revived and got up with great anger.

Then this furious devil, blaspheming against his hard hap, having his sharp sword very fast in his hand, ran towards his enemy, who, without any fear of his fury, went forth to receive him; and when they met together, they discharged their blows at once; but it fortune'd that the Amazonian's



OF CHRISTENDOM.

blow did first fasten, with so great strength, that helmet of the magician, which was wrought of th steel, it was not sufficient to make defence, but v gorous force wherewith it was charged, it bent i that it brake into pieces ; and the magician's h grievously wounded, that streams of blood ran d mour, and he was forced to yield to the mercy of lady ; who quickly condescended to his request condition, that he would be a means to convey l dead body to an island near adjoining to the bor menia, and there to entomb it in her mother's gr promised when that his air of life fled from l

The magician, for safeguard of his life, presen to perform her desires, and protested to accompl ever she demanded.

Then presently by his art he prepared his ir with his flying dragons, in a readiness ; wherein murdered body of Leoger, and likewise placed therein ; wherein they were no sooner entered, saries belonging to their travels, but they fled i air more swift than a whirlwind, or a ship sailing in a stormy tempest.

Thus was Rosana, with her father's dead bo through the air by magic art, over hills and dales and valleys, woods and forests, towns and cities, many both wonderful and strange places and co

And at last they arrived near unto the conf menia, being the place of their long-desired rest. they approached near unto the queen of Armer they descended from their enchanted chariot, ar ger's body to his burying-place, which they found with moss and withered brambles : yet for al opened the sepulchre, and laid his body upor consumed carcase : which being done, the magic the grave again with earth, and laid thereon which made it seem as though it never had bee

All the time that the magician was performi monious funeral, Rosana watered the earth wit never withdrawing her eyes from looking upor and when it was finished, she took forth a n which she had ready for the same effect, and *pummel to the ground, cast her breast upon the*

she did with such furious violence, that the magician could not prevent her from committing so bloody a fact.

This sudden mischance so amazed him, that his heart, for a time, would not consent that his tongue should speak one word to express his passion. But at last he took up the dead body of Rosana, bathed all in blood, and likewise buried her in her parents' grave; and over the same hung an epitaph, that did declare the occasion all their deaths.

This being done, to express the sorrows of his heart for the desperate death of such a magnanimous lady, and the rather to exempt himself from the company of all human creatures, he erected over the grave, by magic art, a very stately tomb, which was in this order framed:—First, there were fixed four pillars, every one of a very fine ruby: upon which was placed a sepulchre of crystal. Within the sepulchre there seemed to be two fair ladies; the one having her breast pierced through with a sword; and the other with a crown of gold upon her head, and so lean of body that she seemed to pine away. And upon the sepulchre there lay a knight all along, with his face looking up to the heavens, and armed with a corslet of fine steel, of a russet enamelling. Under the sepulchre there was spread abroad a great carpet of gold, and upon it two pillars of the same: and between them lay an old shepherd, and his sheep-hook lying at his feet: his eyes were shut, and out of them were distilled many pearled tears. At either pillar there was a gentlewoman of a comely feature; one of them seemed to be murdered, and the other ravished. And near unto the sepulchre, there lay a terrible great beast, headed like a lion, his breast and body like a wolf, and his tail like a scorpion; which seemed to spit continually flames of fire. The sepulchre was compassed about with a wall of iron, with four gates for to enter in thereat: the gates were after the manner and colour of fine diamonds; and directly over the top of the chiefest gate stood a marble pillar, whereon hung a table written with red letters, the contents whereof were as follow:

So long shall breathe upon this brittle earth,

The framer of this stately monument,

Till that three children of a wond'rous birth,

Out of a northern climate shall be sent:

They shall obscure his name, as Fates agree,

And by his fall the fiends shall tamed be.



OF CHRISTENDOM.

This monument was no sooner framed, but the cer enclosed himself within the walls; where chiefly with furies and walking spirits, that con upon his blood, and left their damnable seals s his left side, as a sure token and witness that b both his soul and body to their governments ad of his mortal life was finished.

In which enchanted sepulchre we will leav time, conferring with his damnable mates, and Christian knights, where we left them travelling bylon, to place the king again in his kingdom.

CHAP. XV.

THE valiant Christian champions having, as yore, performed the adventure of the enchanted accompanied the Babylonian king to his kingdom, as they had solemnly promised him.

But when they approached the confines and made no question of princely entertainment neither sign of peace nor likelihood of joyful a welcome, for all the country raged with intestine several competitors unjustly striving for what u properly and of right belonged.

The unnatural causers and stirrers-up to th vouring controversy were four noblemen, unto king unadvisedly committed the government o when he went in the tragical pursuit of his fa after his dreamed illusion, that caused him s seek her death: and the breaking out into th grew first to head in this manner following.—

Two years after the king's departure these vernal the public state in great peace, and with licy, till no tidings of the king could be heard, n ing so many messengers as were into every qu world sent to inquire of him: then did ambition their hearts, each striving to wrest into his h possession of the Babylonian kingdom. To this made several friends; for this had they contend fights; and now, lastly, they intended to set a upon this main chance of war, intending to

fell, and one remained victor over the rest; whose head should be beautified with a crown.

But to traitors and treason the end is sudden and shameful; for no sooner had St. George (placing himself between the battles) in a brief oration shewed the adventures of the king, and he himself to the people discovered his reverend face, but they all shouted for joy; and hauling the usurper presently to death, they reinstalled him in the ancient dignity, their true, lawful, and long-looked-for king.

The king being thus restored, married *Fidelia* for her faithfulness; and after the nuptial feasts, the champions (at the earnest request of St. Anthony) departed towards Italy; where in Rome the emperor spared no cost honourably and most sumptuously to entertain those never-daunted knights, the famous wonders of Christendom.

At that time of the year when the summer's queen had beautified the earth with interchangeable ornaments, St. George (in company of the emperor, with the rest of the champions) chanced to walk along by the side of the river Tiber, to delight themselves with the pleasant meads and beautiful prospect of the country. Before they had walked half a mile from the city, they approached an ancient nunnery, which was a stately building, and likewise encompassed about with crystal streams and many green meadows, furnished with all manner of beautiful trees and fragrant flowers.

This nunnery was consecrated to *Diana*, the queen of chastity, and none were suffered to live therein but such chaste ladies and virgins as had vowed themselves to a single life. In this place the emperor's only daughter lived as a professed nun, and exempted herself from all company, except it were the fellowship of chaste and religious virgins.

This virtuous *Lucina* (for so was she called) having intelligence before, by the overseers of the nunnery, that the emperor her father, with many other knights, were coming to visit their religious habitation, against their approach she attired herself in a gown of white satin, all laid over with gold lace, having also her golden locks of hair somewhat laid forth: and upon her head was knit a garland of sweet-smelling flowers. Her beauty was so excellent, that it might have quailed the heart of Cupid, and her bravery exceeded the Paphian queen's. Never could Nature, with all her

cunning, stream more beauty in any one creature, than was upon her face; nor ever could the flattering Sirens more beguile the travellers, than did her bright countenance enchant the English champion; for at his first entrance into the nunnery, he was so ravished with her sight, that he was not able to withdraw his eyes from her beauty, but stood gazing upon her, like one bewitched with Medusa's shadows! and to be short, her beauty so fired his heart, that he must either enjoy her company, or give end to his life by some untimely means.

St. George, being wounded thus with the dart of love, dissembled his grief, and revealed it not to any one, but departed with the emperor back again to the city, leaving his heart behind him, closed in the stony monastery with his lovely Lucina.

All that ensuing night he could not enjoy the benefit of sleep, but contemplated upon the divine beauty of his lady, and fraughted his mind with a thousand several cogitations how he might attain to his love, being a chaste virgin and a professed nun.

In this manner he spent the night, and no sooner appeared the morning's brightness, but he arose, and attired himself in watchet velvet, and wandered alone to the monastery; where he revealed his deep affection unto the lady, who was as far from granting to his request as the skies from the earth; for she protested, while life remained within her body, never to yield her love to any one, but to remain a pure virgin, and of Diana's train.

No other resolution could St. George get of the chaste nun, which caused him to part in great discontent, intending to seek by some other means to obtain her love. So coming to the rest of the Christian champions, he revealed to them the truth of all things that had happened; who in this manner counselled him: that he should provide a multitude of armed knights, every one bearing in his hand a naked sword ready drawn; and to enter the monastery at such time as she little mistrusted; and first with promises and fair and kind speeches to seek her love, but if she yielded not, to fill her ears with threatenings, protesting, that if she will not grant to requite his love with like affections, he would not leave one stone of that monastery standing upon

another, and likewise make her a bloody offering up to Diana.

This policy well pleased St. George, though he intended not to prosecute such cruelty : so the next morning by break of day he went unto the nunnery, in company of no other but the Christian champions, armed in bright armour, with their glittering swords ready drawn, which they carried under their side-cloaks, to prevent suspicion.

But when they came to the monastery, and had entered into the chamber of Lucina, St. George first proffered her kindness by fair promises ; but finding that thereby he nothing prevailed, he then made known his pretended unmerciful purpose ; and thereupon all of them shaking their bright swords against her breast, they protested (though contrary to their intents) that except she would yield to St. George her unconquered love, they would bathe their weapons in her dearest blood.

At which words the distressed virgin, being overcharged with fear, sunk down to the ground, and lay for a time in a dead agony ; but in the end recovering herself, she lifted up herself, and in this manner declared her mind :

"Most renowned knight," said she, "it is as difficult for me to climb up to the highest top of heaven, as to persuade my mind to yield to the fulfilling of your requests. The pure and chaste goddess Diana, that sits now crowned amongst the golden stars, will revenge my perjured promise, if I yield to your desires ; for I have since deeply vowed to spend my days in this religious house, in honour of her deity, and not to yield the flower of my virginity to any one ; which vow I will not infringe for all the wealth of Rome. You know, brave champions, that in time the watery drops will mollify the hardest diamond ; and time may root this resolution out of my heart. Therefore I request you, by honour of true knighthood, and by the love you bear to your native country, to grant me the liberty of seven days, that I may at full consider with my heart before I give an answer to your demands, and to the intent that I may make some sacrifices, as well to appease the wrath which the goddess Diana may conceive against me, as to satisfy my own soul for not fulfilling my vow."

These words were no sooner ended, but the champions,

without any more delay, joyfully consented, and moreover proffered themselves to be all present at the sacrifice ; and so departed from the monastery with exceeding great comfort.

The champions being gone, Lucina called together all the rest of the nuns, and declared to them the whole discourse ; where after, amongst this religious company, with the help of some of their approved friends, they devised a most strange sacrifice, which hath since been the occasion that so many inhuman and bloody sacrifices have been committed.

The next morning, after six days were finished, no sooner did bright Phoebus shew his golden beams abroad, but the nuns began to prepare all things in readiness for the sacrifice : for directly before the door of the monastery they hired cunning workmen to erect a scaffold, all very richly covered with cloth of gold ; and upon the scaffold, about the middle thereof, was placed a fair table covered also with a carpet of cloth of gold, and upon it a chafing-dish of coals burning. All this being set in good order, the emperor, with the Christian champions, and many other Roman knights, being present to behold the ceremonious sacrifice, little mistrusted the doleful tragedy that after happened.

The assembly being silent, there was straightways heard a sweet and harmonious sound of clarions and trumpets, and sundry other kinds of instruments : these entered first upon the scaffold ; and next unto them were brought seven rams, all adorned with fine white wool, more soft in feeling than Arabian silk, with huge and mighty charged horns, bound about with garlands of flowers ; after them followed a certain number of nuns attired in black vestures, singing their accustomed songs in the honour of Diana ; after them followed an ancient matron, drawn in a chariot by four comely virgins, bringing in her hands the image of Diana ; and on either side of her, two ancient nuns of great estimation, each of them bearing in their hands rich vessels of gold, full of precious and sweet wines : then, after all this, came the beautiful Lucina, apparelled with a rich robe of state, being of a great and inestimable value.

Thus ceremoniously she ascended the scaffold, where the matron placed the image of Diana behind the chafing-dish of coals that was there burning ; and the rest of the nuns *continued still singing their songs, and drinking of the pre-*

cious wines that were brought in the golden vessels. This being done, they all at once brought low the necks of the rams, by cutting their throats; whose blood they sprinkled round about the scaffold, and opened their bowels, and burned the inward parts in the chafing-dish of coals.

Thus with the slaughter they made sacrifice to the queen of chastity; at the sight whereof was present the surfeiting lover St. George, with the other six Christian knights, armed all in bright armour, and were all very attentive.

This sacrifice ended, Lucina commanded silence to be made; and when all the company were still, she raised herself upon her feet, and with a heavy voice, distilling many salt tears, she said:

"O most excellent and chaste Diana, in whose blessed bosom we undefiled virgins do recreate ourselves, unto thy most divine excellency do I now commend this my last sacrifice, calling to record all the gods, that I have done my best to continue a spotless maiden of thy most beautiful train. O heavens! shall I consent to deliver my virginity to him whose soul desires to have the use of it? Or shall I myself consent to my utter ruin and sorrowful destruction, which proceedeth only by the means of my flourishing beauty? I would it had been as the night raven's, or like to the tawny tanned Moor's in the farthest mountain of India.

"O sacred Diana! thou blessed queen of chastity, is it possible that thou dost consent that a virgin, descended from so royal a race as I am, should suffer the worthiness of her predecessors to be spotted by yielding her virgin honour to the conquest of love, without respecting the chaste vow I made unto thy deity? And now to thee I speak, thou valiant knight of England: behold here I yield unto thy hands my lifeless body, to use according to thy will and pleasure; requesting only this thing at thy hand, that as thou lovest me living, thou wilt love me dead; and, like a merciful champion, suffer me to receive a princely funeral.

"And last of all, to thee, divine Diana, do I speak; accept of this my bleeding soul, that with so much blood is offered unto thee."

So finishing this sorrowful speech, she drew out a bright shining sword, which she had hid secretly under her gown; and, setting the hilt against the scaffold (little looked for by her father and those that were present), she suddenly thrust

herself upon the point of that sword, in such a furious manner, that it parted her bloody heart in sunder, and so rendered her soul to the tuition of her unto whom she offered her most bloody useful sacrifice.

What, shall I here declare the lamentable sorrows and pitiful lamentations that were made by her father and other Roman knights that were present at this unhappy mischance? In great it was, that the wall of the monastery echoed, and their pitiful shrieks ascended to the clouds.

But none was more grieved in mind than the afflicted English champion, who in great fury rushed amongst the people, throwing them down on every side, till he ascended upon the scaffold; and approaching the dead body of Lucina, he took her up in his arms, and with a sorrowful and passionate voice he said:

"O my beloved joy, and late my own heart's delight! is this the sacrifice wherein (through thy desperateness) thou hast deceived me, who loved thee more than my life! Is this the respite that thou requiredst for seven days, wherein thou hast concluded thy own death, and my utter confusion!

"O Diana, accursed be this chance! because thou hast consented to so bloody a tragedy: for I do here protest, that never more shalt thou be worshipped; but in thy stead, in every land and country where the English champion cometh, let Lucina be adored. For from henceforth will I seek to diminish thy name, and blot it from the godhead of the firmament; yea, and utterly extinguish it for ever, so that there shall never more memory remain of thee, for this bloody unity, in suffering so lamentable a sacrifice."

Sooner had he delivered these speeches, but, incensed with fury, he drew his sword, and parted the image of Diana into two pieces; protesting to ruin the monastery within whose walls the device of this bloody sacrifice was concluded.

The sorrow and extreme grief of the Roman emperor so affected for the murder of his daughter, that he fell to the ground in a senseless swoon, and was carried by certain of his knights half-dead with grief home to his palace, where he lay speechless for the space of thirty days.

The emperor had a son, as valiant in arms as any born except St. Anthony. This young prince, whose name was Lucius, seeing his sister's death, and by what was committed, he presently intended, with a train

of one hundred armed knights, which continually attended upon his person, to assail the discontented champions, and by force of arms to revenge his sister's death.

This resolution so encouraged the Roman knights, that betwixt these two companies began as terrible a battle as ever was fought by any knights; the fierceness of their blows so exceeded the one side against the other, that they did resound echoes which yielded a terrible noise in the neighbouring woods.

This battle did continue betwixt them both sharp and fierce for the space of two hours, by which time the valour of the incensed champions so prevailed, that most of the Roman knights were discomfited and slain: some had their heads parted from their shoulders, some had their arms and legs lopped off, and some lay breathless, waiting in their own blood; in which encounter many a Roman lady lost her husband, many a widow was bereaved of a son, and many a child left fatherless, to the great sorrow of the whole country.

But when the valiant young prince of Rome saw his knights discomfited, and he left alone to withstand so many noble champions, he presently set spurs to his horse, and fled from them.

After whom the champions would not pursue, accounting it no glory to triumph in the overthrow of a single knight, but remained still by the scaffold, where they buried the sacrificed virgin, under a marble stone close by the monastery wall: which being done to their content, St. George engraved this epitaph upon the same stone with the point of his dagger, which was in the manner following:

Under this marble stone interr'd doth lie,
Luckless Lucina, yet of beauty bright;
Who to maintain her spotless chastity
Against th' assailement of an English knight,
Upon a blade her tender breast she cast,
A bloody offering to Diana chaste.

So when he had written this epitaph, the Christian champions mounted upon their swift-footed steeds, and bade adieu to the unhappy confines of Italy, hoping to find better fortunes in other countries. In which travel we will leave them for a time, and speak of the prince of Rome, who

after the discomfiture of the Roman knights fled from the warlike champions. After which, he traversed along by the river Tybris, filling all places with his melancholy passions, until such time as he entered into a thick grove; wherein he purposed to rest his weary limbs, and lament his misfortunes. After he had in this solitary place unlaced his helmet, he cast up his wretched eyes unto the skies, and said:

"O you fatal torches of the elements, why are you not clad in mournful habiliments, to cloak my wandering steps in eternal darkness? Or shall I be made a scorn in Rome for my cowardice? Or shall I return and accompany my Roman friends in death, whose blood methinks I see sprinkled about the fields of Italy? Methinks I hear their bleeding souls fill each corner of the earth with my base flight: therefore will I not live to be termed a fearful coward, but die courageously by my own hands; whereby those accursed champions shall not obtain the conquest of my death, nor triumph in my fall."

This being said, he drew out his dagger, and clave his heart asunder. The news of whose death being soon brought to his father's ears, he interred his body with his sister Lucina's, and erected over them a stately chapel, wherein the nuns and ceremonious monks, during all their lives, sung dirges for his children's souls.

After this, the emperor made proclamation through all his dominions, that if any knight were so hardy as to travel in pursuit after the English champion, and by force of arms to bring him back, or deliver his head unto the emperor, he should not only be held in great estimation through the land, but receive the government of the empire after his decease: which rich proffer so encouraged the minds of many adventurous knights, that they went from sundry provinces in the pursuit of St. George; but their attempts were all in vain.

CHAP. XVI.

IN the eastern parts of the world the fame and valiant deeds of the champions of Christendom were noised, with their heroical acts and feats of arms, naming them the *mirror of nobility*, and the types of bright honour. All kings

and princes, to whose ears the report of their valours was known, desired much to behold their noble personages. And when the emperor of Grecia, keeping then his court in the city of Constantinople, heard of their mighty and valiant deeds, he thirsted after their sights, and his mind could never be satisfied with content until such time as he had devised a means to train them unto his court, not only that he might enjoy the benefit of their companies, but that he might have his court honoured with the presence of so renowned knights; and therefore in this manner it was accomplished.

The emperor dispatched messengers into divers parts of the world, and gave them in charge to publish, throughout every country and province as they went, of an honourable tournament, that should be held in the city of Constantinople, within six months following; thereby to accomplish his intent, and to bring the Christian champions, whose company he so much desired, unto his court.

This charge of the Grecian emperor, as he commanded, was speedily performed with such diligence, that in a short time it came to the ears of the Christian knights, as they travelled betwixt the provinces of Asia and Africa, who, at the time appointed, came in great pomp to Constantinople to furnish forth the honourable triumphs.

At the fame thereof likewise resorted thither a great number of knights of great valour and strength; among whom were the prince of Argier with a goodly company of noble persons, and the prince of Fez with many well-portioned knights; likewise came thither the king of Arragon in great state; and with no less majesty came the king of Sicilia, and a brother of his who were both giants. Many other brave and valiant knights came thither to honour the Grecian emperor. And as they came to honour the triumphs, so likewise they came to prove their fortitudes, and to get fame and name, and the praise that belongeth to adventurous knights. It was supposed of all the company that the king of Sicilia would gain by his prowess the victory from the rest, for that he was a giant of very big limb although his brother was taken to be the more furious knight who determined it not to be just that his brother should have the honour and praise from all the knights that came;—*it fell out otherwise as hereafter you shall hear.*

For when the day of tournament was come, all the ladies and damsels put themselves in places to behold the justing, and attired themselves in the greatest bravery that they could devise, and the great court swarmed with people that came thither to behold the triumphant tournament.

What shall I say here of the emperor's daughter, the fair Alcida, who sat glittering in rich ornaments amongst the other ladies, like unto Phoebus in the crystal firmament? When the emperor was seated upon the imperial throne, under a tent of green velvet, the knights began to enter into the lists; and he that first entered was the king of Arabia, mounted upon a very fair and well-adorned courser. He was armed with black armour all bespotted with silver knobs, and he brought with him fifty knights apparelled with the same livery: and thus with great majesty he rode about the palace, making great obeisance unto all the honourable ladies and damsels.

After him entered the Pagan knight who was lord of Syria, armed with armour of lion's colour, accompanied with a hundred knights all apparelled in velvet of the same colour, and passed round about the palace, shewing unto the ladies great friendship and courtesy, as the other did.

Which being done, he beheld the king of Arabia tarrying to receive him at the just; and the trumpets began to sound, giving them to understand that they must prepare themselves ready to the encounter; whereto these two knights were nothing unwilling, but spurred their coursers with great fury, and closed together with courageous valour. The king of Arabia most strongly made his encounter, and struck the Pagan without missing, upon his breast; but the Pagan at the next race struck him so surely with his lance, that he heaved him out of his saddle, and he fell presently to the ground: after which the Pagan knight rode up and down with great pride and gladness.

The Arabian king being thus overthrown, there entered into the lists the king of Argier, armed with no other furniture but with silver mail, and a breastplate of bright steel before his breast: his pomp and pride exceeded all the knights that were then present: but yet to small purpose his pride and arrogance served; for at the first encounter he was overthrown to the ground. In like sort did that

Pagan use fifteen other knights of fifteen provinces, to the great amazement of the emperor and all the assembly.

During all these valiant encounters, St. George, with the other Christian champions, stood afar off upon a high gallery beholding them, intending not as yet to be seen in the tilt.

But now this valiant Pagan, after he had rode about the courses up and down the place, and seeing none entered the tilt-yard, he thought to bear all the fame and honour away for that day. But at the same instant there entered the noble-minded prince of Fez, being for courage the only prince of his country. He was a marvellous well-proportioned knight, and was armed all in white armour, wrought with excellent knots of gold; and he brought in his company a hundred knights, all attired in white satin; and riding about the place, he shewed his obeisance unto the emperor, and to all the ladies; and thereupon the trumpets began to sound. At the noise whereof the two knights spurred their coursers and made their encounters so strong, and with such great fury, that the proud Pagan was cast to the ground, and so departed the lists with great dishonour.

Straightway entered the brave king of Sicilia, who was armed in a glittering corslet of very fine steel, and was mounted upon a mighty and strong courser; and brought in his company two hundred knights, all apparelled with cloth of gold, having every one a several instrument of music in his hand, sounding thereon a most delightful melody.

And after the Sicilian king had made his accustomed compass and courtesy in the place, he locked down his beaver, and put himself in readiness to fight. When the sign was given by the chief herald at arms, they spurred their horses, and made their encounters so valiantly, that the first race they made their lances shivered in the air, and the pieces thereof scattered abroad like aspen leaves in a whirlwind. At the second course, the young prince of Fez was carried over his horse's buttocks, and the saddle with him between his legs; which was a great grief unto the emperor and all the company, for he was well-beloved of them all, and held for a knight of great estimation.

The Sicilian king grew proud at the prince of Fez's overthrow, and was so enraged and furious, that in a small time he left not a knight remaining on horseback in the saddle.



that durst attempt to fight with him ; but every one, of what country or nation soever, he unhorsed in the attempt : so that there was no question, among either nobles or the multitude, but that unto him the undoubted honour of the victory and triumph would be attributed.

But being in this arrogant pride, he heard a great noise, in the manner of a tumult, drawing near, which was the occasion that he stood still ; and expecting some strange accident, and looking about what it should be, he beheld St. George entering the lists, as then come from the gallery ; he was armed with strong armour all of purple, full of golden stars ; and before him rode the champions of France, Italy, Spain, and Scotland, all on stately coursers, bearing in their hands four silken streamers of four several colours ; and there followed him the champion of Wales, carrying in his shield, whereon was portrayed a golden lion in a sable field ; and the champion of Ireland likewise carried his spear, being of knotty ash, strongly bound about with plates of steel.

When St. George had passed by the royal seat whereon the emperor sat, in whose company were many princes, he rode along by the other side, where Alcida the emperor's dear daughter sat, amongst many gallant ladies and fair damsels, richly apparelled in a vesture of gold ; to whom he veiled his bonnet, shewing them the courtesy of a knight ; and so passed by Alcida, who at the sight of this noble champion could not refrain herself, but with a high and bold voice she said unto the emperor :

"Most mighty emperor, and my royal father, this is the knight in whose power and strength all Christendom do put their fortunes, and this is he whom the whole world admires, for his chivalry."

Which words of the lovely princess although St. George heard them very well, yet passed he on as though he had heard nothing. Now when he was come before the face of his adversary, he took his shield and spear, and prepared himself in readiness to just ; and so being both provided, the umpets began to sound ; whereat with great fury these two warlike knights met together, and neither of them missed their blows at their encounter ; but yet, by reason that St. George had a desire to extol his fame, and to make his name sound through the world, he struck the giant such a

little advanced.

After this, many princes proved their advent
the English champion, and every knight that
estimation fought with him, but with ease b
them all, in less than the space of two hours.
the day drew to an end, there entered the list
and mighty giant, brother to the Sicilian king, wi
great spear in his hand, whose glimmering p
glittered through all the court. He brought w
only one squire, attired in silver mail, bringing
another lance.

So this furious giant, without any care or c
unto the emperor, or any of his knights there
tered the place; which being done, the squire
the other spear went unto the English champi

"Sir knight, yonder brave and valiant gi
and master, doth send unto thee this warli
therewithal he willeth thee to defend thyse
most of thy power and strength, for he hath
sun-set to be either lord of thy fortunes, or a
prowess; and likewise saith, that he doth
tournament. but also challenge th



At that time he was very nigh the place where the emperor sat, who heard the answer which the English knight made unto the squire, and was much displeased that it in such sort would defy St. George, without any reason. But it was no time as then to speak, but to keep and to mark what event came to his great pride and arrogancy.

At this time the two warriors, mounted upon their steeds, began the sign to be made by the trumpets; which being they set forward their coursers, with their spears in hand, with so great fury and desire, the one to unhorse the other, that they both failed in their encounter. The knight who was very strong and proud, when he saw that he missed his intent, returned against St. George, carrying his spear upon his shoulder; and coming nigh unto him, suddenly, before he could clear himself, he struck him a mighty blow upon his corslet, that his staff brake in by reason of the fineness of his armour, and made the English knight to double his body backwards upon his crupper. But when he saw the great villany that he used against him, his anger increased very much; taking his spear in the same sort, he went towards him and said:

Thou furious and proud beast, thou scorn of nature, worthy my to true knighthood, thinkest thou for to entrap me cheerously, and to gore me at unawares like a savage? Know, as I am a Christian knight, if my knotty staff have good success, I will revenge me on thy incite-

ment. In saying this, he struck him so furiously on the back that the spear passed through the giant's body, and he fell forth at his back, whereby he fell down dead to the ground.

All that were present were very much amazed, and wondered greatly at the strength and force of the knight, accounting him the fortunatest knight that ever was in lance, and the very pattern of true nobility.

At this time the golden sun had finished his course, having set above the horizon but his glittering beams: whereby the king of the tournament commanded, with sound of trumpet, that the justs should cease, and make an end for that day.

The emperor descended from the imperial throne into the hall, and the king of the tournament, with all the

the tilting place, where all the knights and gentlemen were, for to receive the noble champion of England, and desired him that he would go with them into his palace, there to receive all honours due unto a knight of such desert. To which he could not make any denial, but most willingly consented. After this the emperor's daughter, in company of many courtly virgins, likewise descended from her place; where Alcida bestowed upon St. George her glove, which he wore for her favour many a day after in his surcoat.

The other six Christian champions, although they merited no honour by this tournament, because they did not try their adventures therein, yet obtained they such good liking among the Grecian ladies, that every one had his mistress: and in their presence they long time fixed their chief delights: where we must leave the champions in the emperor's court for a time, and return to St. George's sons, travelling the world to seek out adventures.

CHAP. XVII.

THIS renowned emperor, within whose court the Christian champions made their abode, of late years had a son named Pollemus, in all virtues and knightly demeanours equal with any living. This prince in his youth fell in love with a maiden of mean parentage, but in beauty and other precious gifts of nature most excellent.

This Dulcippa (for so she was called), being but daughter to a country gentleman, was restrained from the emperor's court, and denied the sight of her beloved Pollemus; and he forbidden to set his affection so low, upon the displeasure of the emperor his father: for he being the son of so mighty a potentate, and she the daughter of so mean a gentleman, it was thought to be a match unfit and disagreeable to the laws of the country; and therefore they could not be suffered to manifest their loves as they would, but were constrained by stealth to enjoy each other's company.

Upon a time these two lovers concluded to meet together in a valley betwixt two hills, in distance from the emperor's court about three miles, where they might in secret unite and fix both their hearts in one knot of true love, and to

event the determination of their parents, that so unkindly ought to cross them. And when the appointed day grew, Dulcippa arose, and attired herself in costly apparel, as though she had been going to perform the nuptial ceremonies; and in this manner entered she the valley, at such time as the sun began to appear out of his golden horizon; likewise the calm western winds did very sweetly blow on the green leaves, and made a delicate harmony at such time as the fairest Dulcippa approached the place of her appointed meeting.

But when she found not prince Pollemus present, she determined to spend the time away till he came in trimming her golden hair, and decking her delicate body. So sitting down upon a green bank, under the shadow of a myrtle tree, she pulled a golden caul from her head, wherein her hair was wrapped, and taking out an ivory comb she began to comb her hair.

But now mark, gentle reader, how frowning Fortune crossed her desires, and changed her wished joys into unexpected sorrows; for as she sat, there fortunately came wandering by an inhuman tyrant, surnamed the knight with two heads, who was a ravisher of virgins, an oppressor of infants, and an utter enemy to virtuous ladies and strange availing knights. This tyrant was bodied like unto a man, it covered all over with locks of hair: he had two heads, two mouths, and four eyes, but all red as blood. Which damned creature presently ran unto the virgin, and caught her up under his arms, and carried her away over the mountain into another country, where he intended to torment her, as you shall hear more at large hereafter.

But now return we to prince Pollemus, who at the time appointed likewise prepared to meet his betrothed love; it removing to the place, he found nothing but a silver scarf, which Dulcippa had let fall through the fearful fright she took at the sight of the two-headed knight.

No sooner found he her scarf but he was oppressed extremely with sorrow, fearing Dulcippa was murdered by some inhuman means, and had left her scarf as a token that he infringed not her promise, but performed it to the loss of her own life. Therefore taking it up, and putting it next his heart, he breathed forth this woful lamentation:

"Here rest thou near unto my true loving heart, thou

precious token and remembrance of my dearest lady, never to be hence removed till such time as my eyes may either behold her body, or my ears hear certain news of her untimely death, that I may in death consort with her. And for her sake I vow to travel through the world, as far as ever golden Phoebus lends his light, filling each corner of the earth with clamours of her name, and make the elements resound with my lamentation."

In which resolution he returned home to the emperor his father's palace, dissembling his grief in such manner, that none could such suspect his sorrows, nor the strange accident that unto beauteous Dulcippa had happened.

And so upon a day, as he was meditating with himself, seeing the small comfort that he took in the court, considering the want of her presence whom he so much desired, he determined in great secrecy, as soon as it was possible, to depart the court. Which determination he straightways put in practice, and took out of the emperor's armoury, very secretly, an exceeding good corslet which was all russet, and enamelled with black, and embroidered round about with a gilded edge, very curiously and artificially graven and carved. Also he took a shield of the same making, saving that it was not graven as the armour was; and commanded a young gentleman, that was son to an ancient knight of Constantinople, of a good disposition and hardy, that he should keep them safely, and gave him to understand of his determined intent.

Although it grieved the young man very much, yet for all that, seeing the great friendship that he used towards him, in uttering his secrets unto him before any other, without replying to the contrary, he very diligently took the armour, and hid it, till he found convenient time to put it into a ship very secretly. Likewise he put into the same ship two of the best horses which the emperor had; and forthwith he gave the prince to understand, that all things were then in a readiness, and in good order. Pollemus, dissembling with the accustomed sorrow that he used, withdrew himself into his chamber, till such time as the night came. When it was come, he made himself ready with his apparel; and when all the people of the court were at their rest, he alone with his page, who was named *Mercurio*, departed the palace, and went to the wars.

His page did call the mariners of the ship, who straightway brought unto them their boat, into which they entered and went straight aboard. And being therein, he commanded them to weigh anchor, hoist up their sails, and to commit themselves to the mercy of the waters. As he commanded, all was done; and so in short time they found themselves far from the sight of any land.

But when the emperor his father understood of his secret departure, the lamentation which he made was very much; and he commanded his knights to go unto the sea-side, to know if there were any ship that departed that night; and when it was told them that there was a bark that heaved anchor, and hoisted sail, they supposed straightway that the prince was gone away.

I cannot here declare the great grief and sorrow which the emperor felt for the absence of his son. But when the departure of Pollemus was noised through all Constantinople, all sports and feasts ceased, and all the people of the country were overcome with a general sorrow.

So Pollemus sailed through the deep seas three days and three nights, with a very fair and prosperous wind. The fourth day, in the evening, being calm, and no wind at all, the mariners went to take their rests, some on the poop, and some on the foreship, for to ease their wearied bodies. The prince, who sat upon the poop of the ship, asked his page for his lute, which straightway was given him, and he sung so sweetly, that it seemed to be a most heavenly melody; and being in this sweet music, he heard a very lamentable cry, as it were of a woman; and leaving his delicate music, he gave a listening attentive ear to hearken what this sorrowful creature said; and by reason of the stillness of the night, he might easily hear as it were a woman uttering these words: "It will little profit thee, thou cruel tyrant, this thy bold hardness, for that I am beloved of so worthy a knight as will undoubtedly revenge this tyrannous cruelty proffered me."

Then he heard another voice, which seemed to answer:

"Now I have thee in my power there is no human creature of strength able enough to deliver or redeem thee from the torments that, in my determination, I have purposed thou shalt endure."

Pollemus could hear no more, by reason that the bark wherein they were passed by so swiftly; but he supposed it his lady's voice which he heard, and that she was cr

ried by force away. So laying down his lute, he fall into a great thought, and was very heavy and ful, in that he knew not how to adventure for her r

Being in this cogitation, he returned to his page, asleep, and struck him with his foot, and awaked him :

"What, didst thou not hear the great lamentation lady Dulcippa made (as to me it seemed), being in bark that is passed by, and gone forwards along the To which the page Mercutio answered nothing, for still in a sound sleep. To whom the prince called saying : " Arise, I say ; bring forth my armour ; e the mariners, that they may launch their boat into for by the omnipotent Jupiter I swear, that I will called the son of my father if I do suffer such violence done against my love, and not procure with strength to revenge the same."

Mercutio would have replied unto him, but the countenance of the prince would not give him leave, once to look upon his face ; so he brought forth his and buckled it on.

In the mean time the mariners had launched the into the sea ; whereinto he leaped with a hasty fury carried with him his page, and four of the mariners row the bark, and he commanded them to take the towards the other company that passed by them.

So they laboured all the night, till such time as Phœbus with his glittering beams gave unto them such that they might discover and see the other bark, a somewhat afar off.

So they laboured with great courage till two part day was spent ; at which time they saw come after galley, which was rowed with eight oars upon a side it made so great speed, that in a trice they were with and he saw that there were in her three knights, in armour ; to whom Pollemus called with a loud voice : " Most courteous knights, I request you to take into your galley, that being in her, I may the better accomplish my desire."

The knights which were in the galley passed by the *without making* any answer, but rather shewed themselves *made but little account* of him. These three knights *the sons of* the English champion, who departed fr

OF CHRISTENDOM.

father in his journey towards Babylon to set the king again in his kingdom.

But now to follow our history : The prince of Constantinople, seeing the little account they made of him, with the great anger and fury that he received, he took an oar in one hand, and with such strength he struck the water, that he made the slothful bark to fly, and laboured so sore at the oars, that in a trice they were equal with the galley.

So leaving the oars, with a light leap he put himself into the galley, with his helmet on and his shield at his shoulder ; and being within, he said, " Now shall you do that by force, which before you would not yield unto."

This being said, one of St. George's sons took the encounter in hand, thinking it a blemish to the honour of knight-hood by multitudes to assail him. So the two brave knights, without any advantage of one another, made their encounters so valiantly, that it was a wonder to the beholders. The prince of Constantinople struck the English knight such a furious blow, that he made him decline his head to his breast, and forced him to recoil backwards two or three steps ; but he came quickly again to himself, and returned him so mighty a blow upon his helmet, that he made his teeth chatter in his head.

With great policy and strength they endured the bickering all day, and when they saw the dark night come upon them they strove with more courage and strength to finish their battle.

The prince of Constantinople, puffing and blowing like an enraged bull, lifted up his sword with both his hands, and discharged it so strongly upon his enemy, that by force he made him fall to the ground, and therewith offered to pull his helmet from his head. But when the English knight saw himself in that sort, he threw his shield from him, and very strongly caught the other about the neck, and held him fast ; so that betwixt them began a terrible wrestling, tumbling, and wallowing up and down the galley.

At this time the night began to be very dark, wherefore they called for lights, which presently were brought them the mariners : in the mean time these knights somewhat refreshed themselves, although it was not much. So when lights were brought, they returned to their old combat with new force and strength.

"O heavens," said Pollemus, "I cannot believe to the contrary but that this is Mars the god of war, that doth contend in a battle with me; and for the great envy he bears against me, he goeth about to dishonour me." And with these words they thickened their blows with great desperation. And though this last assault continued more than two hours, yet neither of them did faint; but at last, they both together lifted up their swords, and charged them together, the one upon the other's helmet, with so great strength, that both of them fell down upon the hatches without any remembrance.

The rest, that looked upon them, did verily believe they were both dead, by reason of the abundance of blood which came forth from their visors; but quickly it was perceived that there was some hope of life in them. Then presently there was an agreement made betwixt the knights of the galley and mariners of the bark, that they should join together and travel whither fortune should conduct them. In this order carried they these two knights without any remembrance.

But when the prince of Constantinople came to himself, with a loud voice he said: "O Love, is it possible to be true that I am overthrown in this first encounter and assault of my knighthood? Here I curse the day of my creation, and the hour when first I merited the name of knight: henceforth I'll bury all my honours in disgrace, and spend the remnant of my life in base cowardice." And in speaking these words, he cast his eye aside, and beheld the English knight as one newly risen from a trance, who likewise breathed forth these discontented speeches: "O unhappy son of St. George! now a coward and of little valour, I know not how thou canst name thyself to be the son of the valiantest knight in the world, for that thou hast lost thy honour in this last assault."

This being said, the two weary knights concluded a peace betwixt them, and revealed to each other their names, and wherefore they adventured to travel; which when it was known, they sailed forward that way the sorrowful woman went. So in this sort they travelled all the rest of the night *that remained*, till such time as the day began to clear, and *straightway* they descried land; to which place with great *haste* they rowed.

And coming to land, they found no used way, but one narrow path ; wherein they had not travelled long when they met with a poor single countryman, with a new-ground hatchet in his hand, and he was going to cut some fire-wood off the high and broad spreading trees ; and of whom they demanded what country and land it was. " This country," said he, " is called Armenia ; but yet, most courteous knights, you must pardon me, for that I do request you to return again, and proceed no farther, if you do esteem your lives ; for in going this way there is nothing to be had but death : for the lord of this country is a furious monster, called the Two-headed Knight, and he is so furious in his tyranny, that never any stranger could as yet escape out of his hands alive ; and for proof of his cruelty, no longer than yesterday he brought hither a lady prisoner, who, at her first coming on shore, he whipped and beat in such sort, that it would make the most tyrannous tyrant that is to relent and pity her distress, swearing that every day he would so torment her, till her life and body made their separation."

Pollemus, the prince of Constantinople, was very attentive to the old man's words, thinking the lady to be his Dulcippa, after whom he travelled. The grief he received at this report struck such a terror to his heart, that he fell into a swoon, and was not able to go any farther : but St. George's sons encouraged him, and protested, by the honour of their knighthoods, never to forsake his company, till they saw his lady delivered from her torments, and he safely conducted home into his own country.

So travelling with this resolution, the night came on, and it was so dark, that they were constrained to seek some convenient place to take their rest ; and laying themselves down under a broad-branched oak tree, they passed the night, pondering in their minds a thousand imaginations.

When the morning was come, and that the diamond of heaven began to glitter with his beams upon the mountain tops, these martial knights were not slothful, but rose up and followed their journey.

After this, they had travelled scarce half a mile, when they heard a pitiful lamentation of a woman : so they staid to hear from whence that lamentable noise should come. And presently, afar off, they beheld a high pillar of stone, out of which there came forth a spout of clear water ; and

thereat was bound a woman, naked ; her back fastened to the pillar, her arms backwards embracing it, with her hands fast bound behind her.

These warlike knights laced on their helmets, and came unto the place where she was ; but when the prince of Constantinople saw her, he presently knew her to be his lady and lovely mistress : for by reason of the coldness of the night, and with her great lamentation and weeping, she was so full of sorrows and affliction, that she could scarce speak. Likewise the prince's heart so yearned at the sight of his unhappy lady, that he could not look upon her for weeping.

But yet at last, with a sorrowful sigh he said, " O cruel hands, is it possible that there should remain in you so much mischief, that whereas there is such great beauty and fairness you should use such baseness and villany ! She doth more deserve to be loved and served, than to be in this sort so evil entreated."

This woful prince with much sorrow beheld her white skin and back bespotted with blood ; and taking a cloak from one of the mariners, he threw it upon her, and covered her body, and took her in his arms, whilst the other knights unbound her.

This unhappy lady never felt nor knew what was done unto her, till such time as she was loosed from those bands, and in the arms of her lover ; but yet she thought that she had been in the arms of the Two-headed Knight, and therefore she gave a terrible sigh, saying : " O Pollemus, my true betrothed husband, where art thou now, that thou comest not to succour me," and therewith ceased her speeches.

The prince, hearing these words, would have answered her, but he was disturbed by hearing a great noise of a horse, which seemed to be in the woods amongst the trees. The rest of the knights, intending to see what it should be, left the lady lying upon the green grass, in the keeping of prince Pollemus and the mariners, and St. George's sons went towards the place where they heard that rushing noise ; and as they diligently looked about them, they beheld the two-headed monster, mounted upon a furious palfrey, who returned to see if the lady was alive, for to torment her anew.

But when he came to the pillar, and saw not the lady,

with an ireful look he cast his eyes, looking round about him on every side; and at last he saw the three knights coming towards him with a slow pace, and how the lady was untied from the pillar where he left her, and in the arms of another knight, making her sorrowful complaint.

The Two-headed Knight, seeing them in this order, with great wrath came riding towards them; and when he was near them, he said: "Fond knights, what wretched folly and madness hath bewitched you, that without any leave you have adventured to untie the lady from the pillar where I left her? Or come you to offer up your blood in sacrifice upon my falchion?" To whom one of the three valiant brothers answered and said: "We be knights of a strange country, that at the sorrowful complaint of this lady arrived at this place; and seeing her to be a beautiful woman, and without any desert to be thus evil entreated, it moved us to put our persons in adventure against them that will seem farther to misuse her."

In the mean time that the knight was speaking these words, the ugly deformed monster beheld him very precisely, knitting his brows with the great anger he had received in hearing his speeches; and with such great fury he spurred his monstrous beast, that he made him give so mighty a leap, that he had almost fallen on the English knight; who with great lightness did deliver himself: and so, drawing out his sword, he would have struck him, but the beast passed by with so great swiftness that he could not reach him.

Here began as terrible a battle, between the Two-headed Knight and St. George's sons, as ever was fought by any knights; their mighty blows seemed to rattle in the elements like a terrible thunder, and their swords to strike sparkling fire in such abundance, as though it had been from a smith's anvil.

During this conflict, the English knights were so grievously wounded, that all their bright armour was stained with a bloody gore, and their helmets bruised with the terrible strokes of the monster's falchion; whereat they grew so enraged, that one of them struck an overthwart blow with his trusty sword upon his knee; and by reason that his armour was not very good, he cut it clean asunder, so that leg and all fell to the ground, and the Two-headed

Knight fell on the other side to the earth, and with great roaring he began to rage and stare like a beast, and to blaspheme against the Fates for this his sudden mishap.

The other two brethren, seeing this, presently cut off his two heads.

There was another knight that came with this monster, who, when he saw all that had passed, with great fear returned the way from whence he came.

These victorious conquerors, when they saw that they were delivered from the tyrant's cruelty, with joyful hearts they departed with conquest to the prince of Constantinople, where they left him comforting his distressed lady.

So when they were all together, they commanded the mariners to provide them somewhat to eat, for that they had great need thereof; who presently prepared it, for that continually they bore their provision about them. Of this banquet the knights were very glad, and rejoiced much at that which they had achieved, and commanded that the lady should be very well looked to, and healed of her harm received.

At the end of three days, when the princely lady had recovered health, they left the country of Armenia, and departed back to the seas, where they had left their ships lying at road, that tarried there until their coming. Whereinto they had no sooner entered, but the mariners hoisted sail, and took their way towards Constantinople, as the knights commanded. The wind served them so prosperously, that within a small time they arrived in Greece, and landed within two days' journey of the court, which lay then about a mile from Constantinople.

Being on land, the prince Pollemus consulted with St. George's three sons what course were best to be taken for their proceeding in the court: "For," saith he, "unless I may with the emperor my father's consent enjoy my dearest Dulcippa, I will live unknown in her company, rather than delight in the heritage of ten such empires."

At last they concluded that the lady should be covered with a black veil from being known, that Pollemus should appear in black arms, and the other knights be attired suitably, and that all should ride together; which accordingly *they did*, and about ten in the morning entered the palace where they found the emperor, and the seven champi

with many other princes, in the great hall; to whom one of St. George's sons thus spake:

"Great emperor, and noble knights, this knight, that leadeth the lady, hath long loved her; in their births there is great difference, so that their parents crossed their affections; for him she hath endured much sorrow, and for her he will and hath suffered many hazards. His coming thus to your court is to this end, to approve her the only deserving lady in the world, himself the faithfullest knight, against all knights whatsoever; which, with your imperial leave, he, myself, and these two my associates, will maintain; desiring your majesty to give judgment as we shall deserve."

The emperor condescended; and on the green before the palace, those four overthrew more than four hundred knights: so that St. George and three other of the champions entered the lists, and ran three violent courses against the black knights, without moving them; who never suffered the points of their spears to touch the armour of the champions; which the emperor perceiving, guessed them to be of acquaintance: wherefore, giving judgment that the knight should possess his lady, at his request they discovered themselves.

To describe the delightful comfort that the English champion took in the presence of his children, and the joy that the emperor received at the return of his lost son, requires more art and eloquence than my tired senses can afford: I am therefore here forced to leave the flower of chivalry in the city of Constantinople.

Of whose following adventures I will at large discourse hereafter; and how all these famous champions came to their deaths, and for what cause they were called the Seven Saints of Christendom.

CHAP. XVIII.

HERE must you suppose, gentle readers, that Time had run a long race before these aforesaid thrice-honoured champions, had purchased so many victories: and being now wearied with age, Death, with his gloomy countenance, began to challenge an end of all their worldly achievement:

came at last to the country of Ireland, but in former times Hibernia; where martial achievements, he offered up, in the Redeemer, devout orisons, daily making petition to the Deity of Glory, in behalf of his desired peace, more delightful to his aged heart, than all his former triumphs. And now, willing to bid farewell to his martial career, he desired an enclosure to be made, and to be walled about with a stony wall from the sight of all earthly objects. His request of this holy father (now no soldier, but a hermit in peace) the inhabitants condescended, and built him a square house of stone, without either window or door, but a little hole to receive his food in; wherein he lived up, never to be seen more alive by the eyes of men. Also appointing divers of the country to bring him at convenient times food to maintain nature, they did so. At the aforesaid hole, which they thought fit to leave, more than common charity, and he, the more to honour to their country, by the severe and solitary life he put himself to. Thus lived he the servant of God day and night kneeling on the bare ground, till he had taken his departure, and as o

picture, his attendants, as their usual custom was, came with food to relieve him, and calling at the hole where he had wont to receive it, they heard nothing but empty air blowing in and out, which made them conjecture presently that death had prevailed, and the fatal sisters had finished up their labours. So calling together more company, they made an entrance thereinto; and finding what had happened, by a common consent of the whole kingdom they pulled down the aforesaid house or tower, and in the same place builded a most sumptuous chapel, calling it St. Patrick's Chapel; and in the place where this holy father had buried himself, they likewise erected a monument of much richness, framed upon pillars of pure gold, beautified with many artificial sights, most pleasant to behold; whereunto for many years after resorted distressed people, such as were commonly molested with loathsome diseases; where making their orisons at St. Patrick's tomb, they found help, and were restored to their former healths.

By which means the name of St. Patrick is grown so famous through the world, that to this day he is entituled one of our Christian champions, and the saint for Ireland; where, in remembrance of him, and of his honourable achievements done in his lifetime, the Irishmen, as well in England as in that country, do as yet, in honour of his name, keep one day in the year a festival, wearing upon their hats each of them a cross of red silk, in token of his many adventures under the Christian cross, as you have heard in the former history at large discoursed: whose noble deeds, both in life and death, we will leave sleeping with him in the grave, and speak of our next renowned tragedy, which Heaven and Fate had allotted St. David, the champion for Wales, at that time entituled Cambro-Britannus.

CHAP. XIX.

SOME months after the departure of St. Patrick from the city of Constantinople, St. David, having a heart still fired with fame, thirsted even to his dying day for honourable achievements; and although age and time had almo

wearied him away, yet would he once more make his adventure in the field of Mars, and seal up his honours in the records of a noble farewell.

So upon a morning, framing himself for a knightly enterprise, he took his leave of the other champions, and all alone, well mounted upon a lusty courser, furnished with sufficient habiliments, he began a journey home towards his own country, accounting that his best joy and the soil of his most comfort.

But long had he not travelled, ere he heard of the distresses thereof; how Wales was beset with a people of a savage nature, thirsting for blood, and the ruin of that brave kingdom; and how that many battles had been fought to the disparagement of Christian knighthood. Whereupon arming himself with true resolution, he went forward with a courageous mind, either to redeem the fame, or to lose his best blood in the honour of the adventure.

Whereupon all the way as he travelled, he drew into his aid and assistance all the best knights he could find, of any nation whatsoever, giving them promises of noble rewards, and entertainment as befitted so worthy a fellowship. By this means, before he came upon the borders of Wales he had gathered together the number of five hundred knights, of such noble resolutions, that all Christendom could not afford better, the Seven Champions excepted. And these, all well furnished for battle, entered the country; where they found many towns unpeopled, gallant houses subverted, monasteries defaced, cities ruined, fields of corn consumed with fire—yea, every thing so out of order, as if the country had never been inhabited. Whereupon, with a grieved mind, seeing the region of his birth-place so confounded; and nothing but uproars of murder and death sounded in his ears, he summoned his knights together, placing them in battle array to travel high up into the country, for the performance of his desired hopes. But as they marched along with an easy pace, to prevent dangers, there resorted to them people of all ages, both young and old, bitterly complaining of the wrongs thus done unto their country. Where, when they knew him to be the champion of Wales, whom so long they had desired to see, their joys so exceeded, that all former woes were abolished, and they emboldened to *nothing but revenge.*

The rest of the knights that came with St. David, perceiving their forces and numbers to increase, purposed a present onset and to shew themselves before their enemies; who lay encamped amongst the mountains, with such strength and policy that hard it was to make an assailment.

Whereupon the noble champion, being then their general and leader, called his captains together, and with a bold courage said as followeth :

" Now is the time, brave martialists, to be canonized the sons of Fame ; this is the day of dignity or dishonour ; an enterprise to make us ever live, or to end our names in obscurity. Let not chill Fear, the coward's companion, pull us back from the golden throne, where the adventurous soldier sits in glory deservedly. We are to trample in the field of death and dead men's bones, and to buckle with an enemy of great strength, a Pagan's power, that seeks to overrun all Christian kingdoms, and to wash our Cambrian fields with innocent blood. To arms ! I say, brave followers ; I will be the first to give death the onset ; and for my colours or ensign do I wear upon my burgonet, you see, a green leek beset with gold, which shall, if we win the victory, hereafter be an honour unto Wales ; and on this day, being the first of March, be it for ever worn by the Welshmen in remembrance hereof."

Which words were no sooner spoken by the champion, but all the royal army, of every degree and calling, got themselves the like recognizance—which was each of them a green leek upon their hats or beavers, which they wore all the time of the battle ; and by that means the champion's followers were known from the others. This was not long a doing before St. David and his company beheld, descending from the mountains, an army of Pagans, as it seemed numberless ; people of such mighty statures, whose sight might have daunted their noble resolutions, had not the brave champion still animated them with princely encouragements. Time staid not long ere the battles joined ; and the Pagans, with their iron clubs and bats of steel, so laid about them, that had not our Christian army been preserved by miracle, such a slaughter had been made of the champion and the knights that well might have caused the whole world to wonder at.

But the queen of chance so favoured St. David and his

followers, that, what with their nimble lances, keen darts and arrows, shot from their quick bows and Welsh hooks in great abundance (the sun also lying in the Pagans' faces, to their great disadvantage), in a short time the noble champion won a worthy victory. The ground lay all covered with mangled carcasses; the grassy fields changed from green into red colour, with the streams of blood that ran from horse and man thus murdered. A noble policy was it for all our Christians in that battle to wear green looks in their burgonets for their colours; by which they were all known and preserved from the slaughter of one another's swords; only St. David himself excepted, who, being victor, in the highest pride of his glory, was at last vanquished. O unhappy fate, to cut off his honour, that was the only dwelling of Honour! Help me, Melpomene, to bewail his loss, that, having won all, lost his dear life; a life that the whole world might well have miss of. Oh fatal chance! For, coming from the battle, over-heated in blood, so sudden a cold congealed in all his life's members, that he was forced to yield unto Death, to the great grief of all his knights and followers, who for the space of forty days mourned for him in great heaviness, and after attended him unto his grave with much sorrow.

CHAP. XX.

ST. DENIS, being the third in this our pilgrimage of death, was likewise desirous of the sight of his own country, which he had not seen in many years; and purposing a toilsome travel to the same, took leave of the other champions, who were not altogether willing to leave so noble a champion; yet considering the desire of his mind they quickly condescended, wishing him the best welfare of knighthood: and so parting, they to their princely pavilions, and he to his restless journey, as well mounted, and as richly furnished with habiliments of knighthood, as any martialist in all Arabia, in which country he was then. But leaving that place, to satisfy his desires, he travelled day by day towards the kingdom of France, without any adventure worth reporting, till he arrived upon the borders of that fair country that he had so long wished to behold. But now

Now Fate frowned! for there was remaining in the king's favour a knight of St. Michael's order, who never times hearing of the honourable adventures of this champion St. Denis, and thinking him to be a dispa-ent to his knighthood and the rest of that order, con- to betray him, and to bring all his former honours is life to a final overthrow.

ereupon this envious knight of St. Michael goes unto ag (being as then a Pagan prince, one that had no true edge of the Deity), and said: "There was come into agdom a strange knight, a false believer, one that in ould draw the love of his subjects from him to the ip of a strange god; and that, in despite of him and untry, he would establish a falsified opinion; and that re upon his breast the Christian cross; with many things, contrary to the laws of his kingdom."

on these false informations the king grew so enraged, without any more consideration, he caused the good

St. Denis to be attacked in his bedchamber—other- score of the best knights in all France had not been ent to bring him prisoner to the king's presence: before being no sooner come, but with more than human without cause, he adjudged him a speedy death, and tial law, without any farther trial, to receive the same.

good champion St. Denis, even in death having a ble resolution, nothing at all dismayed, and knowing ise to be good, and that he should suffer for the name sweet Redeemer, he most willingly accepted of the udgment, saying: "Most mighty, but yet cruel king, ot but yet this exceeding tyranny will be requited in ge manner. Thy censure I take with much joy, in die for Him, whose colours I have worn from my y; and this my death seals up the obligation of all mforts. And thou, sweet country, where I first took ceive it again, a legacy due unto thee; for this my which here I offer up into thy bosom, is the best gift estow upon thee. Farewell, knighthood; farewell, ble adventures and princely achievements; never is dauntless arm brandish weapon more in honour of ristian cross; for death awaiteth at my back to cut such noble hopes, and I by tyranny am betrayed

."

These speeches being uttered, he was forced to stand silent ; and in the presence of the king, with many hundreds more, was constrained to yield his body to the fatal stroke ; where his head being laid upon the block, was by a base executioner quickly dis severed from the rest of his manly members. Which being no sooner done, and the champion lifeless, but the elements, beset with cloudy exhalations, sent down such a terrible thunderclap, that struck presently dead the knight of St. Michael who accused him, the executioner, with others that were at his attachment. At which fearful spectacle the king himself grew so amazed, that he deemed him to be a blessed creature ; that he had suffered wrongfully ; and that his cause, for which he so willingly rendered up his life, was the true cause which all must have a desire to die in : wherefore instantly, from a Pagan, the king turned Christian, and caused the same to be proclaimed through all his provinces, ordaining churches to be built in remembrance of this great man.

CHAP. XXI.

HERE, gentle reader, with a sad eye prepare to give entertainment to the sorrowful manner of the Spanish champion's death, who by tyranny and cruel dealing of the infidels was likewise made away : for age and time, as upon the former, grew upon him, and so enfeebled his strength, that he was no longer able to manage the adventures of chivalry, nor fight the battles of his Saviour. Wherefore, resolving to spend the remnant of his days in peace, he desired leave likewise to commit his fortunes to the queen of chance ; which, as the others did, he quickly obtained : and so, leaving Constantinople, he put himself to travel towards the country of his first being, not decked in his shining armour, nor mounted on his Spanish gennet, but poor and bare in outward habit, though inwardly furnished with gold and jewels of an inestimable value, which he had sewed up in the patches of a russet gaberdine, the better to travel with. Where, instead of a bright shining cuttle-axe, his pilgrim's staff served him to walk with ; and for his burgonet of glistering steel, he covered his head (now as white as th' down with age) with a hat of gray colour, broached &

bro
gre
ing
I
we
wel
Spa
fou
sun
Jac
Jar
puz
sin
7
suc
hin
sto
pio
cot
kin
vio
che
chu
to
des
she
fie
up
th
it
i'

broad scallop-shell. His princely lodgings were changed to green pastures, and his canopies to the skies' azured covering, where the nightingale and lark told the time's passage.

In which manner travelling many days, giving still as he went to the poor and needy such small pieces of silver as he well could spare, he arrived at last upon the confines of Spain: where, in honour of that God for whom he had fought so many battles, he built up, at his own charge, a sumptuous chapel, to this day bearing the name of St Jaques's chapel (which name Jaques is the same as our James); and, for the maintenance of the said chapel, he purchased divers lands adjoining; and placed choristers to sing day and night therein, Allelujah to his Redeemer.

This celestial gift and glorious custom so prepared, begot such love of the meaner sort of people, that they esteemed him more than a man; with a reverence of such regard bestowed upon him, that the very name of this noble champion won greater admiration than the high tilts of their country's king; who being then a cruel tyrant and proud king, maintaining atheism by his government, grew so envious thereat, that he caused good St. Jaques, with the whole choir of celestial singers, to be closed up together in the chapel which the champion had erected, and so starved them to death. Oh bloody butchery, and inhuman cruelty! A death of more terror than ever was heard of. But, to be short, hunger prevailed, and they died, their bodies putrefied, and in time consumed away to dust and mould; whereupon the Lord, to shew how they died in his favour, and the love of Heaven, inflicted such a light in the chapel, that it shined day and night with such a glorious brightness, as if it had been the glorious palace of the sun: and likewise continually was heard therein (though no creature remaining) such a choir of melodious harmony, as if it had been the sound of celestial music. Which strange pleasures, both to the eyes and ear, bred so great an amazement to the whole country, that all with common consent accused their king for the tyrannous putting to death of these good men, but especially the noble St. Jaques, whom they purposed to hold for their country's saint and champion till the world's dissolution. The proud king, perceiving now his own rashness, and the common hate against him for this deed doing,

took such an inward conceit of grief, that, without taking any food ever after, he languished away and died.

CHAP. XXII.

AFTER all these proceedings, Nature, the common nurse of us all, so wrought in the heart of St. Anthony, the champion for Italy, that he undertook the next magical enterprise; and leaving St. George, with St. Andrew, in the emperor's court of Constantinople, he took his journey towards Italy; and knowing, by the course of nature, that his days were not many, he purposed there to set up his life's rest, and in death to finish up all earthly troubles. So coming, after a long journey, to the city of Rome, where the emperor Domitian kept his court; and the city being then in her chiefest pomp and glory, won great desire in the champion's mind to see the monuments of the same.

So upon the morning, going from his lodgings, he walked up and down the streets with admiration, and fed his eyes with many delightful objects. First, with great wonder he stood gazing upon the monuments that were erected in the honour of all their famous emperors, consuls, orators, and conquerors, things which yielded him great pleasure. The next thing that his eyes delighted in, was the temple of the twelve Sibyls, a most miraculous building: in which temple were all their prophecies enrolled; as also the beginning and ending of the whole catalogue of the heathen gods, as Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Apollo, and such-like, with their manner of worship. The next that he saw was the house of Remus and Romulus, who built Rome; a building of much worthiness. Next unto it stood an ancient prison (an old rotten thing) where the man lay that was condemned to death, and could have no body come to him and succour him but was searched, yet was kept alive a long space by sucking of his daughter's breasts. After this, he saw Pompey's theatre, reputed one of the nine wonders of the world: the emperor Nero's tomb, maintained with disgrace, for the offence he did in setting Rome on fire. To conclude, he spent many days in viewing the martyrs' tombs, and other reliques brought from Jerusalem. Amongst many other delightful

me into a chapel dedicated unto himself, called
 ur of St. Anthony;" wherein were portrayed,
 pictures, the true forms of all the champions of
 , with the stories of all their adventures, com-
 ments, and battles; their imprisonments, dan-
 chantments; all pictured up by enchantments
 aft; whereupon ran a prophecy, that the patron
 d should ever live unconquered, and never em-
 till his eyes were witness of the same portrai-
 h in golden letters were inscribed over the cha-
 entrance. Which when St. Anthony had beheld,
 ; himself to be the man, with a meek mind he
 s own end, and never after departed the chapel,
 d kneeling in the same upon the bare marble,
 orisons of repentance to the Eternal Deity, till
 r had cut off the threads of his old days.

being converted to mouldy earth, the emperor
 to be entombed in the same chapel; and over
 be set a magnificent chair, in which chair, for
 after, the Roman conquerors received their lau-
 of martial victory.

 CHAP. XXIII.

E and St. Andrew were the two last champions
 ogether, and, as it seemed, the dearest love re-
 veen them two; but yet rusty Time with his
 : would needs part them, and break this their
 vship. For the summons of honour so animated
 rt of the Scottish champion, that he burned with
 his native country, and to behold the place of his
 For leaving Constantinople, only honoured with
 e of St. George and his three sons, he travelled
 , till Time and Fate set him happily in the king-
 dland; where having not been for many years
 eceived such entertainment as if he had been the
 peror of the world: for all the streets and pas-
 went were furnished with people of the best re-
 e him a gracious welcome to his native home;
 he king himself, who, for the love and honour be

bore unto his name and knighthood, lodged him in his own palace, and proclaimed for his noble welcome a princely tournament to be holden for the space of fifteen days; in which time all the nobility and martial knights of Scotland performed such well-approved achievements, that neither Greece, Constantinople, Rome, nor Jerusalem, could equal them in the least regard. St. Andrew being now aged, and unapt for such princely encounters, sat as a beholder, ensuring the best deserver, and gave such due commendations as befitted so gallant a company: and for a farewell of such time-honoured pastimes, he desired leave of the king to depart, and to spend the remnant of his life in private contemplations, for the good of his soul, and to wash away, with the water of true penitence, all that blood he had spilt in his travel about the world in the maintenance of knighthood; a request so reasonable, that the king could not refuse but give his consent. So taking leave of his majesty, and the rest of the nobility and knights there present, he departed up to a mountain, far remote from the king's court, under which by nature was erected a cave or hollow vault; wherein he remained for the space of a year, studying divinity and the commands of his Redeemer; Scotland being then a rude and heathenish country, where the common sort of people inhabited; by which means he was much admired, and supposed to be sent from some place unknown, as a messenger to bring them evil tidings: whereupon those misbelieving people, by a common consent (taking him for some subtle conspirer against their Pagan gods, which as then they worshipped) put him secretly to death; and after cutting off his head, in hope of reward bore it to the king, deeming they had done a deed of much deserved commendation: which inhuman cruelty when the king saw, with much grief he lamented the loss of this good man, and with all speed, in revenge of his death, raised a power of his best resolved knights of war, putting every one to the sword, both man, woman, and child, that in any manner consented unto the champion's death: and after, in process of time, appointed a monastery to be built in the same place where he died.

CHAP. XXIV.

Now droops my weary muse, for she is come unto her latest tragedy. St. George is summoned to the bar of Death, where magnificent Honour stands ready to give his name a noble renown to all ensuing ages.

This illustrious champion, when he was left by the other six, in the company of his three sons, Guy, Alexander, and David, strange imaginations day by day possessed his mind, so that he could not rest nor sleep: sometimes supposing his companions were in great distress; other while how they had won the chiefest goal of honour, little needing his knightly service and assistance: sometimes one thing, sometimes another, so molested him, that he must needs make his adventure to follow them.

Whereupon, calling his three sons together, he went to the Grecian emperor, and requested that they might all four depart, with his leave and liking; for knightly adventures had challenged them all to appear in some foreign region where noble achievements were to be performed; but where, and in what country his destiny had not yet revealed to him.

So furnishing them all four in habiliments of shining steel, they left Constantinople, as it were guided by Fate until they came into England, then called Britain, whose chalky cliffs St. George had not seen in twice twelve years: and now coming with a sweet embracement of his native country, he gave his three sons thereinto a most joyful welcome, shewing them, to their great comfort, the brave situation of the towns and cities, and the pleasant prospects of the fields as they passed, until they came within sight of the city of Coventry, where he was born, and received his first being; upon whose glittering pinnacles he no sooner cast his eye-sight, but the inhabitants interrupted his delights with a doleful report, how upon Dunsmore-heath as then remained an infectious dragon, that so annoyed the country that the inhabitants thereabouts could not pass the heath without great danger; and how that fifteen knights of the kingdom had already lost their lives in adventuring to suppress the same. Also giving him to understand of a prophecy, "That a

Christian knight never born of a woman should be the destroyer thereof, and his name in after ages, for accomplishing the adventure, should be held for an eternal honour to the kingdom."

St. George no sooner heard thereof, and what wrongs his native country received by this infectious dragon, than, knowing himself to be the knight, he grew so encouraged, that he purposed presently to put the adventure in trial, and either to free his country from so great danger, or to finish his days in the attempt; so taking leave of his sons, and the rest there present, he rode forward with as noble a spirit as he did in Egypt, when he there combated with the burning dragon.

So coming to the middle of the plain, where his infectious enemy lay couching on the ground in a deep cave, who by a strange instinct of nature knowing his death to draw near, made such a yelling noise, as if the element had burst with thunder, or the earth had shook with a terrible exhalation; and coming from his den, and espying the champion, he ran with such fury against him, as if he would have devoured both man and horse in a moment; but the champion being quick and nimble, gave the dragon such way that he missed him, and with his sting ran full two foot into the earth; but recovering, he returned again with such rage at St. George, that he had almost turned his horse over and over: but that the dragon, having no stay of his strength, fell with his back downward upon the ground, and his feet upward: whereat the champion taking advantage, kept him still down, with his horse standing upon him, fighting as you see in the picture of St. George, with his lance goring him through in divers parts of the body: and withal, contrariwise, the dragon's sting annoyed the good knight in such sort, that the dragon being no sooner slain and weltered in his venomous gore, but St. George likewise took his death's wound by the deep strokes of the dragon's sting, which he received in divers parts of his body, and bled in such abundance, that his strength began to enfeeble and grow weak: yet, retaining the true nobleness of mind, valiantly returned victor to the city of Coventry; where his three sons, with the whole inhabitants, stood without the gates in great royalty to receive him, and to give him the honour that belonged to so worthy a conqueror; who no sooner



before the city, and presented them with the dra-
cad which so long had annoyed the country, but,
th the abundance of blood that issued from his deep
and the long bleeding without stopping the same,
forced in his sons' arms to yield up his breath; for
his three princely sons long lamented, making the
moan that ever was made in any kingdom: and,
hey were so seconded with the grief of the whole
, that all the land, from the king to the shepherd,
l for him for the space of a month: which heavy
ng ended, the king of this country, being a virtuous
le prince, advanced St. George's three sons to noble
first, the eldest of them, named Guy, to be earl of
k, and high chamberlain of his household: the next,
Alexander, according to his name, to be captain-gene-
s knights of chivalry: and the youngest, named Da-
e his cup-bearer, and comptroller of all his revels
ghts. And likewise, in remembrance of their noble
he Christian champion, he ordained for ever after
pt a solemn procession about the king's court, by
princes and chief nobility of the country, upon the
third day of April, naming it St. George's Day, upon
lay he was most solemnly interred in the city where
born; and caused a stately monument to be erected
ur of him, though now by the ruins of time defaced
lished. He likewise decreed, by the consent of the
ingdom, that the patron of the land should be named
rge our Christian champion, in that he had fought
7 battles in the honour of Christendom.
ing thus the Christian champions in their graves, we
now to relate the surprising adventures that befel St.
s three sons; as also the martial exploits of the sons
ther champions, in defence of the Christian religion,
ief of distressed knights and ladies.

PART III.

Shewing the vallant Acts of St. George's
Sir Alexander, and Sir David: as also the
of Sir Turpin, son to St. Denis ; Sir Pe
Sir Orlando, son to St. Anthony ; Sir Ewi
Sir Phelim, son to St. Patrick ; and Sir O

CHAP. I.

SOON had wide mouthed tattling Fam
of the Seven Champions' death into :
kingdoms of the earth ; which caused
rejoicing among those miscreants and
the weight of their victorious arms, in:
lished a day of thanksgiving, to pra
met, Termagant, and Apollo, for the
countries out of the hands of such r
they provide for the invasion of Chr
tual consent to muster up such an a
Chistianity, and root out those seve
earth, whereof those worthies were
the soldan of Persia

Christians, by slaying their people, burning their towns and cities, and utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth."

The copy of this letter being sent into several nations and kingdoms, the kings of those countries assembled together all the forces they could make, and with the greatest expedition they could use marched into the plains of Babylon. The first that came thither was the king of Arabia, attended with an army of twenty thousand men, whereof eight thousand were mounted on Arabian coursers, being armed with spears and targets, so swift and dexterous in their undertakings, that they seldom missed of achieving any business they went about. His pavilion was of a violet colour, fringed with yellow, to distinguish what country he was of.

The next was the soldan of Persia himself, with an army of ten thousand horsemen and thirty thousand foot, of which nine thousand were pioneers, to level the way for the armies marching, and dig trenches for the assaulting of any castle or city. His pavilion was red, fringed with orange-tawny; being mounted on a hill, to be the more conspicuous to the beholders.

Next was the king of Egypt, with twenty-five thousand men, of which three hundred were magicians or soothsayers, to charm and bewitch the Christian army that they might not fight. His pavilion was blue, fringed with black, and was placed on the right hand of the king of Arabia.

Soon after came the great cham of Tartary, with an army of thirty thousand men, all in quilted jackets, so thick wrought that no arrow could pierce them. They were all armed with steel gauntlets, and had swords of a hand's breadth, and withal so sharp, that they would cut off a man at the middle with a blow. His pavilion was of a primrose colour, with a white fringe, which was placed on the left hand of the soldan of Persia.

Next came the king of Morocco, with two thousand horsemen, mounted all on Barbary steeds, armed with the skins of stags, so thick and tough that no sword could cut through them: he had also ten thousand footmen, with iron maces having round balls at the end of them of four or five pounds weight, therewith to dash out the Christians' brains. His pavilion and the fringe thereof were all black, to signify black and dismal days to ensue. He was placed next to the king of Egypt.

The next that arrived in the fruitful fields of Babylonia, was the king of Parthia, with an army consisting of fifteen thousand men: he had also an hundred elephants, carrying towers on their backs, in each of which ten men might stand and fight. This king was in stature four feet higher than most men, having each limb answerable thereto; so that he wore a sword of two yards in length, the pommel whereof weighed twenty pounds. His pavilion was sky-colour, fringed with sea-green, and was placed next to the king of Morocco.

Next was the emperor or grand signior of the Turks, accompanied with ten thousand janisaries, armed with sharp scimitars, so keen that they would cut a bolt of iron asunder. He was armed in a coat of mail of burnished silver, having on his head a white turban, and a pendant on it, wherein was depicted a half moon, with this motto, "Still increasing." His pavilion was green, with silver and gold fringe, and was placed on the right hand of the sultan of Persia.

After him came the prince of Tripoly, accompanied with four giants of a marvellous size and bigness, whose names were, Garian, Caras, Phidon, and Raphsarus. These bore on their necks great knotty oaks, with which they could strike two yards deep into the ground, and were most dreadful to behold. He had also with him a deformed creature called a Sagittary, being half a man and half a horse, who could run as swift as a ship can sail having wind and weather: his offensive weapon was a bow, with which he shot poisoned arrows; and was so expert therein, that he could shoot to a hair's breadth. This prince of Tripoly was encamped next to the king of Parthia, and had a pavilion of a pea-blossom colour, fringed with murrey.

After him came the count palatine of Trebizond, with fifteen hundred cross-bowmen, all armed in steel corselets. He had also three thousand men that used slings, with which they could exactly hit whatever they aimed at, and that at a great distance from them. On his shield was painted a griffin grasping of a Christian, with this motto, "Seized of his prey." His pavilion was of an azure colour, fringed with red, and was placed next to the emperor or grand signior of the Turks.

The next that appeared on the Babylonian plains, for the

destruction of the Christians, was the bassa of Aleppo, who brought with him an hundred wains laden with balls of wild-fire, sulphur, and certain engines called calthorps, being little things made with four pricks of iron, of such a fashion, that which way soever they be thrown one point will always stick up like a nail; and these were to be thrown into the Christians' army, to spoil the feet of their horses. His pavilion was of an iron-gray colour, and was placed next to the count palatine of Trebizond.

Next was the mamelouk of Damascus, attended with six thousand horse and six thousand footmen. He had also in his army a deformed monster, from the shoulders downwards shaped like a man, but his head and face like to that of a horse, being a present sent him from the cham of Tartary, and from whom descended the horse-faced Tartar killed by count Sereni. This mamelouk's pavilion was of yellow intermixed with black, and fringed with red, being placed next to the bassa of Aleppo.

Many other kings, princes, and emperors were engaged in this enterprise, whose names would be too tedious here to recite; insomuch that there was assembled such an army as made the earth to shake under the weight thereof; being more in number than that of Xerxes, which drank up whole rivers dry as they went; or than that of the Macedonian Alexander, with which he conquered the greatest part of the world.

Being thus in this manner assembled together, the soldan of Persia, as one of the chiefest of the association, gathered the greatest princes and captains to his pavilion, where he entertained them with a costly banquet, and then he made this following oration:

"Most mighty kings, princes, and captains of this invincible army, it is not unknown to you what injuries and mischiefs we have received from the Christian armies, under the conduct of those persons whom they called The Seven Champions of Christendom: to enumerate them all in particular, would make my oration too tedious unto you; I shall therefore only give you some few instances. What injury did St. George, the champion of England, unto Ptolemy king of Egypt, by stealing away his daughter; as also from Almidor, king of Morocco, his dearest lady and mistress! Did not the king's daughter of Thessaly run away from her country by the sly insinuations of St. Denis of

France; as also the king of Jerusalem's daughter by the like persuasions of St. James of Spain? What intolerable injury was it to the king of Thracia, to have his fair daughter Rosalinde tempted away from her country by the Italian champion! But much more from the champion of Scotland, to be deprived of his other six daughters. Did not the Welsh champion slay the count palatine of Tartary in his father's court? Besides infinite other mischiefs, losses, and disgraces we have received from them; all which, whilst they lived, we were not able to revenge; but now, since Death hath been so kind to take them out of the world, let us pluck up our courages, and manfully fight in revenge of our injuries. Let pity be exiled our thoughts, neither sparing old age for their hoary heads, nor the tender infant for its pitiful cry: let not the tears of matrons find regard, nor the wallings of widows any respect; but let all be destined by the sword, that we may have a general triumph in their utter confusion."

This oration was received with a general applause, each one protesting his utmost endeavours for the extirpation of Christianity, and never to sheath his sword till they had laid the European cities equal with the dust, and their stately monuments in ruin, like to the lofty pyramids of Troy. And now considering, by experience, the fatal effects of their former discord in electing a general, and how necessary it was to have a commander-in-chief; to avoid all controversy, it was decreed amongst them, that six of the chiefest should be picked forth, and out of them one to be chosen by lot to be their general. These six were, the king of Arabia, the king of Persia, the soldan of Babylon, the king of Egypt, the emperor of the Turks, and the king of Morocco. The lots being cast, it fell to the share of the soldan of Babylon to be their general, the king of Persia major-general, and the king of Arabia, by reason of the swiftness of his coursers, scout-master-general. Other kings and princes had appointed unto them several other offices, according to their quality, and capacity they had in the feats of war. So that, all things considered, they seemed to be an army invincible, being for number like the army of Xerxes, which drank whole rivers dry; and for warlike provisions so much and plentiful, as far exceeded all manner of arithmetic.

Here will we leave this mighty army in the plains of Babylon, and come to tell you of the great preparations the

Christians made to resist them. But first we shall describe the valiant acts of St. George's three sons, and how they, hearing of this great army intended for the ruin of Christendom, returned home to fight in defence of their country.

CHAP. II.

YOU may remember, in the second part of this famous history, we left St. George's three sons in the English court ; where they had not continued long after their father's death, but growing weary of idleness, and being more desirous to follow the camp of Mars than to dally with ladies in the court of Venus, they resolved to betake themselves to travel, and to seek out adventures in foreign countries ; and having imparted their mind to the king, they furnished themselves with all things necessary for such a journey, and bidding the fruitful soil of England adieu, they in a few weeks' sailing arrived on the coasts of Sicily ; where, marching up higher into the country, they saw many houses, but no inhabitants—yea, whole towns of empty houses, but neither man, woman, nor child within them : which made them mistrust some grievous pestilence had overspread that country, and made it desolate of inhabitants : wherefore, to avoid any infection which might happen unto them, they took up their lodging in the open fields, having only the starry firmament for their canopy. Thus sweetly reposing on their mother earth, they slept as soundly as if they had laid on beds of down, and had been surrounded with curtains of the purest Arabian silk. Thus did they sleep securely, until such time as Aurora began to gild the firmament with her bright rays, and to usher in Phœbus's golden light ; when suddenly they were awakened with a most horrible noise, which seemed to be sent from the deep abyss, and to be able to rend the rocks asunder : whereupon they suddenly buckled on their armour, and stood upon their guard ; and indeed it was high time, for at that instant they saw coming towards them a most deformed monster, of an excessive bigness, and terrible shape, having eyes like burning saucers, and claws sharper than eagles' talons. He seemed to move like a high tower or pyramid, and with his weight to make the earth to tremble. The sight of this ugly monster so startled their horses, than

they would hardly endure the bit ; but, snorting, and stamping the earth with their feet, shewed the dread they had of such a sight. But these three valiant knights, in whom were sown the seeds of true magnanimity, stood fearless to abide what danger soever might happen.

The first whom this fierce monster made unto, was the valiant knight sir Guy, who, nothing daunted at his hideous shape, having put his spear in his rest, ran furiously against him ; but the monster being armed with scales far harder than brass, his spear shivered in a thousand pieces. Then drawing out his trusty falchion, he assailed the monster with manly strokes ; who, on his part, not backward in defence, but bolting upright with his tail, stretched forth one of his paws, and with the same grasped so hard on the arm of sir Guy, that he had well near seized on him, had not sir David at that instant come in, and with his sword cut the monster's paw quite off, leaving the claws so firmly fixed on sir Guy's arm, that, notwithstanding the goodness of his armour, it was very hard to be gotten off. In the meantime the valiant and renowned knight sir Alexander, with great force set upon the monster, giving him such a blow upon the head as made him reel ; who with his tail striking at sir Alexander, so wrapped the same about his horse's legs, that, not able to stand, he came over and over with the knight. The monster seeing him on the ground, was making towards him ; whom sir David met with such a lusty thrust on his breast, that, though it pierced not the same, it laid the monster flat on his back ; which was no sooner done, but sir Guy, nimbly leaping from off his horse, thrust his sword down the monster's throat, who lay gasping for breath, whereby he rived his heart insunder : yet notwithstanding the same, the monster's teeth were so keen, that he bit the knight's sword in two, leaving the one half in his throat ; and withal sent forth such a hideous yell, as surpassed the roaring of the cataracts of Nilus, or the greatest crack of the loudest thunder : but having received his death's wound, with some little struggling he yielded his life up to the victors ; who surveying his body, found it to be, from the head to the end of the tail, full ten yards in length : his bulk at least a ton weight ; having paws and claws answerable unto it ; and each part so armed with scales, as scarcely was penetrable with any sword.

The knights having obtained this victory, returned thanks to the immortal powers, and leaving the carcass of the hideous monster, travelled up higher into the country, hoping to meet with some of the inhabitants thereof, who, now they saw, had left their houses for dread of this monster. Having travelled some few miles, and desirous of refreshment after this encounter, they saw some smoke ascending out of the tunnel of a little cell near unto them; whither bending their course, they saw standing at the door an aged hermit, in a gown of frieze reaching to the ground; his hair as white as the down of swans, or driven snow, which in a careless manner hung down his shoulders: in his face you might read the map of sorrow, charactered out in deep-furrowed wrinkles: whom the knights courteously saluted, desiring to know the reason why so fruitful a country as they had passed was left destitute of inhabitants. The aged hermit, having viewed them well, and perceived by their habit they were outlandish knights bent upon martial adventures, and seeming to be persons who dreaded no danger, he desired them to alight from their warlike steeds, and for a while to repose themselves in his lowly cell, and he would endeavour to satisfy their desires: "In the mean time," said he, "I would desire you to take such homely refreshment as my cell affords;" and thereupon brought them forth such country viands as that place afforded; which they courteously accepted; and having satisfied their hunger, the hermit began to speak to them in this manner:

"Sir knights," said he, "for so you seem by your outward habiliments, if we may judge of the goodness of the apple by the fairness of the rind; know that this country wherein you now are, is the land of Sicily; once so fruitful and abounding in all things, that it might well be called the granary of the world, and now still retaining its virtue, durst the inhabitants manure the same. But now our plenty is turned into misery, our mirth into mourning; our streets, which were wont to be replenished with throngs of people, now destitute and empty of inhabitants; and all by reason of a most ghastly dreadful monster, sent, I think, from the infernal regions for the punishment of mankind, whom the country people term by the name of Pongo. This direful monster or rather devil incarnate, begotten, as it is thought, between a land tiger and a sea-shark, so that it par-

icipates of both elements, swimming in the sea near our Sicilian coasts, espied some herdsmen near on the shore, who with great wonder beheld this monster as he desported himself on the waves of the sea; but when they saw that he made towards them, and beheld the monstrousness of his proportion, fear, standing at the gates of their eyes, put back all farther persuasions of beholding him, and, adding wings to their fear, they flew away in the greatest haste they possibly could make. But in vain was all their speed, for he, soon recovering the shore, seized upon some of the hindermost of them, whom he made a prey to his devouring paunch; and having tasted the sweetness of human blood, he ever since hath haunted our coasts, ranging up higher into the country, devouring all wheresoever he came: and herein is his cruelty most exemplary, that he delights more in the slaughter of men than of beasts; so that it is judged he hath devoured no less than five hundred persons; and for twenty miles' space left all desolate and uninhabited; the dread of him being so very great, that the women to terrify their children from crying, use to say, 'the Pongo cometh.'

"Thus, renowned knights, have you heard the cause of our country's misery; not one of our stoutest champions having the heart to encounter with him: so that with freedom he wastes and destroys all before him, until such time as it shall please Providence to send us some more redoubted knights than ours, to free us of him: for which our king hath promised great rewards, the spur to honourable achievements; besides the great good (a reward in itself) which it will do mankind, in freeing us from so terrible an enemy."

The hermit concluding his speech with a deep sigh for a period, the valiant knight sir Guy, with a smiling countenance, thus answered him: "Now then," said he, "are the stars so benign unto Sicily, that your country is freed from this direful misery: for, the cause being taken away, the effect must needs cease. Know then, that by the victorious arms of me, and my two brothers, the monster is dead; and no more dread of your affrighting dead Pongo, than is to be feared from a living grasshopper or butterfly."

Scarcely had sir Guy ended his speech, when the hermit, transported with an excessive joy, fell down at his feet, being almost in as great an ecstasy for joy as was that father,

who, having three sons retained victors from the Olympic games, his overjoyed spirit could not contain itself in the bounds of reason, but by the excessiveness thereof yielded up the ghost. "And is our land," said he, "capable of so great a benefit! Does so good fortune attend our country! Then thanks to the immortal Powers above, who hath sent you hither to be the means of our future happiness! How is our nation bound to your manhood, and what victims shall we offer for your fortunate success!"

As the hermit was thus discoursing, there was passing by the cell a herald at arms, well accoutred, and attended on by four knights clad all in mourning armour, who were sent by the king into foreign countries, to proclaim in every place where they came, that if any knight would be so hardy as to encounter with the Pongo, and overcome him, he should be made a peer of the realm, and have a golden helmet for a reward. This their errand being made known to the three knights, they declared unto them how the Pongo was already killed; which put a stop to their farther journey: and sending back one of the knights to the king, to inform him thereof, the rest went to view the dead carcass of the Pongo; which having surveyed with great admiration, the three Sicilian knights invited sir Guy, sir Alexander, and sir David to the city of Syracuse, where the king then kept his court; who courteously accepting of their proffer, taking leave of the aged hermit, who returned to his cell, mounting their warlike steeds, with an easy pace they marched on. But when the king heard the news of the monster's death, he caused the bells to be rung, and bonfires to be made, for joy thereof; and hearing how the three knights were coming towards him, he went forth to meet them, attended in this manner:—First, went two trumpeters clad in arms of Sicily, being two plauches argent, charged with any eagles sable. Then followed a band of pensioners with golden streamers, which they displayed as they marched along. After them went fourscore knights, mounted on their barbed steeds, and armed with bright glittering arms. Next came the king's life-guard, in buff coats with silver fringe, and wearing on their shoulders crimson scarfs, inlaid with gold. After them the king himself in a costly chariot studded with pillars of silver, and lined with carnation velvet; being followed with an in-

numerable train of lords and gentlemen, and their attendants.

With this stately train did the king go to meet these three victorious knights; who at his coming alighted from their steeds, whom the king courteously embraced; and after some short discourse, had them into his chariot, and triumphantly returned back to Syracuse; all the way the bells ringing, the bonfires blazing, and the people making such loud acclamations of joy, that the earth rang with the noise thereof.

Being come to the king's palace, they were met by the queen Berenice, and her beautiful daughter Urania, the flower of courtesy, and paragon of rare perfection; who, as she excelled the other Sicilian virgins in dignity and honour, so did she surpass them all in beauty, and other ornaments of nature; to which were joined such rare endowments of the mind, as completed her a princess of admirable parts. After they were alighted from the chariot, they were conducted to a stately room, where was provided for them a costly banquet; which being ended, their ears were saluted with most choice music; after which the ladies presented them with a stately mask. All this while the princess Urania fed her eyes with beholding sir Guy, whose perfections she so contemplated, that love, entering in at her eyes, so wounded her heart, that she became wholly captivated in the bonds of Cupid. Sir Guy, on the other side, was so pierced with her transcendent beauty, and her other rare accomplishments, that he wholly resigned up himself to her devotion, she being the loadstone of his affections, attracting all the faculties of his soul in obedience to her commands.

Thus did these two princely persons reciprocally bear true love to each other, though neither of them knew each other's mind. But as fire will not be long hid under combustible matter, so love, where it is ardent, will shew itself through all the disguises they can put upon it. These heroic knights had not been many weeks in the Sicilian court, feasting and revelling in all the delights and pleasures which that fruitful country afforded, but such pleasures grew too tedious unto them, especially to sir Guy, whose love to the princess Urania made sports and company distasteful unto him: so one evening, at such time as the golden chariot

of heaven had finished his diurnal course, and driven his panting steeds down the western hill, he intended to take a solitary walk in the garden, when, coming under the princess Urania's chamber window, heard the music of a lute, which with harmonious airs saluted his ears; and listening awhile a voice delivered itself in these words:

Now woe is me, poor hapless virgin, I
Am forc'd to yield to Cupid's deity:
All striving is in vain;
Love the conquest he will gain,
And I a vassal must to him remain.

Yet, gentle Cupid, let me thee desire
To wound his breast, like mine with equal fire,
That so our loves, together join'd,
May settle in a quiet mind,
And we in them may true contentment find.

As sir Guy was listening to this harmonious voice, there passed by him one of the princess Urania's ladies, which put a stop unto her singing: but pondering well in his mind the substance of her sonnet, it gave him great hopes of her affections to him; and as every lover flatters himself in his own imagination, so did he imagine himself sole monarch of the princess's heart. That night the ladies had provided a stately mask, which at the end of every scene was attended with most rare music and excellent dancing; to which mask the three brothers were invited. The time being come for the mask to begin, it was performed in this manner:

First began a most excellent concert of music. Then entered four maskers in cloth of gold, most richly embroidered; three of them personating the three goddesses, Juno, Pallas, and Venus, when they strove for the golden apple on the mount of Ida; the fourth represented the shepherd Paris, who having heard their several pleas, which they made for the obtaining of the apple, he adjudged it to Venus. Having danced a carouse about the room they withdrew.

After a little space, the music playing again, according as it was appointed, the three knights took each of them a

lady by the hand to lead them a dance : and now had sir Guy the happiness to converse with his dear lady and mistress : for, taking the princess Urania by the hand, he with great courtesy and humility kissed it : and she kindly accepting his proffer, he led her a coture about the room : as great majesty and state as did *Eneas*, when he revell'd it in the court of queen *Dido* ; and she following him with as much grace, as might become the queen of love to have acted it : and so, having shewed the spectators that he could as well tread a measure in a dance, as handle the warlike lance, he with the princess Urania withdrew into a corner of that spacious room ; whilst sir Alexander, having associated himself with a gallant lady named *Alcacia*, and daughter to the viceroy of Naples, began a second coture to the music : which whilst they were performing, sir Guy courted the princess Urania in these words :

"Most peerless princess," said sir Guy, "if the bleeding wounds of my heart could speak, which you have pierced by the beams of your matchless beauty, then would it move my tongue the labour to declare the affection which I bear to your noble person. If I have aimed too high, blame your matchless beauty and virtues, that have caused it. Let me therefore conjure you, by all the rights and charms of love, and by those fair eyes that have enthralled mine, not to prove obdurate in thy love, though I must confess myself unworthy of so high a bliss : yet shall the sun sooner cease to run his course, the stars to give light, and every thing alter from its wonted course, ere Guy will prove false, or cease to honour the perfections of the princess Urania."

Although this speech was very welcome to the love-sick princess, yet, that she might not seem too forward, with a maidenly modesty she thus replied :

"Sir, you must pardon me, if I look before I leap. That myself, together with our whole country, is indebted to your prowess, we shall for ever acknowledge. But to love, and so to love as to make you a promise of being my husband (for I hope you mean no other thing but what tends to my honour), you must excuse me, having no other assurance of your quality and truth, but only your own verbal expressions : besides, you being a stranger, and I an heir to a crown, were your estate answerable to your (I must confess) excellent qualification, yet could I not be so to my own

disposal to conclude of what you desire, seeing not only my parents, but my country, have so great a share in me."

She would have proceeded farther, but sir Alexander and the lady Alsatia having finished their dance, the cornets and other wind music sounding aloud, they were called away to behold another scene of fresh maskers, which in this sort entertained the beholders. First entered the likeness of a stately fabric, made of a pasteboard, and adorned with many golden streamers, which represented the temple of Honour. This being drawn to the farther side of that spacious room, soon after entered another fabric, but lower and not so richly adorned, which represented the temple of Virtue, and was so placed that none could enter the temple of Honour but must first pass through the temple of Virtue. After entered several persons, who attempted to get into the temple of Honour, but were loth to go through the temple of Virtue, therefore they missed of their aim. Those who went through the temple of Virtue, were richly adorned and rewarded, and greatly honoured of the people; but those who would climb up to the temple of Honour, and not enter it by the temple of Virtue, it was made so slippery, on the top, that with the least treading awry they fell down and broke their necks.

This show being ended, and the cornets and other loud music ceasing, the valiant and renowned knight sir David, taking a most beautiful damsel by the hand, named Artesia, and niece to the king of Sicily, by his sister Rodelentia, whose husband was a renowned knight at arms, and master of the strong castle of Angelo: this noble lady, who had not her superior for beauty on the face of the earth, most willingly gave her hand to sir David; and so, with as much portly majesty as the god of war led the stately Venus, they danced a galliard: which whilst they were doing, sir Guy having a farther opportunity to speak to the goddess of his affections, accosted her in this manner:

"Most excellent lady, do not entertain a heart more hard than flint, which the tears of my true love cannot mollify; nor think my affections to you to be like breath on steel, soon on and soon off: no, I protest by all the sacred oaths of religion, and by yourself—that is, by all that is good—my love shall be as durable and firm as whatsoever is most permanent. Nor do not think, because some have proved

treacherous and disloyal to their loves, that once so unworthily a thought should ever enter into my heart. No, although Æneas proved false to Dido, yet will Guy be as true to his Urania, as ever was Pyramus to his beloved Thisbe; or Leander to Hero. What though Jason basely forsook his Medea, by whose means he obtained the golden fleece, yet shall my faith always remain firm, and be as constant to thee as was Ulysses to his Penelope."

The princess, hearing these asseverations, and being willing he should not be too much dejected, but that some beams of comfort should reflect on him, she told him, that time, the mother of truth, would prove the reality of his affections; in the mean time that he should not despair, since, being a soldier, he must needs know that the strongest castles by continual batteries are forced to yield.

By this time the night was so far spent as summoned them all to go to their beds: where no sooner they were laid, but Somnus, the god of sleep, closed up their eyes in golden slumbers. Next morning, no sooner did Aurora from the glowing east display her purple doors, and that Hyperion with his ruddy rays began to gild the horizon with his radious beams, than the shrill noise of a silver trumpet sounding at the court gates raised them from their beds, to know what was the meaning of it; when they were quickly informed, that it was a knight of Thessaly, attended on by a squire and a trumpeter, who desired to speak with the king of Sicily; who being admitted into his presence delivered himself in these words:

"Most noble prince, my coming hither to you, is to desire of you assistance for our distressed country of Thessaly, opprest, and made almost desolate, by the encroachments and tyranny of the king of Thrace: the cause of which quarrel he pretends to be, for that our king having but one daughter, named Mariana, the heiress to his crowns and dominions; being a lady not only endued with excellency of Nature's gifts, but withal so virtuous, affable, and every way complete in knowledge, that she may well be said to be the darling of her sex and admiration of all that know her. This peerless princess, the king of Thrace, who is famed a man given over to all licentiousness, and so far degenerate from royalty that he commits actions unbecoming a peasant, desired of her father to have her in marriage;

but she, loathing to link herself in such marriage bands, where love and true honour did not mutually embrace each other, refused so loathsome a proffer, and that with such indignation, that, upon his ambassador's return, and acquainted with his slighting, he resolved to do that by force which he could not obtain by favour; and to that end mustered up a most puissant army; which was done in such an instant, that he was marched into the midst of our land before we were prepared to meet him on our borders: nay, his horse, consisting of ten thousand well-approved soldiers, excellently armed, both with offensive and defensive weapons, had by their incursion so affrighted our people, that our strongest citadels were not held sufficient to safeguard them from danger, and all left to the spoil of the enemy. At last this news arrived to our king, who held himself secure, by reason there was a mutual league of peace between them, which at that time was not half expired; so that he was altogether unprovided for the present (a great fault in princes, to think any estate so permanent that it may not be soon overturned): but upon the news hereof he bestirs himself; fortifies his chief city, Larissa, where he kept his court; and raises as puissant an army as he could, in so short a time, be provided with, which he marches against his enemies. The king of Thrace had with him a mighty giant, named Predo, in whom he put great confidence. This giant had the strength of ten men, and was for stature and shape very terrible to behold. In the valley of Tempe they joined battle, where, notwithstanding our men did what in them lay, as fighting for the liberty of their country, yet, being overpowered and borne down by the strength and valour of the giant Predo, they received a dismal overthrow; the greatest part of the army slain, and most of the rest taken prisoners; amongst whom our woful king was one; who encountering Predo, who had on him a coat of mail, and over that an armour of two hundred pounds weight, being on foot (for no horse was able to bear him), our king running against him with his lance, it shivered in a thousand pieces; nor could his sword avail against the giant's armour, although he laid on such strokes, that sparkles flew from it as from a piece of hot iron when a smith is working it. But the giant valued his blows so little, finding him to be the Thessalian king, and now almost spent with long fighting, that he made no more ado,

but, clasping his arms about him, he carried both man together into his tent; which our men seeing dispersed themselves as well as they could for safety. And now the Thracians being absolute was agreed amongst them, that the giant Predo sh our king prisoner with him into his castle where being a place strongly situated in an island, having associated with him, famous for his skill in the Blat that what by the strength of the one, and devil of the other, we despair of ever having our king a for the king of Thrace, he, with the remains of marched up to the city of Larissa, wherein our pr riana is enclosed, and so straitly besieged, th speedy help the city is in danger to be lost, and liberty and welfare of our whole country, whic bleeding in a pitiful manner, unless (most noble p goodness will be pleased to lend us any aid or which now both our nobles and commons do m implore at your hands."

This woful tale being finished, moved great p passion in all the hearers thereof, especially in English brothers, whose princely minds being end the true seeds of magnanimity, they vowed, by t of true knighthood, and all that was most dear un use their utmost endeavours, were it to the spe most precious blood, for the relieving the princes and her captivated father. The Sicilian king his best assistance to join with them, they wit made what haste they could for the mustering army; and notwithstanding the great strength an ness of the giant Predo did strike some dread and the hearts of many, yet being accompanied with c cable knights as were these three brothers, they danger, but with a valiant courage resolved to v lives with them, whose valiant acts and noble ach deserving to be recorded in the books of Fame, C sisting, shall be recorded in the next chapter.

CHAP. III.

THE captains and other officers made such expedition in mustering up an army, that in a fortnight's time they had gotten together twenty thousand men: all which the king completely armed out of his royal armoury, being a magazine sufficiently stored with all necessary habiliments of war. To the three brothers he gave each of them a silver helmet studded with gold, and inlaid with precious stones, as a reward of their victorious conquering the monster Pongo, appointing to their valiant conduct the management of the whole army. Whilst thus this preparation was in hand, the courageous knight, sir Guy, although his heart was full fraught with valour, and bent to the performance of noble achievements, yet had love taken such deep impression in his thoughts, that it was death unto him to part with his Urania. Whilst thus honour on the one hand invited him to buckle on his armour, and love on the other side pleaded for his stay, he resolved not to desist from the performance of honourable achievements, since the attainment of love was by hazardous attempts in actions which were truly honourable.

Accordingly he bestirred himself in mustering up of his men, shewing them how to handle their weapons, and to use them to the best advantage; also how to gain ground in fight, and when to retreat, with other things belonging to martial discipline. And now being ready for their march, he went to take his solemn leave of the princess Urania, who bestowed on him a very fair diamond ring, to wear for her sake, as also a medal of herself very curiously wrought with great art, and exceeding costly, which he afterwards constantly wore in his bosom, next his heart. But now seeing he could not have the opportunity of expressing his mind unto her as he would have done, he wrote the following letter, which, by a waiting gentlewoman that attended on her, was delivered unto her about the time of his departure.

"Excellent princess,

"BLAME me not that for a while I am summoned by the highest tie of honour to depart from you; being in such a cause to help the injured, which all true knights are bound to perform: yet, madam, know that no distance of

This letter was very welcome to who now began to set such a high that she judged him worthy of the And now, he being the sole man could not but breathe forth some sigh sence; but then, considering upon what count he was engaged, she could not taking: yet, to give him some more of her affection to him, upon his marching her chariot to speak to him, whom of his troops, and kindly bade him farewell. "Most courteous knight, may Heaven dertaking according to the justice of your return may be both speedy and your more prosperous proceeding, as have a virgin's prayers day and night let me request you to wear this scarf looking on the same, I may not be all remembrance."

In delivering of which the tears be

The first place they made to, was the city of Larissa, wherein the princess Mariana was besieged; for the relief of which sir Alexander was sent before, with a choice part of the army, to give them a *camisado* in the night-season, the rest of the army marching at more leisure to second them, if they should be overpowered: and one of the Thessalians, who was well acquainted with the country, was sent into the city to give them notice of their coming, and that at such a time they should make what strength they could, and give a sally out upon the Thracians. This Thessalian, who was thus sent in, brought great comfort unto the besieged, who accordingly prepared against the time: and so about midnight, when sir Alexander with his army was come within sight of the city, and held up a blazing torch to give them notice of their approach, they issued out of their gates and manfully set upon the Thracians. Sir Alexander, on the other side, coming upon their backs, fell on them with such fury as sent such numbers of the Thracians' souls to the lower regions, that Charon's boat was overburdened with their numbers. Sir Alexander laid about him with such incredible valour, that he made a lane of slaughtered carcasses, till he came to the Thracian king's pavilion, who not dreaming of any enemy's approach, was at that time in his bed; but being alarmed by the dreadful cry of his soldiers, he suddenly started up: but before he could put on his clothes, sir Alexander was entered his pavilion, and took him prisoner. Then fell the hearts of the Thracians, nothing being heard but cries and lamentations of wounded men. Here was one who would have run away, but had one leg cut off and the other deeply wounded; here another entangled in his fellow's guts, which he could not disentangle, having both his arms cut off. Here lay the trunk of a body without a head; and there a head gasping, as if it would speed to what body it belonged. In some, death appeared in so many shapes, and all of them so horrid, that to any but a very unrelenting heart indeed, the sight would appear very pitiful.

By this time was sir Guy come up with the rest of the forces, where he found an absolute victory obtained to his hand; so that all which they had to do, was only to take prisoners, and divide the spoil among the soldiers. By this time *Hyperion* with his golden chariot had enlightened or

lower hemisphere ; wherefore the army marched into the city to refresh themselves ; sir Alexander, as he worthily deserved the honour of the victory, leading his royal prisoner, to present him to the princess Mariana, who was ready to receive him, with all due acknowledgments to the three brothers ; but in an especial manner to sir Alexander, for his magnanimity and martial conduct in the rescuing of her and the kingdom from so implacable an enemy.

"Most heroic knight," said the lovely princess, "although my tongue is not able to express how much I am indebted to your victorious arm, nor set forth your due deserved merits, whose worth transcends all encomiums of poets ; yet shall the remembrance of these so great kindnesses never be out of my heart, nor the thoughts of them out of my mind, without a grateful acknowledgment."

Then turning to the Thracian king, with as much a wrathful countenance as so lovely beauty would admit, she thus spake :

"And as for you, sir, the causer of all this mischief, how just reason of hatred I may have unto you, you cannot surely but imagine ; for could you think this the way to come a wooing ? I am sure if you did, you might well think it was not the way to come a speeding : and now, sir, since we have you (and I must confess, rather as an enemy than a lover), you must not be angry if we safely secure you, until we hear how our royal father is used by these that belong unto you."

And so committed him to the custody of the marshal of her household, to be kept prisoner in a strong tower near adjoining to her palace, but with charge that he should be accommodated as a king. This being done, she invited the three brothers, with many of the other chief commanders, into her palace ; where having disarmed themselves, and refreshed with some bowls of Greekish wine, there was provided for them a banquet of the choicest fare which they had about them at that time ; the long and strait siege which they endured having eaten up the most part of their provision. The banquet being ended, they were entertained with most excellent music, intermixed with songs in praise of the Sicilians' valour, for in the art of poetry the Thessalians are very expert. The common soldiers were highly feasted by the citizens : and, in fine, such a universal joy did so possess

the hearts of the people, that had I the skill of Homer the Grecian poet, and as many hands to express that skill as Argus had eyes, and as many pens to write withal as Briarius had hands, yet were all insufficient to express the same.

Amidst this joy, the princess Mariana was not forgetful of her father's safety ; and therefore she presently dispatched a messenger to the giant Predo, at his castle in the enchanted island, offering the Thracian king to be exchanged for him ; which if it should be denied, the messenger was to learn in what estate the king was in, and (if it were possible) to speak with him, and to acquaint him how matters stood, with resolutions of using their utmost power for relief.

Whilst the messenger was gone on this message, the soldiers took their repose in safety—only each of the days they exercised, that if the giant Predo should be averse to any good conclusion, they might be the more expert at their arms ; and indeed it was good policy so to do, for the messenger arriving at the enchanted island, could find no access into the castle, it being so formed by magic art, that whosoever approached within twelve yards of the gate was taken with such a deep sleep, as if he had drank opium, or the juice of aconitum. Before the gate was a pillar of brass, supported by two lions, and curiously engraved ; on which these verses were inscribed :

“ By magic spells this castle shall remain,
Supported by infernal fiends below,
Until three brothers shall the same attain,
Whose power shall be this castle's overthrow.
Whoe'er thou art, forbear to draw too near ;
Thy life's at stake, than which there's nought more dear.”

Near unto this brazen pillar stood a rock of alabaster, in which were enclosed three swords, richly enchased, and beset with precious stones in the pummels ; on the handle of the first sword were these lines written :

“ Hard closed in this rock I firmly stand,
Until drawn out by the First Brother's hand.”

On the pommel of the second sword ~~these~~ these lines inscribed :

" (The Second Brother shall, by Fate's decree,
Draw from the rock this sword, and none but he."

On the pommel of the third sword, which was more artificially wrought than any of the other two, having a rich sapphire set therein, which cast forth a most radiant lustre, were these words engraved :

" When the Third Brother he shall draw me forth,
Then is our necromantic skill not worth ;
All magic charms and spells shall be in vain,
And then shall be the end of giant Frodo's reign."

The messenger, notwithstanding he had read the writings on the brazen pillar, yet ventured for to go forwards ; but coming into the enchanted ground, before he could come at the castle gate he fell into such a sound sleep, that had twenty pieces of ordnance been shot off at his ears, they would not have awaked him. The necromancer, who by his skill in the Black Art knew what had happened, fetched his body into the castle, laying it by the Thessalian king, who also, as soon as he came into the enchanted ground, had fallen into a deep sleep. And now being there laid together, we will leave them taking their rests, and come to speak of the proceedings of the Sicilian army at the city of Larissa.

The princess Mariana, hearing no news of her messenger, and doubting the worst which might befall her father, consulting with the three brothers, it was agreed amongst them, to march with their army into Thrace, although at that time love had taken so deep an impression in her heart, that it was almost death unto her to part with sir Alexander. On the other side, sir Alexander, upon the first sight of the princess was so stricken with her admirable perfections, her beauty being such an attractive loadstone, as captivated his heart in the allurements of love ; so that now, as the poet hath it,

—" The treasure of his heart did lie
In the fair casket of his mistress' eye."

Cupid having thus stricken him with his youthful dart, so that he became a stranger to rest, he resolved yet to be

clare his amours before he betook himself to arms; and to that purpose, finding one day the princess all alone he accosted her in this manner :

" Most gracious princess, I think the stars could have allotted me no greater good than to behold the surpassing work of nature in you; your excellencies having so captivated my heart, that to live without your good liking will be but a lingering death unto me. I must confess my presumption great, in aiming so high; but who can look on such perfections without liking, and who can like without loving? And though the small trial you have of the real affection wherewith I honour your virtues may discourage you to credit my words, yet, I hope, in the trying of me, how willing I shall be to merit your favour, you will find my deserts not altogether unworthy of your regard, since the utmost of my abilities is, and shall be, devoted to your service."

To which the princess returned this answer :

" Most courteous knight, to whom I stand so much obliged for former courtesies, that all which I can do will not stand in competition of your deserts, yet the natural affection which I bear to my aged father compels me at this time humbly to implore your farther assistance, which as I doubt not (the gods being just in rightful causes) you will perform: so assure yourself your extraordinary kindness, afforded to me in such a time of necessity, shall never be rased out of my heart; and therefore of this you may be ascertained, that no one whatsoever hath so large a possession therein as yourself: so that should you (as the gods forbid!) miscarry therein, when I am dead (as death must assuredly ensue thereon) they will find the name of Alexander written in my heart,"

Their minds thus made known to each other, gave great contentment to them both, especially to sir Alexander, who humbly kissing the hands of the princess, replied thus unto her :

" Madam, there is no danger in the world so great which I shall not adventure on for your sake; were it to perform the twelve labours of Hercules, or with *Aeneas* to encounter with the giant *Turnus*. Be pleased therefore to accept me as your knight and servant; and I hope to behave myself so, that hereafter you shall have no cause to repent you

courage into your breast by the remembrance of :

Much other discourse they had, but the army t
upon the march, summoned sir Alexander to ma
with them. Wherefore, taking a gentle farewe
princess, having vowed constancy on both sides,
himself to the army; whose knightly adventu
those of his two brothers, we shall prosecute in
chapter.

CHAP. IV.

THE necromancer Soto, who lived with the giant
the enchanted castle, knowing by his magic spells
Sicilian army had given their king a total overth
taken him prisoner; as also how they were mau
wards the country of Thrace; he acquainted the g
his knowledge; who thereupon bestirred himself in
to their resistance, sending for his two brothers,
more the Stout, and Pandaphilo the Cruel, to com
speed unto his assistance; who no sooner had notic
but with their forces belonging unto them they
away. In like manner he sent unto count B

first that marched against them was count Brandamil, with an army of fifty thousand Thracians ; where joining battle together, it was fought with much eager courage on both sides, each of them striving to outvie the other in valour ; the one side to defend their native country, the other to revenge losses sustained by the enemy. Victory thus for a long while stood hovering over the heads of both armies, till in the end the valiant knight sir David, who had the honour that day to lead the vaunt-guard, encountering with count Brandamil, by main strength overthrew him, bearing him with his lance quite over the crupper of his horse, whereby his fall was so great that the blood gushed forth out of his mouth ; whereupon the Sicilians gave such a shout, that the earth rang with the sound thereof, and the Thracians' courage was quite cast down ; for the loss of a general is a general loss. And now the Thracians began to turn their backs and flee ; when in the instant came to their rescue the two giants, Brandamore and Pandaphilo, with the forces they had ; which though but few, yet gave such proof of their valour, that the almost routed Thracians, rallying again, set so fiercely upon the Sicilians, that in great disorder they began to give back. And now did sir Guy bestir himself, encouraging those that were about to flee, to stand to it manfully, himself doing such execution upon his enemies, that they flew from before his conquering sword as a flock of sheep from the devouring wolf. Whilst thus he drove the Thracians before him, he at last met with the giant Brandamore, to whom he cried, " Defend thyself, thou misshapen fiend, whose bulk is a weight too heavy for the earth to bear ; and therefore prepare thyself, for I intend thou shalt this night sup with thy master, grim Pluto."

The giant, making little account of his person, and less of his words, thought to snap him at one morsel ; and coming up to sir Guy, intended to take him up, horse and man, under his arm, and carry him away ; but ere he could lay hold of him, sir Guy sent him such a blow on his head, that had not his helmet been of approved metal, he had cleft him down unto the middle : however, it made him to stagger, and recoil two or three steps backwards. And finding by this he had a stronger foe to encounter withal than he thought for, he waxed more wary, not only to as-

sail but defend himself. And now the giant began to use his club, which was of a wondrous length, and withal so weighty, that had it lighted on sir Guy it would at one blow have crushed him to pieces. After long fighting, the giant being angry to be thus repulsed, which never before in his life he had been; he struck at sir Guy with all the strength he had; but missing his blow, he struck his club so deep into the earth that he could not readily draw it out again; which advantage sir Guy seeing, spurred up his horse, and with his lance gave such a violent push upon the giant's breast, that he tumbled backwards over the dead carcases of two or three slaughtered soldiers. Then sir Guy, nimbly alighting from his horse, intended with his sword to have smitten off his head; but at that instant Pandaphilo, the other giant, came running in to his brother's rescue, and undoubtedly had done sir Guy much prejudice, being then almost spent with fighting, had not sir David timely succoured him; who searching out for Pandaphilo, finding his brother so hard beset, he coupled with him in fight, which was performed with such manhood on both sides, that I want art to describe the same. Pandaphilo, trusting to his strength, laid on his strokes with great fury; which blows sir David nimbly avoided, and withal gave his adversary ever and anon such lusty knocks, that he well perceived he had a valiant foe to encounter withal. In the mean time the giant Brandamore was scrambled up, and began a fresh encounter with sir Guy. Whilst these four were busied in fighting, the valiant knight sir Alexander had made such havoc amongst the Thracians, that they began to turn their backs and flee. The two giants, seeing their army in this running posture, ran also, to bear them company; whom the brothers hotly pursued, dealing such blows with their trusty falchions, that they made arms and legs complain to the earth how ill their masters had kept them. The giant Predo, who was at the time of the battle in the enchanted castle, hearing how hardly his brothers fared, hasted with all the speed he could to their relief; whose coming put a stop to the Sicilians, being almost weary with pursuing of them; so that, a retreat being sounded, the giants had time with the remainder of their broken army to secure themselves in their castle, cursing their fortune, and invoking their false gods for their future success.

Sir Alexander presently dispatched a messenger to the princess Mariana, giving her an account of their success in this following letter:

"Most gracious princess,

"GUARDED by the almighty power, and influenced by your divine beauty, we have given the Thracians a great overthrow; which we do not impute so much to the strength of our arms, as to the justness of our cause, and fighting under the banner of such a perfection of excellencies. As for the king your father, of whom I know you are impatient to hear, all we can understand of him is by some prisoners we have taken, that he is confined in the enchanted castle, from which we hope ere long to free him. Till then, most dear princess, rest in hope, assuring yourself, for the effecting thereof, there shall not be wanting the utmost endeavours of

"Your most true and loyal knight,
"ALEXANDER."

The army having refreshed themselves for the space of two days, they then marched against the enchanted castle, but before they were come within a quarter of a mile of it, they were encountered by the giant Predo and his two brothers, with what forces had escaped from the battle: and now began a most terrible fight, insomuch that the earth was changed from a verdant green to a crimson dye, and the heaps of slaughtered carcasses overspread the fields. In the heat of this fight it was sir Alexander's fortune to meet with the giant Brandamore, betwixt whom began a most fierce combat, in which art and valour strived who should have the mastery: for the giant being of an incredible strength, was therein an overmatch for sir Alexander; and he, on the other side, so nimble and skilful, that he returned him blow for blow with advantage. Thus continued they fighting for some space, till in the end, Brandamore, what through the weight of his armour and the hotness of the weather, sweat so abundantly, that it ran into his eyes, and quite blinded him. Sir Alexander taking the best of the opportunity, gave him such a blow on the head as made him to stagger, and redoubling his stroke, at the next blow fetched him down headlong; who in his fall gave such hideous yells

as made a noise like to the cataracts of Nilus. This overthrow of the giant, in whom they put so much confidence, so discouraged the soldiers, that, notwithstanding Predo and Pandaphilo did what they could to persuade them, they would no longer abide by it; so that they were forced to retreat unto their castle for shelter; whom the Sicilians, being over-wearied with fighting, did not instantly pursue, but contented themselves at present with what they had then gotten.

Sir Alexander, after the flight of the Thracians, cut off the giant Brandamore's head, and despoiling him of his armour, sent it as a trophy to the city of Larissa, to be presented to his lady, the princess Mariana, who received the same very joyfully, wondering at the large proportion thereof, and caused it to be hung up in one of the principal temples of their city, as a monument to posterity; and having richly rewarded the messenger, she returned sir Alexander thanks by him in this following letter:

"Most dear knight,

"THAT good fortune is always attendant upon virtue, your actions demonstrate; and for your valour shewed against my enemies, I shall ever stand obliged to you. For the present you sent me, I could not but view it with admiration, as by the same having a prospect of the vast bulk of that unwieldy monster, and therein your invincible courage to encounter with him, and happy success in his overthrow. May the Heavens prosper your future endeavours with good success, and that your actions may be crowned with victory; which to effect shall be the hearty prayers of,

"Your dearest lady and mistress,

"MARIANA."

But to return again to speak of the army.—After they had sufficiently refreshed themselves, and taken care of the wounded soldiers, they marched up to the enchanted castle, wherein now the defendants had strongly enclosed themselves, trusting more to the strength of the place than to their own supposed invincible valour, which now they saw was overmatched by the three victorious knights.

And now no opposition was made till they came to the castle gate, on the top of which were two giants, with many

stones in their hands, to tumble on the heads of any who should offer to scale the walls. The three brothers, approaching near thereunto, espied the brazen pillar, as also the rock of alabaster; and having read the several writings inscribed on them, with a matchless resolution resolved to try the adventure: and first, the undaunted venturous knight sir Guy, putting his hand to the pommel of the first sword, he drew it out with much ease; notwithstanding, he had no sooner laid his hand thereon but he was encountered by a terrible griffin; but sir Guy so nimbly behaved himself, that having deeply wounded the griffin, he flew from him; and immediately was heard a sound out of the enchanted castle, as if it had been the noise of thunder.

The three brothers were much amazed at this terrible noise, expecting some dreadful encounter to ensue presently thereupon; but having waited a time, and seeing nothing follow, they proceeded on in the adventure. And next sir Alexander attempted to draw out the second sword; but ere he could well fasten his hand on the pommel, there came flying against him a most dreadful burning dragon, which smote him with such a force that he could hardly stand upright on his legs; but having once drawn the sword, the dragon immediately vanished away; and at that instant proceeded a more terrible noise from the castle, which made the very foundation thereof to shake, and the walls to stagger and totter about.

This terrible noise being ended, the valiant and undaunted knight sir David, went to pull out the third sword, but in his passage was assailed by a most furious dreadful sagittary; betwixt whom began a cruel combat, which lasted long; but in the end, sir David cutting off one of the sagittary's legs, he nimbly stepped to the sword, and as nimbly drew it out; which was no sooner done, but presently the heavens seemed to be rent asunder with dreadful claps of thunder, intermixed with terrible flashes of lightning; the earth quaked, and terrible groans and yells were heard of damned spirits; then fell a horrible stinking smoke, and all on a sudden the castle, together with the brazen pillar and alabaster rock, were vanished away. The two giants, which before appeared so terrible, now fell down on their knees to the three brothers, begging for mercy. The necromancer *Soto*, who knew by this that his charms were at an end

sought to fly from his deserved vengeance, but all in vain; for his spells now would do him no good, but was forced to yield up his loathed carcass to the mercy of the conquerors. The Thessalian king, who had slept for so long a night, now awaked, wondering at what had happened, not knowing whether he were in the hands of friends or foes. After this messenger that came from the princess Urania, who (as we told you before) was sent in embassy to the giant Protes. With them also awaked many others, who by the necromancer's charms, coming within the compass of the enchantment were there cast into this lasting sleep.

The first thing the three princely brothers did, was, by the help of some of the Thesalians then in the camp, to find out their king; which being known, he was entertained with all respect due to his princely majesty. The two giants were committed unto safe custody, under a guard of valiant soldiers; but as for the necromancer Sote, notwithstanding he pleaded with much rhetoric to have his life saved, his practices were so notorious and diabolical as would admit of no pardon; whereupon, by the commandment of the three brothers, he had his head dis severed from his body. At which instant appeared a great number of fiends come from hell, some of which seized upon his body, and some upon his head, which they carried away with them; leaving behind them such an intolerable stink of sulphur and brimstone, as was able to have suffocated all that were near them, had they not run from the place as fast as their legs would bear them.

All things being thus ordered for the present, and no enemy appearing against them, they left this accursed place, where the castle stood, which had for a long space been the habitation of devils and wicked persons, and marched to the city of Galata, there to refresh their wearied army; from whence they sent letters both into Thessaly, and also to Sicily, to certify them of their good success, and intention to return as soon as opportunity would permit them.

Amongst others which by finishing this enchantment were awaked out of their long sleeping, there was only one gentlewoman, who, now though something overworn through grief and age, yet by the remains of her visage shewed she had once a face which might have been accounted Nature's proud master-piece, and an attractive lodestone wherein

the god of love sat enthroned. All the company, especially the king of Thessaly, were very inquisitive to know what she was, and by what accident she came to be enchanted in that castle; and therefore requested she would be so courteous to them, as to give them a relation thereof. To which, after a deep fetched sigh, she said:

“Although, noble gentlemen, the rehearsal of my misfortunes cannot but breed sorrow in the hearers, much more in the relater; yet to satisfy your curiosity, and in part of retribution for the favours I have received from you, I shall the more willingly impart them to you. Know then, that I am a native of this country, and was, at such time when Fortune smiled on me, wife to a noble knight named Fonteisous, a man renowned through all Thrace for his learning and liberality, two special ornaments of a noble mind. Rich he was both in wealth and virtue, which two, though they seldom go together, yet in him had they their residence. At the age of sixteen years I was married unto him. Now whether likeness be the cause of love, or love the cause of liking, I know not; but so it was, that reciprocal love past betwixt us; I loving him because he was kind unto me, and he being kind to me because I loved him. Long time thus lovingly lived we together, until Atrepos cutting off the thread of his life, gave an *ultimum vale* to my good fortune; for my husband leaving me very rich, and I being withal young and beautiful, you may be sure such a widow would not be long without suitors. And indeed it was not long before I had plenty of them; so that the famous Ulysses’s house, during his ten years’ absence at the siege of Troy, was not more thronged with them to court the chaste Penelope, than was my house to gain my favour. Amongst others of this gallant crew, was one sir Vylon, a man who, had he been endued with internal virtues as he was adorned with a comely outside, he might have been a match fit for a princess. The multiplicity of his vows, the protestations of his love, his gifts upon gifts, were as so many snares to entrap me. To be short, with the catching oratory of his words, and language strewed with flowers, he won me, and matched me. But long had not we been married together, although no cause given on my part, but his smiles were turned into frowns. No just pretence could he make therefore, though many were pre-

“ ‘ Dear Sister,

“ ‘ AFTER many dangers and troubles p
regination, it was my hap to come into this
great expectation of enjoying your happy
hearing how crossly you are matched, and ho
band undervalues your kindred ; because I c
so splendid before him as stands to your c
desire you to come to me as privately as y
castle in the island, commanded by my spec
Brandamore, where we may confer in safety.
ing your presence as soon as possible you can

“ ‘ Your affectionate br

“ ‘

“ This letter was conveyed privately to my
to give me the better opportunity to go thither
pretended a journey to Bœotia, where he said h
a fortnight. All things did, as I then though
my happiness, when as the Fates had decre
contrary ; for taking only one servant for
whom I could repose confidence ; coming w
the castle, I returned him back again, with ins
to excuse my absence from home, as being g

Whilst she was thus discoursing, there chanced to be a Thracian knight, whose dwelling was not far from sir Vylon's, who hearing the relation of her misfortunes ; " Madam," said he, " for what you are so doubtful of, I can in the greatest part resolve you. Know, then, that since the time you were missing, during which space I conceive you have slept, is now fully two years : but what will add most grief to your hearing is, that soon after your husband had thus subtly disposed of you, which he thought to be for a longer space ; he began to revel in all sensual delights, spending his time and coin in such riotous manner, as if he had had the riches of Cræsus, and were to have lived the years of Nestor. But had his wickedness terminated in himself, it had been the more tolerable, but it extended to others in a most barbarous cruelty ; for he, being conscious of his own guilt, thinking if your children lived he might be brought to an account for his riotousness and debauchery, he found a means to make them away, and that in this manner :

" He had in his house a servant named Barco, one as ripe for mischief as himself, and to whom he bare a special affection, as being a companion with him in lewdness ; those two, complotting together, enticed the children to the sea-side, where they had provided an empty boat, into which putting the two innocent babes, they launched them into the sea, and so committed them to the mercy of the waves ; which how they dealt with them is only known to the Almighty Powers. But it was not long ere the children's being missing caused a suspicion amongst the neighbours of hard usage towards them by some belonging to sir Vylon ; nay, there were those who sticked not openly to accuse Barco, as one prompt for any villany, and would receive any impression his master put upon him. Now this was so openly buzzed about, that at last it came to sir Vylon's ear, who, fearing to be detected, thought if Barco were put to the rack, he would discover all ; wherefore he found means to have him poisoned ; a just reward for all such bloody villains, had it been done by a juster hand than did it.

" But see how Divine vengeance pursues wicked actions : sir Vylon, now revelling in all excess without control, was stricken with a sudden frenzy, his limbs also being taken

pany the lady to her mansion, and took her leave of the Thessalian king, and knights, and returned homewards. In will leave her for the present, to relate ments of those renowned sons of Mar ander, and sir David.

CHAP. V.

SOON after the departure of sir Vylon' army were sufficiently refreshed, being all the pains they had taken with the gained; the Thessalian king, and the thinking themselves revenged with the Thracians, they determined to march countries; and having settled their Guy, with his brother David, marched Sicilians back into that fruitful count longed to come to enjoy the company that journey we will leave them

titudes of common people, who all with one voice echoed forth, "Long live the king of Thessaly, and the renowned knight sir Alexander of England." The bells rung, the bon-fires blazed, the conduits ran pure Greekish wine, the streets were hung with rich suits of tapestry; and all the windows along as they passed filled with abundance of spectators to behold the return of their king, and to have a sight of the noble champion sir Alexander, whom they styled the deliverer of their country, the flower of chivalry, the darling of mankind, with all the epithets which might conduce to his praise and magnanimity.

At the palace gate they were met by the princess Mariana, who in all dutiful manner welcomed home her royal father, and with many expressions of love and affection entertained her noble champion sir Alexander. Here did they spend several days in feasting, banqueting, and all the delights that art and cost could invent; but in the midst of all this jollity, there came news to the court of the great preparations which were made by the infidels against the Christians, as you read in the first chapter of this most excellent history. This news struck a sudden damp upon their mirth; for the love of his native country was so dear unto sir Alexander, that, notwithstanding the entire affection he bore to the princess Mariana, he resolved to give what succour he could unto the place wherein his father received his first breath, and from whence his own honour was derived. So making his mind known to the Thessalian king, and taking his solemn leave of his beloved Mariana, with great asseverations of his fidelity to her and promise of return when those wars were finished, he prepared for his journey to Sicilia, to acquaint his two brothers with his resolution; being accompanied therein by divers of the prime Thessalian nobility, who resolved to spend their lives in the company and under the conduct of so noble a champion.

In which journey we will leave them for a time, and return to speak of sir Guy and sir David; who having conducted their army back to Sicily, were entertained with all demonstrations of joy imaginable, especially of the peerless princess Urania, in whose heart the love of sir Guy was so deeply engraven, that nothing but death was able to blot it out. But here likewise, as well as to Thessaly, soon came news of the infidels' great preparations for the invasion of

Christendom ; which when sir Guy heard, he resolved to send to his brother Alexander, to prepare to march homewards ; but ere the messenger was fully dispatched, sir Alexander with the Thessalian lords were arrived at the Sicilian court, to the great joy of sir Guy and sir David, and other martial spirits ; only the princess Urania was deeply melancholy, that now she should part with her dear knight, whose company she prized far above all the riches of the mines of America ; wherefore retiring to her chamber, taking her lute in her hand, she warbled forth this mournful ditty :

My mournful mind doth crave some sweet delight,
And fancy fain would lend me some, I see ;
But fortune frowns, and sends me foul despairs,
And care doth keep all comfort quite from me :
Such passions strange do still perplex my mind,
As I despair of any ease to find.

But let me see : I must not yet despair,
Dame Fortune's wheel may hap to turn again ;
When storms are past, the weather may be fair,
And pleasure comes unlook'd for after pain.
Things at the worst, the proverb saith, will mend ;
Why should not, then, my sorrows have an end ?

But old wives' tales are not yet Scripture all,
For things at worst, are past all mending quite ;
To pining hearts all pleasure seemeth small,
What mirth can do the pining heart delight ?
When Fates do frown, and Fortune is our foe,
Nought can be thought to rid the mind of woe.

Scarcely had she ended her song, when sir Guy came to take his leave of her : finding her sitting in such a given-over manner, one would have thought silence, solitariness, and melancholy, were come under the ensign of mishap to conquer his delight, and drive him from his natural seat of beauty. But now to describe the grief of these two lovers at their parting, I must implore the help of Melpomene, the mournfullest of the nine Muses, to guide my pen ; the sorrow of Orpheus for his beloved Eurydice, Andromache for Hector, *Egeus* for his supposed dead *Theseus*, *Antigone* leading her blind father *Cedipus*, or that of weeping *Niohe* for the

loss of her children, compared to this, deserves not the name of grief. At last, having vented their sorrows through the conduits of their eyes, and that a lovely beauty began again a little to dress herself in her face, the peerless Urania brake silence, and said :

" My dearest Guy, I must confess the excess of my sorrow doth scarce give way to the relief of words, being anchored down with cares in the seas of woe ; so that I am in effect but a living corpse, for which I can only blame your unkindness. Hath my prayers prevailed so far with the Divine Powers, to bring you unto me again in safety, and now will you leave me to enter into fresh dangers ? Did you not swear by all that is divine and human, sooner should Phœbus cease to shine by day, or Luna lend us her light by night, than your heart should be separated from mine, which then you pretended to be dearer unto you than victuals to the almost-famished soul, or drink to those whose throats are parched with thirst ? If my love was so dear to you then, what change have you found in me, that, after the accomplishment of your Thessalian journey, we should not then enjoy the fruition of our loves, but that you will adventure again on new engagements, preferring your honour and desire of fame before my unstained love, which hath been as true and constant to you, as ever was that of the chaste Penelope to her wandering Ulysses ? "

Sir Guy, after many protestations of his constant affection, and how nearly this imminent danger, wherein all Christendom was involved, concerned his honour, which would be for ever stained should he decline such an honourable action, at last drew her consent, although with much reluctancy : so giving her a sweet kiss for a farewell, leaving her in tears for his departure, he went to accompany his two brothers, and those other martial heroes who were now ready prepared to join with him against the enemies of Christendom ; and having with great ceremony taken their leave of the Sicilian king, they took ship, and coasting along the fruitful banks of Italy, befriended both by Neptune and Æolus, they in short time arrived in England, the happy port whereto their desires tended. At that time of their arrival the whole land was in mourning, hearing of those vast forces prepared against them, whom the three brothers comforted in the best manner they might ; and with what expedition they could

make, went to the court, where the noble king Edgar then resided; who entertained them in a most sumptuous manner, being overjoyed for their arrival at such an exigent. Then having consulted together, they sent messengers unto all the rest of the countries of Christendom, to raise what forces they could make, and to be ready to join together in the country of Naples against the common enemy, and this to be done within one month at the farthest: who accordingly raised great forces in each country, and with them marched into Naples at the time appointed. But now, Calliope, the sacred sister of the Muses, assist my pen in setting forth the valiant acts of these renowned knights, which they performed to their own eternal fame and honour, and the general good and benefit of all Christendom.

CHAP. VI.

YOU heard in the last chapter how messengers were sent into all countries of Christendom, for the raising of forces against the infidels; which severally arrived at the place of rendezvous in the fruitful country of Naples; and first (as being nearest) was an army of thirty thousand Italians, conducted by the valiant knight sir Orlando, whom the renowned champion St. Anthony had begotten on the princess Rosalinde, daughter to the king of Thrace. This martial knight, marching before his companies in as much state as did Hector when he traced the fields of Ilium, pitched up his tent in a large plain near unto the city of Nicosia. His pavilion was of a silver colour, adorned with a silken streamer, waving in the air, wherein was pourtrayed a lion rampant, beating his back with his tail, and from his mouth proceeded these verses:

“ Incensed with anger just,
For victory we hope and trust.”

The very next day after these Italians had thus encamped themselves, came marching into the field twenty-five thousand Spaniards, conducted by a valiant knight named sir Pedro, son unto St. James the champion of Spain, whom he begat on the princess Celestine, the beautiful daughter of the king of Jerusalem. After courteous embracements be-

twixt him and sir Orlando, he pitched his camp on the west side of the Italians. His pavilion was blue ; and for his device he had a griffin seizing on his prey, with this motto :

“ Thus griffin-like I do oppose ;
Defend myself, offend my foes.”

The third nation that appeared in these warlike preparations was twenty thousand gallant Frenchmen, mounted on warlike horses, and most bravely accoutred with offensive and defensive weapons. They had for their commander a most heroic knight, named sir Turpin, begotten of St. Denis, the renowned champion of France, on Eglantine, the king's daughter of Thessaly, and who for her pride was transformed into a mulberry-tree. He was with more than ordinary compliments entertained by sir Orlando and sir Pedro, and pitched his camp on the east side of sir Orlando. His pavilion was orange-tawny, embroidered with a purple ; and for his device he had lilies, the arms of France, with this motto :

“ The lily's glory of the field ;
Unto the lily all must yield.”

The fourth nation that engaged in this quarrel for the honour of Christendom, was the hardy Scotchmen, who to the number of fifteen thousand arrived on the fruitful banks of Naples, conducted by that valiant and renowned knight sir Ewin, son to St. Andrew, the famous champion of Scotland, and by him begotten on Artesia, one of the six daughters of the king of Thrace, who were transformed into the likeness of swans, as you may read in the first part of this honourable history. At his first arrival he was highly entertained and feasted by the other captains, and pitched his camp next to the Spaniards. His pavilion was of a red colour, fringed with blue, whereout hung a golden streamer, in which was portrayed the effigies of Mars, looking with a stern countenance, and breathing forth these words :

“ Armed for victory.”

The next that arrived on the fruitful banks of Naples, were a band of valiant Irishmen, to the number of ten thousand, attired in quilted jackets, and slops of blue cotton, being so swift of foot that few horses could outrun them.

These were conducted by a valiant knight named sir Iwan whom the Irish champion, St. Patrick, began on another the six Thracian ladies, whom he had redeemed out of hands of thirty bloody satyrs, as is declared in the 1 Part. This courageous knight was of stature somewhat more than ordinary, and withal of such strength, that he would seize on a wild bull, or any other beast, the never so fierce and strong. At his first approach unto camp he was welcomed with a great shout of the sold being a goodly person, and having his head adorned with plume of ostrich feathers. He pitched his camp next to Scottish army, having a tent of green, intermixed with red, and richly adorned with gold fringe. In his story was portrayed a kite hovering, with a chicken in its claws, with these words :

“ 'Tis common seen, the weakest they
Unto the strong become a prey.”

Scarce were the Irish well settled in their tents, when there arrived the like number of Welshmen, conducted a valiant knight, named sir Owen of the Mountains, son of the renowned champion St. David of Wales, gotten on the beautiful Estrild, daughter of the king Powisland; who had been bred up in all warlike affairs, the appointment of his grandfather, so that for martial prowess he was accounted as valiant a knight as most in Christendom. He was likewise received with the usual ceremonies by the other captains, and pitched his tent next to the Irish. His pavilion was of a blood-red colour, fringed with white, signifying peace to the yielding, and blood and destruction to the obstinate; the words were these :

“ The doom of either life or death,
Consisteth in the conqueror's breath.”

Next came the English army, consisting of four thousand experienced soldiers. They were divided into four battalions, whereof sir Alexander led the van-guard, sir Iwan the main battle, and sir David brought up the rear. These were twenty thousand horsemen, armed in rich plate of steel, to defend themselves, and lances and daggers to offend their enemies. There were of the foot thirty thousand stout archers, having bows of the strongest yew, arrows of a full yard long, headed with steel, with

ey would shoot a full half mile in length. Also twenty ousand pikemen, with pikes of the strongest ash, headed ith steel, as sharp as Spanish needles, to defend the ar- ers from the enemy's horse, and to oppose an army in a raight passage. The rest of the army were pioneers, wag- ners, victuallers, and such others as are commonly at- ndant on an army. At their first landing they were en- rtained by the other commanders with such a shout of y, that the earth rang with the sound thereof, and the hol- w caverns of the hills reverberated with such an echo, as Jupiter had spent his thundering artillery to welcome these glish heroes. They pitched their camp near unto the my of the Italians; sir Guy's pavilion being of watchet, brodered with silver, and fringed with gold; and to dis- guish it from others, it was adorned with the red cross, e ancient arms of England. His two brothers were not r different in their devices; and for the motto of them all, was to this effect:

"Arm'd with a righteous cause, we fear no foe,
No foil, nor flight, much less an overthrow."

Divers captains of other nations came also in aid of the hristians' army; as, sir Lando the Warlike, with five ousand stout Swedish soldiers; sir Pandrasus the Dane, ving in his company a giant named Wonder, for his match- ss strength, which was such, that he would lift a weight at twelve ordinary men could hardly stir; besides many hers, too many to enumerate; the whole sum amounting three hundred thousand.

After they had consulted awhile together, it was con- ided unanimously among them all, that every captain ould have the command of those soldiers he brought out his own country; but that in difficult matters, and where- diversity of opinions might breed confusion, it should be ferred to sir Guy's ordering, who was generalissimo of the ole army. And now, having nothing else to do but to arch against their enemies, sir Guy, to encourage them the ore, being all the chief of them assembled together, made to them this following oration:

"Fellow-soldiers, and brethren in arms! I think I shall t need many words to stir you up to magnanimity; the ssness of our cause being such, as rightly considered, is

enough to make a coward valiant. I hope that you are not so forgetful, that you now go to fight for your parents, your wives, your children, your country, and what should be most dear unto you, the Christian religion; against pagans, infidels, and miscreants, enemies to God and goodness; whose delight is only in blood and rapine, whose trade and practice are the burning and destroying of towns and villages, murdering of matrons, ravishing wives and virgins, tossing of sprawling infants on the tops of their merciless pikes; in sum, such people as act all that barbarism and cruelty prompt them to. Therefore, if you are not willing to see these miseries fall upon you, be valiant and courageous; and so let us willingly go on, armed with a just cause, and doubt not in the least but the just God will give us victory."

No sooner had he ended this oration, but it was received with a general acclamation, each one vowing to live and die in such a cause, and under the conduct of such a general. Being thus resolved, they prepared to dislodge; and having furnished themselves with store of provision, which was freely given them by the Neapolitan king, besides to the number of five hundred waggons for carriage of their ammunition and other necessities, they embarked in several galleys; and cutting the briny face of Neptune, after about a fortnight's prosperous sailing, they came upon the fruitful coasts of Asia; where soon they heard tidings of the Pagans' army, and how they were advanced as far as Galatia, within a hundred leagues of the place where the Christians were landed. And now having brought the armies thus near together, we will look back again into Europe, and shew you by what a wonderful miracle the Christians' army were supplied with an unexpected assistance.

CHAP. VII.

NOW notwithstanding this great preparation to withstand the Pagan army, a great fear and consternation still continued in the hearts of the people; for the report of the vastness of the Pagan's army was spread abroad in each place, so that it was deemed so numerous as not to be encountered withal: the best remedy therefore, as they thought, was by

prayers to God, to crave his assistance against such potent enemies ; so that in every place intercession was sent up to Heaven for succour in this exigency of time.

Now it so chanced, that at the same time there lived in the north country a certain holy hermit, named Sylvanus. To this man it was revealed in a dream, how that the Seven famous Champions were not wholly dead, but that for the good of Christendom they should again awake, and help to overcome the Pagan army ; and that by opening their tombs, and laying the herb basil to the roots of their tongues, they should revive again in good strength and vigour. This dream he declared unto an abbot of an abbey near adjoining, and he to the governor of that province, who altogether went to the English court, and declared the same unto the king ; whereupon it was determined that the experiment should soon be tried ; and accordingly messengers were dispatched to France, Spain, Italy, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales ; which message was no sooner delivered in those several countries, but that they soon applied the same, and found the effect answerable to what the hermit had dreamed ; for immediately thereupon the champions arose as out of a sweet sleep ; and having awhile discoursed of those matters we have in the former chapters declared unto you, the messengers were returned back again with this agreement, that with all expedition they should meet together in the country of Naples aforesaid, that with the better celerity they might overtake and join themselves with the Christians' army. This determination being accordingly made known to each other, they with all speed provided themselves of armour and other necessities for their journey ; and taking the holy hermit Sylvanus along with them, they in a little space met together in the land of Naples. To recite the great joy at this their so unexpected meeting, is beyond the skill of my pen to express ; but having congratulated one another, they agreed to hasten after the Christian army, with all the expedition they could make ; so being furnished with a stately ship, they put forth to sea : but long they had not sailed, when a dreadful tempest overtook them, so that they expected every minute to be devoured, and to make their graves in that merciless element. At last the weather clearing, they found themselves on the coast of fruitful *Thessaly* ; where being landed, they gave thanks to the

Powers above for their safe deliverance: next they provided for the refreshing of their bodies, having in two days before taken no sustenance, for so long had the tempest endured.

Now whilst they were at their collation, they thought they heard the rattling of armour, trampling of horses, shrieks of wounded soldiers, with divers other symptoms of an army fighting not far off; wherefore, to be resolved, they called to a Thessalian, who by his running posture seemed to fly from some danger near at hand; from whom they understood, that about some half a mile from that place the king of Thrace and the king of Thessaly were engaged in a bloody fight. For so it happened, that soon after the departure of St. George's three sons (either through a generous disposition in the king of Thessaly, not willing that kings should be too close confined, or through the negligence of them that should have looked after him) the king of Thrace made an escape out of prison; and having a band of his soldiers in a readiness, they surprised the place wherein the two giants Predo and Pandaphilo were likewise kept in hold, and set them at liberty; and being thus at freedom, went into Thracia, where they soon raised an army; and being accompanied with the two giants aforesaid, they entered Thessaly, harassing the same with fire and sword: to oppose whom the king of Thessaly had raised an army, and both parties were at that time engaged in a fierce and bloody battle.

The Christian champions having heard in what danger the king of Thessaly stood, resolved to succour him: and so buckling on their armour, being guided by the Thessalian, who had fled from the fight, they came to the army just as they were in a running posture; but soon by their valour, they made it known what difference there is between multitude and manhood; for laying about them with their keen-edged falchions, they soon made lanes of slaughtered carcasses, so that the Thracians fled from before their blows, as flocks of sheep from before the wolf, or chickens at the sight of the kite. The two giants, seeing the Thessalians thus make head again, whom just before they accounted vanquished, they made up to the head of their army; whom, when the champions had beheld, St. George singled out the giant Predo, and St. Denis encountered with Pandaphilo: and now such blows were dealt amongst them, that Mars himself might have

been a spectator of the fight: here Strength and Courage seemed to strive for superiority, Fury and Valour encountered each other, giving and receiving such mighty strokes as none but themselves were able to sustain. At length St. George with his cuttle-axe gave the giant Predo such a blow as dashed into his brains, and made way for Death to take possession of his body. Pandaphilo, seeing his brother's fall, upon his knees desired mercy, which the noble champion St. Denis granted him. In the mean time the other champions had made such dreadful havoc among the Thracians, that all the fields lay strewn with their slaughtered carcasses; the king himself, being deadly wounded, was taken prisoner.

The king of Thessaly, in the mean time, was in great admiration what these strangers should be, who had brought Victory to his side, which was taking her wings to fly to his adversaries; and therefore, now the field being cleared of all enemies, he went unto them, desiring to know to whose valour he was so much indebted, as the rescue of his life and kingdom. But when he understood they were the renowned champions of Christendom, whose fame was spread all the world over, and who were supposed to be dead; and how that St. George was the father of those three princely brothers, who had before so valiantly fought for him; he was transported with an ecstasy of joy, as was that father whose three sons returned home victors from the Olympic games. And having congratulated each other, they took order for their prisoners, which were in a manner the remainder of the whole army. Then marched they in good array to the city of Larissa, being met by the princess Mariana, attended with a train of five hundred virgins, attired all in suits of blue sarsenet; who having done her obeisance to her father, she most courteously welcomed the Christian champions, especially St. George, for the entire affection which he bore to sir Alexander.

And so did they spend some few days in much mirth and content; when one night, at such a time when the bright star of heaven had set his fiery brass-hoofed coursers in the east, and that the jetty sable Night had overspread the den of glistering locks; Morpheus the god of sleep having closed up the eyes of mortals, and cast them into deep sleep; as St. George lay sleeping on his bed, there appeared

peared to him the likeness of a beautiful angel, which breathed forth these words :

- “ Brave English champion, make you no delay,
But to the Christians' army post away :
Fame calls aloud, and Mars doth beat alarms ;
Then leave off court delights, and fall to arms.”

Next morning, no sooner had Phœbus with his refulgent beams enlightened the hemisphere, but St. George arose from his drowsy bed, and relating his vision to the other champions, they agreed with all speed to hasten to the Christian army ; and having acquainted the king of Thessaly with their determination, they prepared to be gone, being accompanied to the sea-side with the chiefest of the Thessalians. At their entering into the ship, the king presented each of the champions with rich diamond rings, and to St. George he gave, over and above, a rich collar of esses, having hanging thereon a medal of gold, beset with precious stones, and in it the picture of an elephant, for his elephant and giant-like valour shewed in his defence. The princess Mariana at the same time sent unto sir Alexander a signet made of polished jasper, wherein was engraven a heart wounded with a sword, and crowned with a wreath, with this word, “ Amarete.”

So taking their solemn leaves of each other, the wind standing fair, they set sail : where we will leave them for a while, to speak of what befel the Christian army in the mean time, whom, you may remember, we left upon the coasts of Asia : who hearing the Pagans' army was so near, provided themselves both to assail and withstand their enemy : and so by leisurely marches drew nearer unto them. And now did sir Guy send out twenty of his nimblest horsemen to discover what they could of the enemy : who, returning back, brought with them six Persians, whom they had taken prisoners, by whom they understood that the whole army was encamped on a spacious plain not far off, dreadless of an approaching foe : whereupon it was determined, that that very night, somewhat before the break of day, they should fall upon them ; which they did in this manner : First in the van, marched the valiant knight sir Alexander, with the choicest of the English horsemen : on his right hand the famous French knight sir Turpin, with

the flower of the French cavalry; on the left hand sir Pedro commanded a gallant party of Spaniards, mounted on such speedy-paced gennets as for their swiftness were said to be engendered by the wind. And that their army might spread the farther, lest they should be surrounded by the numerous forces of their enemies, they had for outwings on the one side five thousand Swedes, conducted by sir Lando the Warlike, and six thousand Germans on the other side, led by a valiant knight named count Primaleon. The main battle was conducted by the matchless knight sir Guy, with thirty thousand foot of bows and pikemen, whose warlike resolution carried victory in their very looks. On his right hand marched the warlike Danes, commanded by sir Pandrasus, having in his company the giant Wonder. On his left hand was placed the valiant Scottish men, conducted by their valiant leader sir Ewin. The rest was brought up by sir David, with the rest of the English, having on his right hand the stout sir Phelim, with his nimble Irishmen, and on his left sir Owen, with the hardy Welsh. Being thus marshalled, they set forward; but ere they came to the camp, their enemies had notice of their approach, who thereupon instantly armed themselves, and put themselves in as good a posture as on the sudden they could.

The first that encountered each other were the valiant knight sir Pedro, with his resolute Spaniards, against the bassa of Aleppo; betwixt whom was fought such a terrible battle, that the earth resounded with the noise of their blows. Next did the magnanimous knight sir Alexander encounter with the soldan of Babylon, sending him such a flight of arrows as would have darkened the sky in a clear day. The Babylonians, on the other side, laid on load with great courage, seeking with their horse to trample them under foot; but that the pikemen kept them off with such courage, as cast many riders to the ground, and put the troops in great disorder. On the other side sir Turpin, with the French, gave a lusty charge on the king of Egypt, insomuch that he was in great danger of a total rout, had he not been timely succoured by the king of Morocco, who, stoutly interposing, drove the French back in great confusion; whereupon sir Lando the Warlike set upon them with an undaunted courage, which gave a check to their proceedings; which with his warlike Swedes he so stoutly followed, that coming up to

the king of Morocco, after a fierce encounter betwixt *them* two, in which Mars himself might have been a looker on, at length the king of Morocco, being deeply wounded, surrendered up his life and body to the victor's disposal.

And now the main battle came forward, by which time the sun with his beams had gilded the hemisphere, so that they could see to fight with more eagerness than they had done before. The valiant knight sir Guy charged strongly upon the Persians, who with courage and skill defended themselves. Count Primaleon, with his Germans, encountered the Arabians. And now generally both armies were fully engaged: so that death began to appear in its greatest horror: then was cutting, hacking, and slashing on every side; the renowned Christian champions dealing such blows with their swords, and giving so many Mahometans their deaths, as if they intended to overcharge Charon's boat in ferrying them over the Stygian river. The infidels, on the other side, held out with great obstinacy, not shrinking from any danger, although they were ready to be carried away in streams of their own blood. Thus with great obstinacy continued they fighting, until the sable night parted their fury, when each side retired to their camp.

Next morning, no sooner had Aurora ushered in the day but both armies met again in the field; and as if their stock of valour were fresh renewed, with more eagerness and earnestness than before, fell to their work of mankind's destruction. The thundering drums beat alarms of death, and the shrill trumpets sounded forth that day the knell of many thousands. Horror, death, and destruction surrounded the Pagans on every side; yet still their fresh number made more work for the Christians' valour. In the heat of this fight it was sir Guy's chance to meet with the horse-faced Tartar (whom we told of in the First Chapter of this Third Part), whom he resolved to encounter: but the sight of him so affrighted the other horses, that not one of them could endure to come near him: whereupon sir Guy alighted from his steed, and with his cuttle-axe approached the monster, whose very looks would have affrighted any but such a one whose heart was fraught with true magnanimity. The monster was readier to assail than to be assailed: so that betwixt *them two* began a most fierce and terrible combat. The monster was so nimble, and laid on load so strangely, that

was never so put to it all the days of his life. At giving his advantage, he gave the monster such a blow on his thigh, that, sending forth such a hideous yell, from him with a nimble pace to the rear of his army. With the Pagans began to shrink, and the Christians to stand firm; when the wizards and enchanters, which the king had brought with him, began to shew their power; so that on a sudden there was such a fear and confusion throughout all the host of the Christians, as put a stop to their full career of victory: for immediately such a darkness overspread them, that they could hardly discern one another; and withal they received divers blows which they did not perceive who it was that gave them. This lasted for three hours' space together, which much diminished the Christians' courage; but making their hearty prayers to God, they were not only delivered from these unseen blows, but also the darkness turned upon the army: from whence was heard such hideous shrieks and howlings, with such other dreadful noise, as if hell were loose, and the devils gone to barley-break. Upon this the Christians, not daring to pursue them any farther, retreated to their camp; and having set a strong watch, they lay quiet themselves for that night.

The next morning, preparing themselves again to fight, they heard behind them a sound of trumpets, as it were of an army upon a march; whereupon sir Guy sent out a party to enquire over what they were; who found them to be the renowned Champions of Christendom, that after their exile from Thessaly, having a prosperous wind, had landed on the coasts of Asia; where hearing, by the report of Fame's loud sounding trumpet, where these sons of valor were assembled together, they with a speedy march came up unto them. But now to express the great joy, and with wonder and amazement, betwixt these noble warriors, at this their meeting, it would require the skill of Homer, and the aid of Calliope, that sweet tongued sister of the Muses, for to express: to see such near and dear relations, who were supposed to be dead, and to see them at such a distance when as their help was so needful, it far surpassed the joy that Grecian father when his three sons returned victors from the Olympic games. First they were thus congratulating the happy sight of

each other, they had an alarm from the camp of the giants, who being conducted by the three giants, with assured confidence of victory came marching up to the Christians' army, thinking them so shattered and dismayed, not able to endure another fight, and therefore came rather as to a spoil, than to be encountered withal: but they found the Christians ready to entertain them with a bloody banquet; for coming in disorder, they were received with such a lusty charge as sent many of their souls to the infernal regions. St. George, perceiving the three giants the only stop of the Christians' victory, he singled out one of the chiefest of them; the valiant champion St. Denis encountered with another; and the courteous St. Anthony with the third. Whilst they were thus engaged against each other, dealing such blows as if Alcides were again living and fighting with the giant Anteus, it was sir Guy's fortune to meet with the Egyptian king, accompanied with his magicians and soothsayers, who began afresh to use their enchantments; and first they raised up the likeness of a mighty black bear, which running hither and thither in the Christians' army, put them in great disorder. At last she ran violently against sir Guy, who laying manfully about him, he thought he had cut off one of her legs, but when she had vanished away, it proved only a leg of a stool. Next came running among them a mighty wild boar, with tusks as large as an ordinary cow's horn. This boar so frightened the soldiers, that wheresoever he came they tumbled over one another in heaps. And having thus played his wrecks among the English, he next ran into the army of the Spaniards, snorting and tearing the ground with his tusks. The valiant knight sir Pedro, hearing the shout of the soldiers, and wondering what was the matter, came riding in haste to the place; and viewing the boar, he ran against him with all his might; but notwithstanding his sword was made of the purest Lydian steel, yet made it no impressions on the sides of the boar: wherefore sir Pedro, seeing that way would not do, the boar coming towards him with open mouth, he ran his sword down his throat, thinking thereby to cleave his heart in twain; but the boar therewith vanished in a flame of fire, which singed the mane of sir Pedro's horse, and made such a smoke that they hardly could discern one another.

Whilst thus these necromancers were practising their devilish enchantments, in the mean time the three renowned champions had by their magnanimous prowess conquered the giants; with whose fall fell also the courage of the whole Pagan army, so that in great disorder they began to run. And now all hands were bathed in blood, and the thirsty soil ran with a purple stream. In one place lay disinherited heads, dispossessed of their natural seignories; there lay arms whose fingers yet moved, as if they would feel for those who made them feel; and legs, which, contrary to common reason, were made heavier by being discharged of their burdens.

And now the Christians, over-wearied with killing, had, with the day, brought many thousand Pagans to their ends, when the sable Night, drawing her black curtain over the hemisphere, put a period to the pursuit. The next morning the soldiers arose betimes to pillage the field, which they found exceeding rich. Most of the Pagan commanders were slain, and the whole army so shattered, that scarce a hundred of them were left together in one company. The horse-faced monster, with some others, made their escape, being so swift that no horse could overtake him. Amongst the rest of the prisoners that were taken, was one of the chief Egyptian magicians, who being stripped of his uppermost robe, there was found about him a number of spells, charms, and other necromantic characters: amongst others was the picture of a devil, this label proceeding out of his mouth:

"Thou, by our help, to pass shall bring
Many a great and direful thing."

Which label being by one of the soldiers pulled off from the picture, underneath it there was thus written:

"Whenas ten years thou com'st to tell,
Then bid thy skill in charms farewell,
For thou must then descend to hell."

And now belike the time was come whenas his charms were at an end, as also those of several of his companions, whom the devil had by that label deluded, but by the writing on the other side deceived: for these sorcerers, thinking, notwithstanding their army was routed, to raise such a company of infernal spirits as should be able to

with the whole Christian army, they therefore began to their invocations, and to call for help unto the devil, as used to do; but now, instead of the spirits obeying commands, loud noises tormented the air, and the art of heaven began to roar; the amazed firmament seemed rend in twain, and the affrighted rafters of the sky to sh black pitchy clouds obscured the sky, and all the light was to be seen was only the dreadful flashes of light. This dreadful tempest continued near the space of an h when all on a sudden it began to be calm, and the win retire, and sink into their seat; Phœbus sent forth his some rays, which dispelled the darkness of the pl clouds: when the Christians, looking about them, saw ruefullest spectacle that ever mortal eye beheld: the was strewed with mangled carcasses, and those as black pitch, stinking of sulphur and brimstone; for, the ten years being expired wherein they had covenanted with devil, he now sent his spirits to fetch their souls, who mangled their bodies in that despitous manner we told of; a just reward for all such as devote themselves to service of the devil.

The Christians having obtained this signal victory, thanks to God throughout all the army. And now, vic growing scarce, by reason of the great number of sold they resolved to break up camp; and those that would depart home to their own countries. Sickesses and dis also increased daily among them, by reason of the ho of the climate: whereupon sir Turpin, with his French took their leaves and departed homewards; soon after Pedro, with his army of Spaniards; and quickly after, of the rest; so that at last there were none left but the lish with sir Pandrasus and his warlike Danes. The Champions of Christendom, who for their former acts been eternized all the world over, were resolved to d away in a ship by themselves. And now, being thus tered, we shall (sweet Clio, the sacred sister of the Muses, assisting us) relate the several adventures v happened to each of them in their several perambula

OF CHRISTENDOM.

CHAP. VIII.

AND now shall first our pen attend the actions and his warlike French; who having marched many miles together, they then took shipping, tedious passage at sea arrived on the island of whose king they sent a friendly message, desiring for their present necessity, and wherewithal to ships, promising to pay him for the same to the farthing. But this king, named Isakius, being a having wrongfully attained the crown, not on their reasonable request, but also prepared to against them, and by force to drive them out of his which he was the more confident to do, having in court a giant named Guylon, whom with great re had hired to side with him in his tyranny. This was a giant of wonderful stature, having been by the deserts of Hyrcania. He would eat up a fat a meal, and afterward drink up four gallons of wine made him of such a vast proportion, that he was terrible to behold. His usual weapon wherewith he was a square bat of iron, having a knob at the end thirty pounds weight, and on his body he wore a mail of a wonderful strength. This proud giant was ceited of his own strength, that he thought himself encounter singly with a host of men; and therefore with him only the guard which belonged to the marched against the French, promising to bring them unto Isakius. But promises without performance nothing. In this high resolution, with fury he fought the French, dealing as many wounds as blows, and as deaths almost as wounds: and now his iron bat was bruised with blood, and heaps of slaughtered carcasses each side of him; the common soldiers ran from him with as much fear as the partridge from the pursuing Sir Turpin, seeing such havoc made amongst the: thought it high time to shew his valour, and put a such proceedings; wherefore with much force, and prudence, he set upon him: but the giant's arms such proof that he nothing prevailed; for notwithstanding Sir Turpin was as gallant a knight as ever be

advantaged by the ground and might the better deal with him dained a better remedy, for at th pened that sir Pedro, with his ar been sorely weather-beaten at sea, forced to that island for succou landed, but they had information fore after a short refreshing, they now slaughter and destruction fell devouring sword making many win Death to enter in at. Much coura parts, each striving to gain honour now, notwithstanding the giant's Frenchmen bound to the king, he w his errand, and for safeguard of his wards the city. But there he found for the citizens, hearing how the F and that the giant with the king's gu with them, they took the opportunity ing a general insurrection, seized up gates of the city, and stood near

sir Pedro would needs head, whilst the rest refreshed themselves in the city. These fresh men, by the intelligence of the country people, had soon notice whither the giant with the greatest part of his men were gone : whereupon sir Pedro, taking along with him a choice party of the swiftest horsemen, pursued him so fast, that in a short space they had a view of him ; but the envious Destinies had so ordered it, that near thereunto there was a strong castle, into which he was entered before he could be overtaken ; wherefore they resolved for to besiege it, and either force him by famine to submit himself, or to gain his freedom by hazard of battle.

Whilst they were thus busied in besieging the giant, and the army refreshing themselves in the city, it happened that the captain of the guard, with a party of such as fled with him, being joined to some others, whose despicable fortunes had made them desperate, having intelligence that the French and Spanish ships were but weakly guarded, he with incredible celerity seized on them, forcing those seamen that were in them to weigh anchor, hoist sail, and proceed to sea, intending to go into the island of Zeylon, near thereunto adjoining, to raise forces to withstand the enemy ; or if that failed, to seek a habitation in some other remote country. Whilst they were thus hovering at sea, it chanced that sir Owen of the Mountains, with a band of his valiant Welshmen, came sailing that way, being severed from sir Phelim with his Irish by a storm at sea. Sir Owen, seeing these ships, imagined them to be his faithful friends the French and Spaniards, and therefore made up to them ; but the mistake being soon perceived, they instantly fell to fighting pell mell. And now Death shewed himself with much horror, and blood filled the wrinkles of the Sea's visage, which the water would not wash away, that it might be witness it was not always his fault when we condemn his cruelty.

Sir Owen with great valour defended himself, notwithstanding he was oppressed with the multitude of his enemies, which were so many in number above his men, that he had been in some danger of being worsted, had not, in the very nick of opportunity, sir Phelim with his Irish come timely to his rescue ; but now being strengthened with the recruit, they so resolutely charged on the Cypriots, th

prise of the Welsh and Irish, in all
 But now to recount the great joy at th
 ing, it is beyond my art to express; l
 tions passed betwixt them, they took
 safeguard of their ships, and then with
 ed to the city : where they were entert
 great joy, being magnificently feasted
 complimented with shows and repres
 with great cost and art. Whilst they
 in delights, there came to them a mess
 Guylon, with a letter directed to the
 tians' army, which had invaded the isl
 letter or challenge being opened, contai

" THINK not proud Christians, alth
 fraud you have invaded our country,
 subdue our hearts, although you may b
 bodies. Now if your arms be answeral
 and that you will maintain with your s
 compassed by craft; I challenge the
 fight with me upon this condition

knight sir Owen of the Mountains, who returned the count this answer to his challenge :

" Proud Giant,

" WHOSE valour consisteth in boasting, and who triumphest before conquest, know that thy challenge shall be answered in justification of what we have done; prepare, therefore, thyself against to-morrow, when I will not fail to meet thee. Till then, farewell.

" OWEN of the Mountains."

Accordingly the next day, being richly mounted on a gray Barbary steed, armed in a coat of mail, with a sword by his side, and a strong keen falchion in his hand, he rode towards the castle, accompanied with the French, Spanish, and Irish captains, and a band of lusty soldiers, lest there should be any treachery shewn by the other side. Soon after came the giant forth of the castle, attended only by a dwarf : he was on foot, for he was too heavy for any horse to bear him. He was likewise armed in a coat of mail, and came with his great bat of iron in his hand, which he flourished over his head with great pride and ostentation. Drawing near unto sir Owen, with a haughty voice, stuffed with arrogancy, he thus spake unto him :

" Proud knight, now shall thy life pay for thy presumption, and thy ruin be the effect of thy overdaring ; who thinkest to encounter with me in single combat, from whose presence whole troops have run, as dreading to come within the compass of my invincible arms : therefore, before thou urgest me too far, let me advise thee to dismount, and humble thyself at my feet, which may be a means to obtain the more favour at my hands."

Sir Owen, smiling at the words of the giant, returned the braggadocia this answer :

" Giant, leave thy proud boasting ; for know it will behove thee more to use thy hands than thy tongue. When thou hast me in thy power, use me as thou wilt ; and since thou wert so courteous as to advise me, I shall also be so kind as to warn thee to have a care of thyself, lest with my sword I so belabour thy jacket, as shall make thee promiseless, except thou couldst perform more."

And now sir Owen, seeing the giant on foot, alighted

...breaches almost in
of wounds to enter. At last the gra
weightiness of his iron club, togethe
sun, which then shined forth in its
him so sweat as if he had been wo
forge, or hammering at the sooty god
like the dying taper, willing to give
fore his fall, taking his iron club in bo
at sir Owen with all his might; but l
with the sweat, he missed his blow,
thereof tumbled down upon his face, &
by a fit opportunity to finish his vic
did, by cutting off his head from his b

The Cyprians, seeing their cham
yielded up the castle; and the news be
the country, they came from all places
selves unto these valiant captains' :
their submissions with much gentlenes
after, they caused an assembly to be
persons of all the realm, before whom
was brought; where the council being
est advantage.

wise favoured Amadeus, and by surpris'd faults bereft them of their lives, and seized on their estates. And that he might not be brought to an account for these lawless actions, he gained to his support the assistance of the giant Guyton, which by your matchless force hath been brought to his end. And now being secured, as he thought, in his tyranny, he soon disposed of young Amadeus; but how, or which way, is to us unknown. Our request therefore is, most noble captains, that he may by force be made to confess what he hath done with him; that if alive, he may be restored unto us; but if otherwise (which the gods forbid), he may be punished for the same according to his deserts."

Then was Isakius called to answer for himself; who, trembling for fear, having a load of guilt upon his conscience, with a pale countenance and faltering speech made this reply:

"If a fair acknowledgment may mitigate my crime, I shall hereby freely give it you, confessing the uttermost to my knowledge; that by imparting the same I may in some measure unburden my conscience, which doth now grievously oppress me. Know, then, that an ambitious desire of sitting on the throne, made me make a ladder of mischief to ascend thereunto; in order hereof, having levelled my way by destroying all those whom I thought would oppose my designs, yet thought I not myself sure until I had so disposed of the heir that he might not be heard of, knowing that people have always a great affection to the lawful successor; yet resolved not to murder him, that if afterward I should be called to an account, by preserving his life I might the better secure my own. Therefore, by the help of a trusty servant, I placed him with a shepherd of this country, he not knowing him to be the prince, but the by-blow of some gentlewoman who was not willing to have her shame known; yet with this caution, that he should bring him up as his own son; and for so doing, he was liberally rewarded with a considerable sum of money. Thus, gentlemen, have I given you a true relation of what I have done with the prince; and if you please to send to the shepherd, you will have the truth confirmed by eye-sight, being at this present in good health, as I am informed the same servant which placed him there, and who (if

company before t
fear; but at last spying Beno (for :
named) his heart waxed more ch
heard them demand where the youn
trusting, by Beno's presence, young
named Amadeus) to be the party th
almost fallen into a swoon, expectin
should be hanged up : but being a li
informed them that the prince was :
of sheep, not past half a mile dist
whereupon two of the chief of ther
shepherd, went to seek him. Now a
being entered into a little thicket, th
with great harmony uttered forth thi

The little lark that in the ground :
And there bred up till feathers
No sooner she a flight or two hath
But up she mounts unto the loft
Where if she see sunshine and weath
How then for joy she twittles in the

The prince having ended this sonnet, they went up to him, doing him reverence, which put him into a fear and amazement, wondering at what was done unto him; yet was not his fears so great as was the old shepherd's, seeing him with them, whom he reputed to be his father. At last the old shepherd acquainted him with their message, which could not at first enter into his heart, although he had always entertained noble thoughts under a vulgar habit; yet this so sudden a message made him to doubt whether that he were awake, or that he had seen some vision or apparition; at last a little recollecting himself, he spake in this manner:

"Think it not strange, gentlemen, if your words so on the sudden do surprise me; nor blame me not if I am slow to believe wonders, for such your speeches do import. 'Tis true, indeed, I have heard of several persons who have left their commands and riches to enjoy the quiet of a retired life; but for the servant of a shepherd to be the son of a king, and he ignorant of it, appears no less than a miracle to me."

But the messengers seconding the old shepherd's speeches, and with many asseverations confirming the truth of their words, at last belief entered into the crannies of his heart; and, committing his sheep to the guidance of another, he returned with them to the shepherd's cottage, to refresh himself before his journey. But when the old shepherd's wife understood that their servant was a prince, she was herself in conceit no less than a queen; saying, "Ornus (for so, as I told you, they called the prince), when thou comest to thy kingdom I hope thou wilt bestow on me a new gown." The gentlemen laughed heartily at her request, promising, in the prince's name, she should have a good one. This so overjoyed the old woman's heart, that she brought forth unto them the choicest cakes she had in the house, whereon they fed very heartily: and so taking leave of the shepherd and his wife, who could scarce speak for weeping, they prepared for their journey. The princely shepherd comforted the aged couple with great promises of love and friendship which he should bear unto them, for the care they had of him in his childhood; so taking horse, in a short time they came to the city, where they were very joyfully received by the four Christian captains. But when the citizen

derstood how their rightful prince was returned to rule over them, it is not to be imagined the joy they received, which they expressed by ringing of bells, making of bonfires, and other demonstrations of great shoutings and laughter. Then, by the general consent of the states, the prince Amadus was crowned king, and the usurper Isakius committed to prison; which being done, the four Christian captives, having victualled their ships, and having a prosperous wind, put forth to sea, where we will leave them, to shew what befel to the other Christian champions during the mean time.

CHAP. IX.

Now shall our pen attend the valliant exploits of those two famous captains, sir Orlando, who conducted the bold Italians, and sir Ewin, the captain of the warlike Scots; who having taken their leave of the Seven Champions, as also of St. George's three warlike sons, marched from thence with the remainder of their army, the greatest part of them being consumed by the pestilence and for want of victuals. Having in their march passed the confines of Asia, and gone through the fruitful countries of Greece, they at last took shipping in a haven town of Peloponnesus, when, after three days' sailing, they saw before them a goodly island, from whence they heard most terrible shrieks, as it were of tortured persons and people in great distress; whereupon sir Orlando and sir Ewin commanded the mariners to make up to it, which they endeavoured to do: but coming near to it, it moved so from them, that, notwithstanding all their endeavours, they could not reach it. Whilst thus they stood amazed at this strange adventure, there appeared unto them out of the sea a certain triton, or sea-god, in the likeness of those which they call *mer-men*, who shaking his locks, spake to them in the ship in this manner:

"I know you much wonder at the strange moving of this island, and at the cries and shrieks which you hear from thence: to satisfy you then, know that this island belongeth to the famous necromancer Bandito, and whose great skill in the art of magic hath made his name known through all the countries of Africa and Asia. This Bandito, b

uch time as he practised the Black Art, fell in love with the duke's daughter of Candia, and by reason of his extraordinary riches, and high parentage, was well entertained by the duke her father; but her affections were wholly settled on a young gentleman named Dyon, one whose virtues were above his wealth, and his comely personage above his patrimony. To him her love was so firmly linked, that he resolved that nothing but death should part their affections; and therefore, to prevent her father's importunity, who each hour lay at her to match with Bandito, she agreed with her love Dyon to forsake her father's house, and accompany him to any other country, where they might freely enjoy each other's affections. Accordingly the next night, lame Cynthia favouring their designs, she packed up the choicest of her jewels, and, attended only with one servant, whom she could trust, stole out of her father's house; and meeting with her beloved Dyon, at a place where they had appointed, having a bark, they entered therein, and the next morning, before she was missed, were gotten out of the pursuit of her father; who having intelligence thereof, fared like a mad man, exclaiming against the heavens in a prodigious manner, and threatening severe punishment on his laughter. But when it came to the ears of Bandito, he, in great fury to be disappointed, vowed revenge on all her relations: but wanting means to effect his desires, because the duke was very strong and potent, he betook himself to the assistance of the Devil; and entering into a solitary wilderness, having with him store of magical books, he fell unto his conjurations, and in short space raised up the Devil, with whom he indented, That having by his means revenged himself upon his enemies, and to live the remainder of his life in all delight and pleasure, at the expiration thereof his body and soul to be at the Devil's disposing. Having thus agreed in his devilish contract, his desire of revenge was so urgent, that he rested not until, by his magical arts, he earned where these two unfortunate lovers were landed; of which he presently informed the duke, who hasted thither with all speed for to surprise these deplorable innocents: it this Bandito, having them now together, wrought so by his devilish enchantments, that the island wherein they were moved from the place of its proper station, and was now in the face of the ocean whither he pleased for to

a star, depicted on their left she know themselves ordained to be ture was allotted."

And having uttered these words into the sea, leaving all the people wonder and admiration.

The triton being thus vanished, Orlando and sir Ewin, for the better soldiers, stripped off their doublet shoulders, there was visible there a sure conquest, which was pronounced upon the soldiers gave such a shock as the cataracts of the river Nile, and so in sunder.

The noise being ceased, the island to move, now became fixed, so that it approached near unto it; but attempted often put by, by spirits in the likeness of serpents, which so frightened the soldiers induce them to join with them in battle. Orlando and sir Ewin, in whose brea

a terrible monster in the shape of a lion, having eyes as large as saucers, and teeth longer than the tusks of a boar bred up in the Caledonian woods, who assaulted the two knights with great fury. In the mean time the soldiers landed themselves, and in a warlike posture came to the rescue of the two champions, who by this time, through the scorching heat of the fire, and the strength of the monster, began to faint. Whereupon a selected party of the chiefest of them, being armed with coats of mail, and having in their hands steeled javelins, which would penetrate and strike through any armour, although as strong as that which Vulcan by the request of Venus made for Achilles; these with a valiant resolution ran towards the monster; but coming at him, he vanished away, leaving behind him such a horrible stink, as if it had proceeded from the lake Avernus, one of the poisoned rivers of hell. In the mean time the loud artillery of thunder sent forth such loud noises as rent the air, and made the ground whereon they stood to shake, attended with dreadful flashes of lightning; when presently followed a serene sky; and a seeming castle, which stood before them, immediately vanished; whither approaching, they found the dead carcase of the magician, his joints all dislocated, and the trunk of his body as black as the sooty Moor, or Cimmerian darkness. The duke and the two lovers were eased from their torments, whom they congratulated upon their happy deliverance. These three persons, though much amazed at what had happened, yet could hardly believe themselves delivered from their persecuting tormentors; but being made sensible of their perservation by the two noble captains, their joy was inexpressible; the duke returning them his grateful thanks in these words:

"Most magnanimous heroes, to whom I am indebted for the remainder of my unfortunate life, you have so far obliged me by this favour, and that so perfectly, that I must be your debtor all the days of my life. All that I can offer unto you is, that you would employ me in your service, that I might testify unto you in some part a requital of your favours; which I acknowledge you have so undeservedly conferred upon us."

"Most courteous prince," replied sir Orlando, "all the requital we shall desire at your hands is, that you will pardon what is past, and freely bestow your daughter on"

daughter, who humbly kneele
ness for what she had done;
"may thy joys with him here
more during, than thy trouble
therto; and know, it repenteth
which hath forced thee to do w

After these words spoken, wi
love and forgetfulness of what
view the body of the magician,
fully dismembered as cannot w
Here lay his brains in one place
a piece of his jaw-bone; here an
place a piece of his buttocks, w
rotten guts, and all-stinking so a
thereof was not able to be endure

And now, there being no enter
so many people as they had with
their departure; but before they v
pillar near to the place where
pieces; on which pillar these ver

The pillar being erected, the two valiant captains, sir Orlando and sir Ewin, with the duke of Candia, the princess, and sir Dyon, took ship; and having a prosperous wind, in a few days arrived on the fruitful coast of Candia, and with speed marched to Cidonia, the chief city thereof, where they were entertained most joyfully; the bells rang, the bonfires blazed; the walls, windows, roofs, towers, steeples, and battlements, all beset with people to behold the sight: the windows were hung with rich arras and curious tapestry, and the conduits ran with Greekish wine. Thus in great triumph did they march through the streets, until they came to the duke's palace, which for stately bravery and brave stateliness was erected according to what the height of fancy could express. The fluted pillars, the strange colossuses, the ascents, and the statues, were wonderful to behold. Here were they entertained by the duke with all delights imaginable. Each day was honoured with a feast, where nothing was wanting to crown the appetite with content: the boards were served with princely dishes: and the juice of the grape flowed in cups of burnished gold. But these two valiant captains, in whose breasts were sown the seeds of true magnanimity, soon grew weary of these carpet delights, and therefore informed the duke of their intention to depart; who, though very loth, as persons to whom he owed whatever he was, yet condescended thereunto. But before their departure, in a grateful acknowledgment of the great kindness he had received from them, he presented sir Orlando with a rich sword, the pommel of which was enchased with diamonds, rubies, and other stones of rich price: upon the blade was this motto engraven:

"The benefit receiv'd shall not
By me for ever be forgot."

To sir Ewin he presented a rich silver target, beset on the sides with emeralds, sapphires, and other stones of great value, of such a refulgent lustre as gave a light in the night like unto so many wax candles. In the middle thereof was *pourtrayed* Hector and Achilles in a single tournament, the one breathing these words out of his mouth:

"In a just cause, who would refuse to fight?"
The other answering.

with much resolution; who m
so that the air was made dark
the sea coloured with blood is
Many were slain, and more
would hearken to yielding; bu
not able to hold out, they cried
rous captains sir Orlando and si
And so, the pirates delivering u
querors' hands, they entered the
lando beheld his sister among
tranced with wonder, and stood
his soul had been gone upon son
the corpse in pawn till it came ba
was as much surprised to behold
whom she ran unto and kindly e
lando was surprised with admirat
into an ecstasy in beholding her
ing her to be nature's chief mas
posure modellised forth the heigh
scendently did she show in this lo
her to be the magazine of



OF CHRISTENDOM.

for your love, so also for my liberty, for which I the least make you a requital ; but since you do your content upon my acceptance of your service, hopes cannot deceive you much, if an acknowledgment of my affections to you may be any way the means of you happy."

These loving passages between sir Ewin and the Cyropa were very pleasing to sir Orlando, who desired more than the alliance of so valiant and good a knight as sir Ewin. And now was sir Orlando minded to have severe punishment on the captain of the pirates for taking away his sister, but remembering his promise, he would not violate for all the wealth in Asia : he took the chiefest riches of their ships from them, and distributed amongst his soldiers ; and having released the prisoners, he put the privates into one of their empty ships and sent them away ; whilst their own fleet with a gale of wind set forwards for Italy ; whither in short time they safely arrived ; and to complete their joys, after sir Ewin was married unto the lady Cyropa, up sir Orlando bestowed many rich gifts, and sent them to the country of Scotland ; where for a while we leave them, and return to speak of the strange travels and adventures of the Seven Champions of Christendom.

CHAP. X.

Now come we to speak of the Seven Champions of Christendom ; who, not long after the departure of sir Orlando and sir Ewin, being desirous to return to their native countries, to repose their bodies where they had their toiling, taking their leaves of St. George's three sons, they shipping in a single ship, and cutting the briny passage for three or four days, were favoured with a gale of wind, which made the sailors' hearts full of joy ; but on the fifth day, notwithstanding that Phoebus shined with much radiancy, until such time as he came an equal arbiter of the forepart and coming day, there fell a mist upon the face of the sun, and in an instant grew to such darkness that neither

THE SEVEN CHAMPIONS

discernible : so that the pilot was at a loss
 er ; yet could they perceive that their ship
 lift motion, although there was then so great
 h a gentle air, as not to stir one hair of their
 ntinued for the space of seven days ; so that
 any were given over to silence and sadness ;
 ort their hearts, the renowned champion of
 eorge, calling them together, made to them
 ation :

champions, and fellow-soldiers in arms, be
 at this which hath happened unto you, since
 s by chance, but what is before pre-appointed
 and must inevitably come to pass ; which things,
 ing to us strange and wonderful, yet many times
 runners and causes of good both to us and others :
 efore be armed with patience, and not think to
 st Heaven, as they do who murmur and repine
 chance which befalls them ; for know assuredly,
 gods love they will protect, and to a valiant mind
 comes unlooked for ; and if we perish in this extre-
 me it be our comfort that we die unconquered of our

ration of St. George much comforted the hearts of
 heard him ; but soon after greater comfort ap-
 for on a sudden the sky began to clear, and the sun,
 hey had not seen in many days, began to appear,
 shoot forth his enlightening rays. The ship now did
 ve of itself, nor knew the mariners off what coast they
 yet was their joy exceeding great to behold the light-
 beams of the sun, and to converse with their compa-
 as well with their eyes as with their ears. Soon af-
 hey espied land, unto which they made with all the
 they could ; and having landed, found it a very fruit-
 ountry, stored abundantly with all sorts of beasts, birds,
 other living creatures ; but neither men, women, nor
 es, nor any signs of any that had ever been there. This
 k them all into wonder and amazement ; but that which
 of all amazed them, was to see these beasts and birds
 about them, and with bellowing, bleating, chirping,
 g, and other signs, seem to make their moan unto them.
 they were thus wondering, there appeared unto them
 lent palmer, clad in a russet gown down to the ground ;

pur-
 she
 and
 intricat
 most st
 about.
 them ; wh
 of them) u
 a costly d
 desert pla
 with some
 of his pal
 the plain
 they mig
 down in :
 " Kno
 in you n
 that it n
 tage of
 nor was
 saries
 pride ;
 manne
 grosse
 could
 ceedis
 the
 no



his hair as white as Venus's doves, or snow upon the Scythian mountains; his aged limbs supported with an ebony staff tipped with silver; his look seemed to have formerly carried majesty with it, though now Time's plough had printed deep furrows in his aged face, he seeing this company, made up to them, and addressing himself to St. George, as to the chiefest of them, spake as followeth :

" Renowned English champion, for of your country I am not ignorant, having in my youth travelled through most parts thereof; know that by the Destinies I was informed of your coming hither, and therefore came to this place on purpose to meet you : come then along with me, and I will shew you things transcending the power of a strong belief;" and with that he led them through a spacious plain, unto an intricate thicket or labyrinth, having in the midst thereof a most stately building, which overlooked all the plain round about. Hither, through unknown ways, did the palmer bring them; where he caused his servants (having about twenty of them) to provide for the champions and their retinue such a costly dinner as was not imagined to be gotten in such a desert place. After dinner, having refreshed themselves with some bowls of Leatic wine, he led them up to the top of his palace, which had a gallery round about it to overlook the plains. Here, having placed the champions so that they might have a full prospect of the whole country, sitting down in a chair by them he thus began :

" Know, worthy knights at arms, that this country where you now are is called Scobellum, of such a fruitful soil, that it may well be styled the garden of Ceres, and the vineyard of Bacchus; such is the plenty of all things therein : was it less populous of inhabitants than fruitful of necessities for to maintain them; but this their plenty caused idleness; and abundance of all things caused abundance of all sorts of vices amongst them; so that, if they had ended the corruptions of all nations to themselves, they would not have been a more defiled people than they were; excepting the Cannibals for cruelty, the Persians for pride, the Egyptians for luxury, the Cretans for lying, the Germans for drunkenness, and all nations together for a general vice. Such a mass of evils called for a mass of punishments, which the gods inflicted upon them, and the

metamorphosed to magpies and chattering jays
their estates at cards and dice, were trans-
formed to thrushes and nightingales. Envy
metamorphosed to dogs, who, lying on their
bellies, nor suffer the hunger-starved ones
Those women who would work hard, but with
other bad qualities, were transformed to
goats, who would give pails full of milk, but as soon
as they were done kicked them down with their heels. . .
and jack-puddings, were transformed to monkeys
and apes. Dancers on the ropes were trans-
formed to acrobats. Usurers, misers, and such like covetous per-
sons were changed to moles. In brief, worthy champions
(I trouble your patience too long), there was
a metamorphosis made of them all, each one ac-
cording wherein he had formerly lived; and the
sentence, destined by the Fates for to endure
as some hardy knight should be so bold a
conquest of the Golden Cave; which if he
shall their transformations cease. and then

able to yourselves, but you will also oblige thousands in thankful gratitude to your memories for so inestimable a benefit."

"Now, by the honour of my country England," said St. George, "never let me buckle on armour, if I make not one in this enterprise;" so likewise said the other six champions, each striving which should have the honour to accompany St. George in so noble an enterprise; wherefore, that emulation might not cause any strife, they agreed to cast lots amongst the six, which of the three should accompany him: so accordingly they did, and the lots fell upon the three famous champions, St. Anthony of Italy, St. James of Spain, and St. Patrick of Ireland; who, glad of their good fortunes, prepared themselves against the next day to try the adventure; and in the morning, no sooner did Aurora usher in the day, and from the glowing east display her purple doors, but the four champions mounted on their warlike steeds, who, glad of such a burden, pranced under them in as great state as did the famous Bucephalus when he was bestriden by the warlike Alexander; so taking a guide with them from the palmer, they traced to the Golden Cave, where they alighted and gave their guide their horses to lead. Here they were met by a dwarf, who spake to them in these words:

"Proud knights, presume not to come within the compass of these gates, lest you repent your folly, and with the loss of your lives pay for your presumption." To whom St. George answered; "Dwarf, go tell your masters we come to try our skills with them, to prove which of our swords cuts sharpest." "That shall you soon see," said the dwarf; and returning to the cave, told the giants what St. George had said to him; who presently came marching out to them, with each an oak upon his shoulder, which, when they came near unto the champions, they brandished over their heads, as if they had been hazel twigs.

"Audacious villains," said the giants, "do you desire to feel the strength of our arms? You shall soon try to your cost what we can do;" and therewithal struck at the champions with such fury, that the earth shook with the force of their blows. Who would have seen the picture of Alecto or with what manner of countenance Medea killed her own children, needed but take their faces for the full satisfaction of their knowledge in that point. The champions ni

however, were by this time gotten on
champions found themselves at a loss in
multiplicity of paths leading each way ;
ful which to choose. At last they resol
take a several path, and if they met not t
then to return each to the same place ;
chanced, that as they were going in those
met with an opposer ; and first St. Geor
the centaurs, being of a terrible shape and
betwixt whom began a most fierce combat
and magnanimity, insomuch that St. Ge
put to it in all the battles he had ever
the centaur was both nimble and strong, an
skill and courage ; but St. George havin
given him a deep wound on the ribs, he
hideous yell, as was like the loud rattle
wind, or cannons when they disgorge their
nimble turning him about, fled amain to

The renowned champion St. Anthony
gone far in his path but he met with one

blow cut his hand off by the wrist; whereupon the giant yielded himself and craved mercy.

In like manner St. James, the noble Spanish champion, as he walked along in his path met with the other giant; betwixt whom was fought a most terrible battle, striking so thick and fast at each other, as if every blow would strive to be foremost: the noble champion behaving himself so gallantly with his Bilboa blade, made of the purest Spanish steel, that he cut deep furrows in the giant's flesh, from whence issued such abundance of blood as changed the grass from a verdant green to a crimson red; so that the giant, through the loss of such abundance of blood, began to faint; which St. James perceiving, enforced himself with all his strength, gave him such a blow as brought him headlong to the ground; when, smiting off his head, he left his dismembered carcass, and proceeded farther in his path towards the Golden Cave.

Lastly, the renowned champion St. Patrick of Ireland, whose breast still thirsted after honourable adventures, he also proceeding forwards in his path, met with the other centaur; betwixt whom began so fierce a combat, that to describe the same to the life would wear my pen to the stumps, although it were made of refined brass or the purest Lydian steel. Here on each side was strength matched with skill, fury with fortitude, and true valour with matchless magnanimity. The centaur being nimble, and armed with a pole-axe, struck at St. Patrick with great fury, which he avoided with the greatest skill he could, and with his keen falchion returned the centaur his blows with interest. The fight, as it was sharp, so it endured long; when, being both willing to take breath, they paused from fighting for some time, when St. Patrick spake to the centaur in these words:

"Monster of nature! let me advise thee to yield thyself, and not to oppose us any farther in the conquest of the Golden Cave, since it is resolved by the Destinies that I and my fellows should be the persons that, by finishing the adventure, should restore the people to their human shapes."

The centaur, finding himself deeply wounded, was ready to yield, whom St. Patrick commanded to deliver up pole-axe, which the centaur accordingly did: so they marched towards the Golden Cave, where they met George, St. Anthony, and St. James, and relating

other their several successes, they presently fell in hand to the finishing of the adventure; and approaching the cistern, they each of them filled their helmets with water, and being guided by the dwarf, who now was obedient to the champions, they came to the fire, into which they threw the water, and never left until such time as they had quenched it; which being done, the cave and all about it vanished out of sight, and the thick grove or wilderness about it was all level and even. So returning to the messenger, whom they left walking their horses, they mounted on them to return back to the aged palmer's, meeting by the way with multitudes of people, who by the finishing of the adventure were now restored to their former shapes.

In this manner they marched along to the aged palmer's, who entertained them with great joy, by whom likewise they were congratulated on their happy return and noble achievement, as also they were by the three other champions, St. Denis, St. Andrew, and St. David: and after they had refreshed themselves with some victuals, they were conducted to a spacious room, where they had their wounds bathed with wine, milk, and other precious ointments. The next morning the people were assembled together, to whom St. George made a pithy oration, exhorting them hereafter to lead a better life, and not to have their natures addicted to such beastly vices, as made them, though not in shape, yet to differ not from beasts in their actions; with many other words to the like effect; all which they promised to perform. And afterward taking leave of their host the aged palmer, they returned to their ship, and having a gentle gale of wind, set sail towards Christendom.

CHAP. XI.

NOT long after the departure of the Seven Champions, St. George's three sons, resolving also to see their native country, in order thereunto embarked themselves with their companies in three several ships, and for the space of eight or ten days sailed with a prosperous gale of wind; the courteous sea all that time smoothing his wrinkled brow, the winds only whispering music to the deep; but above

eleventh day the wind and sea contended in a robustious rage; the beaten ships were tost like a forceless feather; now riding upon the mountain waves, as if their top-masts tilted at the moon; anon falling again with such a precipitate low descent as if they were sinking into hell's low abyss. In this furious storm they were separated one from the other; where we will leave two of them, and speak only of sir Alexander, and his party, who, after the storm was over, directed their course as near as they could towards the coasts of Christendom; and having sailed the space of three days, they saw before them a ship in fight with two galleys, or men of war; to whom they made up with all the speed they could, and coming near to them, they perceived by the streamers (wherein was woven the red cross of England) that it was the same ship wherein the Seven Champions were embarked; which when they knew, they sent forth such a loud and lengthened shout and hollo, as reverberated upon the waves, or as the sea makes when it trembles underneath its banks, to hear the replication of its sounds. They in the other ship answered them with the like hollo, and then, jointly setting upon the two galleys, they with pikes, bills, and darts, plied Death's fatal task, sending many hundreds of the Turks' souls to be transported on Charon's ferry; so that the two galleys, which at first were assailants, could no longer hold out defendants, but yielding themselves, craved for mercy; which the Christian champions were the more willing to grant them, in regard that many of their company had been sore wounded before sir Alexander came to their rescue.

So entering the two galleys, they took from them such things as they needed; amongst which they found some hogsheads of Greekish wines, which very much refreshed the fainting soldiers. They also took from them their armour, that they might not be able to offend others; and setting free those few prisoners they had taken, they let them go: and having stayed awhile in mending the tattered cordage of their ships, which was much shattered in the fight, with a prosperous wind they set sail, and in a few days arrived on the pleasant banks of Thessaly; and sending messenger to the court, to give notice of their arrival, message was so welcome to the princess Mariana (who was become queen of that country, her father being

the best manner she could
to be so costly and splendid, a
them to behold it; the streets all
palace being railed in, and guar
panies of foot soldiers: the con
from the balconies was heard all
be imagined. And first before
troop of horse, having between e
sounding with a silver trumpet:
buff coats, with silver belts, and
inlaid with glittering stones, w
Next followed four heralds, in
After them, the nobility of th
cornets on their heads. Then
and St. George's valiant son, in
cloth of gold, and studded wit
them followed the colonels, m
streamers waving before the
each English officer with a
prancing Barbary steeds. A
with the army in goodly ar

that, leaving off arms, you now come to enjoy the fruits of our amours ; and instead of following the camp of Mars, we solace ourselves in the tents of Cupid. Mistake me not, dear sir : I mean not, by spending our time in wanton dalliance, but in the honourable state of matrimony, that being joined in Hymen's bands, we may have our joys crowned with the issues of an unfeigned love."

" Most gracious princess," replied sir Alexander, " your speeches are the sole effects of my thoughts, and your desires to me absolute commands, being such as tend only to my profit and welfare ; wonder not then, most peerless madam, if I willingly embrace, what I so earnestly covet." And so sealing his love on the red wax of her lips, they hand in hand paced it into her palace, accompanied with the Seven Champions, as also with many of the chief lords and ladies of the land ; where was provided for them a sumptuous dinner of such costly viands, as might teach the satiate palate how to eat ; and those placed so thick and plentiful, as if the table would crack with the pile of such weighty dishes. All the while they were at dinner, melodious harps and songs saluted their ears, which were breathed forth in such a curious harmony, as charmed their very souls to an ecstasy. After dinner they fell to dancing, tripping it so nimbly, as if they had been all air, or some lighter element. In these delights they wasted about eight or nine days. But the Seven Champions soon grew weary of such pastimes, and, desirous to go home to their native countries, were minded to take their leaves of the queen Mariana ; but sir Alexander and she, having concluded their nuptials should be celebrated very suddenly, they were with much entreaty persuaded to stay until they were over.

The prefixed day being come, early that morning, by such time as Aurora, the blushing goddess which doth sway the downy confines of the day and night, began to appear, both bridegroom and bride were saluted with most sweet-sounding music ; which being ended, their ears were accosted with this epithalamium ;

*" Sol, thy beams no longer hide ;
Call the bridegroom to the bride ;
Let each one rejoice and sing,
Make the air with Hymen ring."*

May all pleasure and delight
 Crown your day and bless your night;
 And the warm embrace of love
 Be soft as down on Venus' dove:
 May your oft-repeated kisses,
 Bring with them as many blisses;
 And these joys remain in state
 Till your end, and that come late."

These solemnities being over, and the bridegroom risen from their beds, they prepared themselves to church: the bridegroom was apparelled in a suit of coloured tabby, to signify how he burnt in the chaste love; the bride was attired all in white, her unspotted virginity and maidenly modesty. Alexander was led by two duke's daughters, and the princess Mariana by two of the chiefest barons of the realm. Her train borne up by four ladies of honour. They walk in great state unto the temple, where they joined them together in Hymen's rites; which when they returned again in the same order to the church, the way the people shewing such great demonstration of joy as were wonderful to behold. To rehearse the cheer prepared for this royal dinner, the maskings, and other costly shows, which were so desired by the lords and ladies, and other courtiers, would take up more of an industrious writer.

The next day was appointed for the coronation of prince Alexander and the princess Mariana, which was performed in great splendour; the multitude of people that came to behold it being so many, that, notwithstanding a great store of money was thrown about in order to divert the people from thronging so thick at the ceremony, yet the people regarded not the money at all, for the desire they had to behold their new king.

After the usual ceremonies were ended, which were such solemnities, the trumpets sounded, and with a very loud shout cried, "Long live Alexander and Mariana, king and queen of Thessaly." The lords and barons, to honour the solemnity the more, spent the whole afternoon to be spent in jousting, wherein was shewn very much skill and valour.

hem all, duke Orsin, a near kinsman to the queen Mariana, carried the chief credit, having unhorsed fifteen knights that lay ; for which king Alexander presented him with a rich chain of gold, and St. George, in reward of his valour, gave him a costly diamond ring. And now, king Alexander being thus solemnly crowned, was fulfilled that prophecy, which was by the fairy queen predicted of him, as you may read in the seventeenth chapter of the first part of this honourable history, which contained these words :

“ This child shall likewise live to be a king,
Time’s wonder for device and courtly sport :
His tilts and tournaments abroad shall ring,
To every coast where nobles do resort.
Queens shall attend, and humble at his feet ;
Thus love and beauty shall together meet.”

After some few days passed in royal triumph, the Seven Champions resolved to stay no longer, but to hasten to their own countries. In pursuance of this their resolution, they acquainted king Alexander and queen Mariana of their intentions, who were very loth to part from their companies ; but the Seven Champions were so resolute in their determinations, that no persuasions could induce them to stay any longer. The king and queen seeing them so fully bent to be gone, with a great train of lords and ladies attended them to their ships, where they had caused a stately banquet to be provided for them ; and so, after many rich presents and mutual embracements passed betwixt them, the Seven Champions took ship, and having a gentle gale of wind, had soon lost the sight of the Thessalian shore. So sailing along on Neptune’s watery front, the wanton mermaids sporting by the sides of their ship, and scarce a wrinkle seen on Thetis’s face, but the sea as calm as when the halcyon hatched on the sand ; they saw before them a ship, all whose sails and streamers were black, having black flags and pendants stuck round the sides of the ship. The sight of this ship, so strangely thus attired in black, made them have a longing desire to know what it should mean : making up to it, they hailed them, according to the sea use, when a gentleman appearing on the deck, gave them to understand that they were of Italy, and were come from India, bringing with them the dead body of the duke.

sini, lord of the fruitful land of Campania ; which when St. Anthony understood (the duke of Ursini having formerly been his loving friend), he declared unto them who he was, and what were his companions, and also how they was bound for Italy ; whereupon there was great rejoicing on both sides ; and the gentleman, and captain, and master of the Italian ship, were invited into the other ; where, after some compliments passed on both sides, and a short collation, the sea being calm, and like a standing pool, no waves nor billows to arise, they entreated the gentleman, now that their ships lay thus at hull, to declare unto them the manner of the duke Ursini's death, and how he came to die in so remote a country. To which the gentleman willingly descended and spake as followeth :

"It is not now full two years since that the renowned prince Oswy, duke of Ferrara, at the celebration of his marriage with the famous lady Lucinda of Mantua, kept solemn jousts and tournaments, with royal entertainments for all comers ; which invited thither not only the prime nobility and gallants of the Italians, but also, the news being spread abroad into foreign countries, several persons of great quality resorted thither : amongst others was Jilian, the daughter of Lampasco, prince of Scandia ; a lady of such glorious eye-surprising rays, that in her face Love seemed to sit enthroned in full majesty ; nor wanted she therewith the helps of art, to set forth her natural perfections ; so that she seemed rather a divine goddess than a human creature. These her admirable endowments were looked on by duke Ursini through a multiplying glass, which rendered her to him the most admirable of all creatures ; captivating his heart such a thrall to her beauty, that he vowed himself a servant to her virtues ; and to endear himself the more in her respects, by some achievements of honour, he entered the lists, as chief challenger against all comers, being mounted on a milk-white Barbary courser, trapped with caparisons of silver, and on his burgonet a plume of goodly feathers : his armour was blue, resembling the azure firmament, spangled with stars of gold ; with these words for his device, "Virtue, like the clear heaven, is without clouds." He encountered with sundry knights of great worth, against all which he had much the better, which gained him great applause and envy.

Nor was he less skilful in the intrigues of love than in management of arms, and could court a lady as well as counter with an enemy ; which he, with much artificial eloquence, demonstrated in an address to the lady Jilian, who need much affected with his person ; and so far the matter went, that there seemed nothing wanting to the consummation of their marriage, but only the consent of her parents ; which to obtain, he sailed with her unto Scandia, where he was most nobly entertained, and his suit very well liked on.

Now it was so, that a young baron of that country, named Lamprido, had formerly borne a great affection unto princess Jilian, and had so far prevailed with her that was in great hopes of obtaining her love ; but his means being answerable to her high dignity, it was kept very secret from prince Lampasco's ear ; yet hoped he in time, either by the death of Lampasco, or some secret stratum, he should compass his ends. But now seeing prince Ursini in so great favour, he began utterly to despair of his success, unless by some means he could find a way to deprive him of his life. It happened, not long after, that prince Lampasco proclaimed a general hunting of the wild boar ; which princely exercise resorted all the flower of the nobility, and every one whose breast was fired with desire of glory and renown : amongst others, none was more forward in his royal sport than prince Ursini ; who at the appointed time came into the field, armed with his boar-spear, and mounted on a Spanish gennet, who for their swiftness are well to be engendered of the wind. Being come within view of the place where they were to hunt, each man was ordered according to his stand ; when a brace of lusty beagles were let loose to rouse the boar : in the mean time every one prepared himself for the handling of his weapons, and had a nimble eye to watch all advantages that might be taken. It was not long before the beagles had roused the boar out of his den ; who seeming to regard no danger, boldly turning round about, with a kind of a wallowing ungainly pace, ran where he could see any company. The first that struck at him was an Italian knight, who accompanied prince Ursini in his voyage to Scandia, who broke his spear, but wounded him not, for his skin was scarcely vulnerable, being as hard as a bull's hide when it is tanned.

Leaving this Italian, he ran against a valiant knight, named Piaster, who encountered with him very courageously; yet could not his courage, strength, nor skill, all which he was in a full measure master of, prevail any thing. Yet was his performance so much, that giving him a small wound on the leg, feeling the smart, he ran towards baron Lamprido; who used his utmost strength and skill to withstand him; but the smart of the wound in the boar's leg so exasperated him, that he ran with such fury against Lamprido as turned him, horse and man, to the ground, and undoubtedly had slain him, had not duke Ursini come to his rescue; who with undaunted courage set upon the boar, and with great strength, guided by skill, so followed his blows, that he made the boar begin to stagger; who yet with open mouth came towards him; which advantage duke Ursini spying, thrust his boar-spear down his throat, and therewith reft his heart in sunder, yielding unto him the absolute victory.

"By this time, divers knights were come in to him; amongst others Lamprido, having recovered his fall, came in with the thickest; but when he saw that the boar was killed, and by the hands of Ursini, his blood boiled within him for anger, out of envy that he had done it; which he knew would more endear him in the love and affections of the lady Jilian, as also that his own overthrow would much lessen her opinion of him. Hereupon a desire of revenge entering into his heart, his study was how to effect it with privacy; not only for danger of the law, but dread of duke Ursini's valour, whom he knew he could not match in single combat: he therefore concluded to do it by treachery, which not long after he brought to pass in this manner.—

"Amongst other exercises which duke Ursini much delighted in, one was the art of angling, in which he would oftentimes spend many hours, and that with as much privacy as he could, because a multitude of persons was a hindrance to his sport. It so chanced one day, that he, accompanied only with one servant, and having no other armour but his sword, went in a boat unto a spacious river a fishing. This being known unto Lamprido, he thought it now a convenient time for him to accomplish his purposed ends; and therefore, having engaged seven or eight other stout persons to his side, they armed themselves, and in two boats, to prevent suspicion, betook themselves also to the

water, taking two different ways, the better to surround him in the middle. Duke Ursini was all this while so busy at his exercise, that he took no notice of their intentions; and at last, not perceiving that they had any armour (it being hid under linen frocks), he permitted them to come so near his boat, that one or two of them, leaping in, began to lay hold of him; when, snatching up his sword, he defended himself so gallantly, that he had well near sent their souls to attend at Charon's ferry, the biting steel being pursued by such streams of blood, that his boat was all bestained with a crimson dye. In the mean time the other villains leaped in, and surrounded him so on every side, that he had no room to wield his weapon. However, as if he had been a man made all of fire, having a courage that knew not how to fear, he resisted them all, and in a while, though over-matched, had sent four of their souls to the Stygian bay, whereof Lamprido was the third. Thus for a short space did the goddess Victoria seem favourable to him. And now his man, who all this while had done his utmost in defence of his master, having grasped one of the villains, they chanced both to fall overboard into the water; when duke Ursini, endeavouring to help his man, the other villain gave him a mortal wound on the head; yet before he fell, he tumbled that villain also into the water, to accompany his fellow; which was no sooner done, but, through the loss of so much blood which issued from his wounds, he fell down in a swoon, when at the very instant, there came thither a boat with some citizens in it, intending also to have fished there; but seeing the latter part of this skirmish, they made up to them; where they found, in duke Ursini, Death's pale flags advanced in his cheeks, and he ready to take his oath to be Death's true liegeman. The citizens did what they could in staying his soul, which was now making a separation from his body; but all their endeavours were in vain; for Death, Nature's bold pursuivant, had taken possession of him.

"Whilst they were thus busied in seeking to recall life unto him again, they heard one of the two parties, with which he had encountered withal at first, to give a great groan *whereupon*, using their helping hands for to revive him, *th* at last brought him to his speech; of whom they asked *were the persons*, and what was their difference; *whi*



thought they could
which to be an is
but by labourerth d
understood, they f
fish's back, and so
fair island, named
enchantedress the wis
cerning future even
he, with his chief
tation, being in a da
the building was fair
for entrance theret
verses :

You, who would w
And now with the
ere you can a
Such she will your d
For pow'r the F at
where benefit of those
ereupon sir Gu
a strong breath b
a peal of ordnanc
a record flew open,
em ; who conduc
dorned with many
a huge frame, h
ing out Eson's of
made him young
d king Midas, m
ello's harp was f
ears. Whilst c
ght, the chantr

declared unto them in manner as we have before described; and having made an end of his relation, he presently therewith expired.

"Hereupon the citizens, taking along with them the boat wherein were the dead bodies, returned to the city, and declaring the news, there was great sorrow and lamentation for duke Ursini; especially by the lady Jilian, who from her drowned eyes shed many vain offerings to the dead. Nor can you think, most noble champions, but that the grief which then seized upon us who accompanied him in this his voyage, was any thing less than what possessed the hearts of the chiefest; for hearing the news, we set in such a given-over posture, as who had beheld us would have thought Silence, Solitariness, and Melancholy, were come, under the ensign of Mishap, to conquer Delight, and plunge us into the deep abyss of Misery.

"After some little time, being raised as it were out of this trance of sorrow, we craved leave to depart home, with the corpse of our dead master; which the prince Lampasco freely granted, and furnished us with all things fitting, as here you see."

At which words grief so stopped the passage of his speech, that he could proceed no farther.

The Seven Champions heartily condoled this mishap, that so worthy a knight should fall so treacherously. And now with all the speed they could they sailed to Italy; where having arrived, duke Ursini was interred with all the funeral pomp that could be devised. Where the other six champions leaving St. Anthony behind them, they posted each one to his own country; where they had not long remained, but that they died, and were buried in their former sepulchres.

CHAP. XII.

Now shall our pen endeavour to describe the valiant acts of St. George's eldest son, sir Guy, whose honourable achievements were so many and great, that to declare them in full I might as well attempt to empty the sea with spoon, or to scale Olympus with a ladder of sand. A valiant knight, being with his ship separated from

as, as you heard in the former chapter, they sailed through many dangerous straits and passages; and as they thus along, they came to a broad sea, in the middle of which they thought they saw a small island, to which they made up, and landed some of their men, who made a fire to dress some meat. Now when the fire grew hot, as the meat was nigh sodden, the island began to move, made them all sore afraid, and they ran with all the speed they could again to their ship. Now this which they took to be an island, was only a great fish named *Iopus*, labouring day and night to put his tail in his mouth, for reason of his greatness could not; which when they perceived, they fetched their kettle and meat from off the back, and so sailed forwards till they came to a very fair land, named *Miconicum*, in which lived the famous sorceress the wise *Medea*, who gave out prophecies concerning future events; which being understood by sir Guy, he with his chief captain, named *Bolus*, went to her habitation being in a dark valley, beset all with myrtle trees: the dwelling was fair and sumptuous, having a brazen gate leading thence thereunto, on which was depenciled these

who would with wise *Medea* speak,
 Blow with the trumpet which doth hang hereby;
 Where you can a question to her break,
 He will your doubts resolve assuredly.
 As pow'r the Fates did unto her bestow,
 Benefit of those which live below."

Thereupon sir Guy set the trumpet to his mouth, and with strong breath blew such a blast as echoed in the air, the peal of ordnance; when immediately the gate of its prison flew open, where stood a dwarf ready to enter them; who conducted them into a spacious hall, which was adorned with many statues of antique work, and where a huge frame, hung the picture of *Medea*, how she, drawing out *Æson's* old blood and by infusing new into the same, made him young again. In another table was portrayed *Midas*, who for preferring *Pan's* pipe before his harp was for his pains rewarded with a pair of ears. Whilst they were viewing these pictures with the enchantress *Medea* came down from her char-

ber ; who beholding sir Guy w
unto him :

“ Sir knight, return unto
Let not advantage from
For now the time is nigh
Thou must be join'd in
Thy constancy to her i
Who seeks to have thee
But ere these things to t
Thou many troubles ma

Having thus said, she vanish
them much wondering at wh
taking their leave of the dwarf,
their ship ; but in their way,
river's side, which gently runn
the enamelled stones, and seem
every surge he overtook in hi
came, crossing a meadow towar
herd, who by the downfall of
Nature had brought him near
were not his hairs so grey by y
his blubbered countenance gave
ing his sighs, he thus expressed

“ Sir knights,” said he, “ if
in noble breasts, let my aged
tunes crave your pity ; who f
despicable estate, am now beco
the unconstancy of that blind ge

Here he waited for a reply :
to relate the story of his misfor

“ Know then, worthy knight
once possessed of the wealthy t
in this island of Miconicum ; a
ness of the soil and pleasantne
paralleled in all the country. T
left unto me when I was young
of which yet I had no cause
plenished with all the orname
which might make her in eve
lived together for some shor
of her womb gave us great

ates had decreed otherwise ; for upon her delivery, the birth of the infant proved the death of the parent, and she, to bestow a gem on the earth, became herself a pearl in the happy firmament. What shall I say more ? I lost a wife and gained a daughter ; and indeed a daughter of such superexcellent parts, as might put a cessation to sorrow for the mother. This daughter, whose name was Praxida, did bring up in all virtuous education ; who in short time became the wonder of her sex, having in her such perfections as did yield to admiration ; and as she grew more in years, so did she add more to her perfections ; which admirable endowments attracted to her many adorers, who sued for her favour ; among whom was one she most fancied, whose name was Euphemius, a knight of Placida, being an island not far off, under the queen Artemia, who had made him the governor thereof.

“ Betwixt this Euphemius and my daughter, unknown to me, had passed a solemn contract ; she belike fearing to disclose it to me, as doubting my consent, his estate not being answerable to my revenues ; wherefore they got privately married together. Now it happened not long after, upon some offence against the queen, Euphemius was committed to prison ; and having lain there some few days, was brought before the queen to be examined, who beheld him with great wonder and astonishment, for indeed he was a person of a lovely countenance, and in whom dame Nature had done her utmost to the making of him in all parts complete ; which so wounded her heart with an affection towards him, that, instead of his being her captive, she became his ; and in part to manifest the same unto him, she frankly gave him his freedom, and with many kind words entertained him very graciously into her favour. Yet could not all this kindness endear her unto him ; but the more she shewed love to him on the one side, the more was his hatred to her on the other ; and that not so much in respect of my daughter, as the mortal spite he bare to her for his imprisonment ; so that having a fit opportunity offered him, he fled from the court, and, confederating with some friends, intended to levy war against the queen.

‘The queen, understanding of his departure, fared like a distracted woman : wringing her hands, and beating her ivory breasts, she cast herself upon the ground tear-

your restraint, think also of free-give
write the one in marble the other in sar
love to you, impute it not to lightness,
tion; and let your return again to me
your heart is not inexorable; when pe
may plead more in my excuse than can
ger: so wishing you, what she wants I
remains ever yours,

"This letter she sent by a trusty m
mind was so fully bent against her, tha
it caused loathing. Wherefore taking
sent her again this bitter return:

"WHAT should cause you to de
hated? I cannot imagine love, but lust
not esteem of your syren's tongue, know
stings as well as honey. Nor think not
more by your sugared baits; but know,
hates the memory of you, as doth your



OF CHRISTENDOM.

phemius, in my death shall I make it known
love was to my heart, and how highly tho
my affections.'

"In this manner did the woful queen
until sickness coming on put the harmony
tune in her body, which by little and little
in such sort, that she became a mere skelet
and now, finding that death by degrees bega
vital parts, she called her nobles unto her, a
these words:

" 'My lords, I am now taking my last le
spent hour-glass of my life is near at hand:
parting ghost I do adjure you, as you will
the Higher Powers, whither I am now goin
ye invest Euphemius king when I am dead
though I doubt not of your performance he
more assurance, and that my ghost may q
after, I shall desire you to take an oath to
you should fail in the performance of, kno
will both wrong yourselves and him, in dep
crown and yourselves of a good king; be
kind, wise, just, and merciful, and only unl

"The nobles, to satisfy her request, f
oaths to be true to Euphemius. And now
fully satisfied with what was done, willing
ghost; whom the nobles buried in a most
ner: which being done, they sent an honou
to Euphemius, to certify him of the queen's
she had bequeathed her crown to him: whi
forth Artemia's love in such pathological wo
in him a strange alteration; for when he t
unalterable affection towards him, the co
love, her matchless beauty, rare endowm
excellent parts, he began to reflect upon his
ness to her, his vile ingratitude, that could
died for love of him. These considerativ
like where before he loathed, and to loath
loved: for whereas before he used to
visits to my daughter, protesting all con
towards her, now the poison of hatred
against her, as taking her to be the
hindered him from the enjoyment of

be also the same of the kingdom, if it al
were married unto her; wherefore he d
the messenger, never so much as biddin
sending any messengers unto her.

"The nobles entertained him very sp
great solemnity crowned him king. In
poor Praxida was well near distracted wi
ing herself to be with child, fearing to
and finding such an alteration of love fr
being thus desperate, knowing it impos
ceased, she sent to him this following let

" ' My dear Euphemius,

" ' MEN do tax our sex for being unc
must apply that fault to you; I say to
did give so great a testimony of your fi
not doubt them for fear of injuring my
mius, doth honours change manners? C
get Praxida, whom you swore so firml
thou hast no pity for me, take some com
of my womb, the seal of our loves, where
is implanted; and if thou hast any thin
thou canst not but deplore its condition
medy for the same. We still hoping the
stant, I rest thine own

" Euphemius received this letter with
vowing revenge; the Rhamnusian Nem
vengeful breast in all her blackest forn
raged blood being tickled with the thoug
self: for as he thought it his disgrace in
to her husband, he intended the destruct
but of all her kindred, and that to be pe
he could find any pretended cause of a
In the mean time, to deter her from any
of her claim, he returned to her this inv

" ' HATH your impudence no other pe
bastard brat upon, but me, whose know
as will free me in the consciences o
from the known calamities of such a
not my virtue preferred me by a ge

do you think by detraction to bespatter my good name then, perverse monster of womankind, to profarther claim unto me, lest it prove the deserved of thee and thine.

“Thy deserved enemy,

“EUPHEMIUS.”

Before she received this letter, feeling the burden about to grow great, she desired leave to go visit an aunt, named Milesia, pretending indisposition of which I readily granted, knowing my sister very dear to her for her good. To this her aunt she discovered what had passed betwixt Euphemius and herself, and aided and secrecy therein: and indeed it was but for within three days of her coming thither, she heard of a goodly boy, whom her aunt named Innocent, and put him out to nurse to one of her tenants.

After she received the letter from Euphemius; when she had read, her grief and sorrow were so great, she seemed herself the very map of misery: and fell into a swoon, it was long ere her aunt and the other attendants could recover her to life; but coming a little to herself she thus began for to exclaim:

Is it possible such perjury can remain in men! Think oaths are not binding, or that divine vengeance not follow upon breach of promise? Ah, Euphemius, can thy heart prove so disloyal! were all the prophets so often didst reiterate unto me, only feigned to trap me to my destruction! then glory in thy treachery and saying these words, she stabbed herself with a bodkin, which she had hid within the tangle of her hair.

Her father, having acted this woful tragedy on herself, her household in a great uproar, especially my sister. At last the extremity of her passion being over, she spoke a word of what had happened; which into what grief it put me, let them be judge who are the fathers of an only child. My greatest comfort in this disposition was, to study revenge against Euphemius; to accomplish it, there was the difficulty, as knowing I was too weak to oppose him by open force. Wherefore I wrote a letter to the chiefest of the nobles, declaring

me, and quickly ousted me of my barony, leaving me destitute of friends, and hopeless of my former glory, I betook myself to a shelter to be shrouded in obscurity: yet, like wise Medea, that there should one die of a far country, who should again return to his country.

Sir Guy having heard the shepherd's story, in him great pity and compassion: as captain Bolus, he thus said, "Now I will not enter into my ship until I have recovered my barony." And to make good his word, he took with him a hundred of his choicest knights, and guided by the old shepherd Selinus, they came to Monpelior; where they heard how Erec was in a strong castle, and guarded with fifty knights, having also in pay a certain Marisco, a giant of great stature and strength, armed in a coat of plate, and a sword of iron of forty pounds weight for his weapon. When he approached within half a mile of the castle,

Euphemius and his men with such undaunted resolution, that notwithstanding he made a notable resistance, yet his soldiers began to give back : which the Marisco perceiving, he singly set upon sir Guy, and with manly courage dealt about such blows, that whoso should have beheld him would have thought the great Alcides had descended again upon the earth to teach mortals the way of mankind's destruction ; but sir Guy so nimbly avoided his blows, and with such dexterous skill set upon the giant with his never-failing sword, that he made many wounds in his flesh, where Death might enter in at : which Euphemius perceiving, he made up to sir Guy to succour the Marisco : but before he could get up to him, he was set upon by captain Bolus, with so great courage, that he found he had enough to do to defend himself. At last, sir Guy, enforcing himself with all his might, gave such a blow on the giant's helmet, as, piercing the same, it came forth all imbrued with his brains, who without speaking any word fell down dead to the ground.

Euphemius, seeing his friend the Marisco fall, would have fled away ; but he was so environed by soldiers that all means were taken from him to escape : whereupon he was forced to yield himself a prisoner, and was, both by sir Guy and captain Bolus, entertained with great civility.

In the mean time sir Guy's soldiers had pursued their enemies with such vigour, that those who were in the castle opening their gates to entertain their flying friends, before they could shut them again sir Guy's soldiers also entered with them. And now within the castle began a most desperate conflict, neither defendants nor assailments expecting any mercy if overcome ; wherefore each were busy in plying death's fatal task ; their swords making such sad work that every place was overfilled with slaughter, and their mingled blood made a purple flood that overflowed in each place they fought.

Whilst thus Death was inning his plenteous harvest, and the soldiers so thronged as they could scarcely wield their killing hands, sir Guy and captain Bolus coming amongst them, soon turned the scales on the assailants' side ; so that the defendants, being overcome more by valour than number, yielded themselves and the castle to the mercy of the conquerors ; the possession whereof sir Guy freely sur-

which was granted, he hav
with a jewel of an inestimab

And now did the friends
him, whereby he was in a c
against all opposers. Whe
of him, and returned to his s
their merits, having been b
lindus.

CHAP.

SIR GUY, after having restore
ship, together with captain B
mius, and having a prosperous
rived on the coasts of fruitful
Guy, it being the happy port
rected : but it happened, clean
that the scene of actions was
after his departure.

would have given her notice of his arrival, but all places were so stopped that he could not possibly do it: whereupon, dividing his men into two companies, he gave the one of them to the captain Bolus, and the other he led himself; and so in the dead of the night set upon the enemies; who not in the least dreaded any danger. And now was nothing but cutting, hacking, and slashing, throughout the camp; so that in every place you might see a throng of carcases, whose lifeless eyes were closed with dust and death. Sir Guy, remembering that he was now rescuing his dear lady out of the hands of rebels, did wonders. And now had the cries and shrieks of the soldiers alarmed Nefario, who put himself forward to withstand this inundation, which he perceived was ready to overwhelm all his former successes. In the mean time captain Bolus had taken an eminent commander prisoner, by whom he understood the state of the army: whereupon, joining with sir Guy, they with united courage set upon Nefario, with such fury, that he, not able to withstand them, was forced to give ground: whom sir Guy did not eagerly pursue, but sent a messenger to the city to inform them of what was done; who thereupon presently issued out, killing many, and bringing in more prisoners. But when the queen Urania understood how sir Guy was come to her aid, she sent the chief of her nobles presently unto him, for to conduct him to her presence; to whom she said, "Thrice welcome to me, most honoured knight, who wert born for the good of our country. O how are we bound to the Immortal Powers for thy preservation, and sending thee to do us good."—"Most gracious princess," replied sir Guy, "I account it my greatest happiness that I can in anywise serve you, though I wish it had not been upon this occasion; but since it is so, let not this opportunity be slipped, but, whilst the enemy is in a maze, let us fall upon him with a resolution worthy the justness of our cause."

This proposition being with great reason applauded, the soldiers were ordered to have a sudden refreshment, having been wearied in the late fight. But whilst they were thus at their repast, they heard from afar the sound of trumpet at which much marvelling, they sent a messenger to know what was the matter; who returned with this answer, "—to the

him four thousand of the choices
ing to them ; but, behold, a sudden
proceedings : for in their way the
dred of the adverse party, who had
come to the queen's rescue, knowing
by former exploits, but also by doing
the last battle, to secure their li
queen's hands they seized on Nefario,
ing, intended to present him a prisoner
Guy understanding what they had done,
the residue, promising them that they
would lay down their arms and submit
doubtedly they had done, but at that
Grimaldo, brother to Nefario, was
with ten thousand soldiers more,
out of the adjoining countries thereabout
how his brother was carried away
of the defeat they had received they
much troubled in mind ; but that he
any notice of it, he encouraged them
could, telling them such and such

caps, they gave such a hallo, as the earth reverberated with the sound of the same.

And now both armies faced each other ; when presently began a terrible fight, that Mars himself might have been a spectator of. In one place stood a well-ordered body of erected pikes, like a young leafless wood, to oppose the invading horse ; in another place were bands of archers, whose feathered arrows out-run the piercing eye, and cut a passage through the fleeting air, repelling the brains of the insulting foe. Here stood horses prancing with their feet, raising such clouds of dust as covered the face of the darkened sky ; when presently pikes, bills, and darts, like a moving wood, rushed against each other. Their horses, angry in their masters' anger, with love and obedience brought forth the effects of hate and resistance, and with winds of servitude did as if they affected glory. And now all hands were busied in killing. The poor soldiers stood with fear of death, as if dead-struck ; the thirsty earth drank up whole streams of blood ; and mounts were made of slaughtered carcasses. Sir Guy did wonders that day with his sword, sending thousands of souls to the infernal regions. As thus he made lanes of his enemies' dead bodies, he came at last to meet with Grimaldo, with whom he entered into combat, and, notwithstanding his body was enclosed about with glittering walls of steel, yet made he such breaches therein, as Death had many ways to enter, and Life as many holes whereby to creep out. And now Grimaldo craved for mercy, which sir Guy refused, saying, " No, varlet ; thou mightest have taken it when it was proffered thee ; but now nothing but death can satisfy for thy disloyalty." And therewithal reached him such a blow, as brought him headlong to the ground.

Grimaldo being killed, the whole army betook themselves to flight ; whom sir Guy and his company pursued in eager-wise, killing and destroying whomsoever they overtook, without any remorse or pity.

Having obtained this signal victory, sir Guy ordered a part of the army to pursue the residue of the rebels, whilst he with the rest marched back unto the city. And now was such a universal joy amongst the citizens, as was not to be credited ; all the way as sir Guy passed along the street the people sending forth such loud acclamations, as the

upon us!" And so hand in hand t
lace, where he was entertained w
Guy behaving himself so affably
bles and ladies, that he won their

And now all things being thus q
ly lovers assured of each other's
another, their hearts and minds
The Thessalian army, being rich
and with them an honourable mes
to return him thanks for his aid, a
wedding of sir Guy and the queen
whereof was suddenly to be.

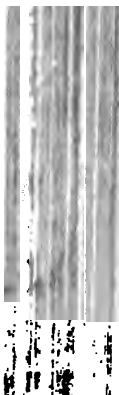
The appointed day being now ne
knights prepared a solemn just t
comers, and many costly pageants
prepared by the citizens: the ladi
jewels, and other rich ornaments to
that day: and, to complete the sole
with a splendid train of followers, c
most magnificently entertained by
Urania. On the marriage mornin

afternoon was spent in dancing, masking, revelling, and other delightful sports, until such time as Morpheus, the drowsy serjeant of the night, summoned them to bed, there to take their repose.

Next morning the knights and nobles prepared themselves to just; sir Guy, king Alexander, and the queen Urania, with divers ladies and peers, seating themselves on scaffolds to behold the same.

The first that entered the lists was a Sicilian knight named sir Albert, mounted on a horse of a fiery sorrel colour, with black feet, and black list on his back. His armour was green, like to the earth when it begins to put on its summer livery. In his shield was pourtrayed the resemblance of a garden, with divers springing flowers, and this motto, "Still increasing." Against him entered a Corinthian knight, named Agelastus, mounted on a horse milk-white, but that upon his shoulders and withers he was freckled with red stains, as when a few strawberries are scattered into a dish of cream. His armour was blood-red, denoting terror to his enemies; and on his shield was depenciled a hawk seized of a pigeon, yet hurting it not: the word was, "True glory the only prize." They ran fiercely against each other, breaking their staves with much gallantry; but at the second course Agelastus was driven quite from out of the saddle; which disgrace he would have revenged with his sword, but that the judges forbid it, it being quite contrary to the order set down.

To revenge this disgrace, there entered the list a Iacanian knight, named Lysander, riding on a Barbary horse of a coal-black; his armour answerable to the same. On his shield was pourtrayed the goddess Fortune, who, Janus like, looked two ways, to denote that nothing in this world is so certain, but that, if good went before, ill might come behind: the word was, "The end crowns all." These two encountered each other with equal courage a long space; sir Albert's horse leaning hard upon the other, and winning ground. The other horse, feeling himself prest, began to rise a little before, as he wont to do in his curvet; which advantage sir Albert taking, set forward his own horse with the further spur; so that Lysander's horse came over, with his master under him, giving to sir Albert the honour of victory.



knight named sir Salvador, who, at such of day, when Phoebus's bright chariots pillars of Alcmena's son, and with him gan to clothe the earth with night, on armour representing only confusion; at the other, yet all so well compacted, as in confusion. At the signal of the trumpet set spurs to their horses, encountering with well-guided courage and valour as shew master of martial prowess; but at the time Albert's ill fortune to miss his mist, who cover, before sir Salvador had met him, cast him to the ground.

The honour of the day remaining thus approach of night put a period to these; that day, which yet were continued with resolution for several days after. An Alexander's return home to Thebes, th with his queen Urania was appointed; w with all the art and splendour imaginable good the prospect that the fairer scene

try, being highly rewarded by the king and queen. A new charge must we leave these worthy captains, to relate what befel to the heroic knight sir David, after he was parted from his two brothers in the storm, as you hear before.

CHAP. XIV.

AFTER the angry seas had by the fury of the tempest separated the three brothers, as you heard before, the magna-mous knight sir David was with his ship by the force of the storm driven upon unknown seas; where they sailed several days in great want both for victuals and fresh water, having nothing to quench their thirst, and ready to eat one another to satisfy their hunger. The sailors were grown so feeble they were not able to handle their sails, and the soldiers, instead of encountering their enemies, ready to embrace their hands in their fellow's blood, and like cannibals to devour those whom they slew. The disconsolate sir David seeing his soldiers thus with weakened limbs and barking stomachs, thus complained to himself:

"O you Immortal Powers, why did you preserve us thus from the hands of our enemies, to perish by a more lingering and ignoble death! Oh why was I born to see this day. Far better it had been for us to have been slain by the sword of the infidels; then had we died in the bed of honour; and not thus miserably to end our lives, by that which valor cannot encounter, nor the stoutest courage able to resist."

In this manner did the noble knight sir David make his inward grief. He comforted them in the best wise he could although his own hopeless misery could present no comfort to himself. But now at last, when all hope seemed desperate, and every woe that could by despair be brought presented itself to the troubled thought, it chanced that one of the company, as he thought, spied land: which imparting to his fellows, they upon view imagined the same; whereupon some sparks of comfort began to enter at the crannies of their hearts: and making towards it well as their weak bodies was able to guide the ship much ado they got on land; which to their great

...and
their almost
into the court
very delightful
taste; but no sooner
fell down into a dead
and motion; which
not tasted of it, into
reserved from famine
operation of the said

...miserable condition, there
ed hermit, clothed in a long
with an hoary fleece, and
ence. In his hand he led two
girl, whose tender looks pleaded
man, without any fear, came
ding what chance had brought
any mankind had come before in
ly that boy he led in his hand, to-
were brought thither by the work-
boat, and by him miraculously pre-

ears standing in his eyes, thus answered

...father, we may well be said to come
sorrow, our excess of grief scarce giving
of words, such has been our so pinching
as at sea; and death here on land has depriv-
of my followers: for coming for succour unto
the greatest part of my men, by eating of some
unknown unto them, were soon arrested by na-
pursuivant, grim ghastly Death, under whose
they lie, if no other remedy can be procured than
have knowledge of."

...replied the hermit, "both cause
most courteous knight," replied the hermit, "both cause
are well known unto me, and which I shall expe-
to you presently." So desiring some part of them
to accompany him, he went unto a little grove hard by,
grew great store of an herb, whose leaves were much
our English sassafras. This herb he pressed betwixt
stones, and straining the juice of it into their mov-

pla

but
other
they h
ed the

condition of
and began ad
"Know,"

now are, is cal
tiful for susten
try of Ancona
once I was t
beautiful wif
Estrilda: li
abundance
our happi
Orpino,
gons; v
the in
raner
mag
in
hi
r

who thus lay for dead, they presently revived, to the great joy and admirable wonder of sir David and the rest of his followers. After congratulations for their happy revival, the aged hermit conducted them to his cell, which was pleasantly seated by a river's side, that ran upon so fine and delicate ground, as one could not easily judge whether the river did more wash the gravel, or the gravel purify the river: the banks on either side were fringed with most beautiful trees, that resisted the sun's darts from over-much piercing the natural coldness of the river; which ran not forth right, but continually winding, as if it had a delight to play with itself.

Here did the old hermit fetch out what victuals he had; but that not sufficing, they killed some sheep, goats, and other beasts, which they dressed in the old man's cell. After they had sufficiently refreshed themselves, sir David requested the old man to inform them where they were, and of the condition of the place; to which he readily condescended, and began after this manner:

"Know, worthy gentleman, that this island, wherein you now are, is called Fortunian, not large for circuit, but plentiful for sustenance, supplying with her abundance the country of Ancona, not far distant from this island, and of which once I was the unhappy governor; being blessed with a beautiful wife, and more beautiful daughter, whom we named Estrilda: living for a long time together in great love and abundance of all earthly blessings, until the Fates, envying our happiness, sent thither a famous necromancer, named Orpino, who rode in a burning chariot, drawn by flying dragons; and who was so expert in his devilish art, that all the infernal furies were at his command, and the subterranean spirits obeyed his charms and spells. This wicked magician, tempted by the evil spirit Asmodeus, burned in lust towards my wife; and the better to accomplish his desires, having ingratiated himself in great favour at my court (for such then it was), he thought nothing possible to hinder his designs: but my wife being as virtuous as she was beautiful, not only resisted his temptations, but also acquainted me with his lustful intentions; whereupon I was resolved to seize on him, and by severe justice to bring him to condign punishment; but knowing the great power and in the Black Art, I was fearful in what manner to

verses :

oot within this isle,
mediately shall die ;
ce, until the while
ne the enemy.
ms and spells shall cease,
pled be in peace."

far in his devilish arts, he next
to this island, where I have now
years, not having the company of
or child, save only of these two,
most miraculous manner.
sa-side one morning, at such time
begins his golden progress from the
on with his radiance, as I cast my
of Neptune, I beheld something head-
; and staying to take better notice
be a boat, which without the help of
made towards the shore ; were being
to land ; wherein were laid these two

ren fast asleep, and betwixt them a table written in le
f gold, which contained these words :

Left to queen Chance, two babes of knightly birth
Are to the rage of wind and seas expos'd ;
that they gain a habitable earth,
By this their parents dear may be disclos'd :
sious' children, whom Death prisoner keeps,
mother in th' enchanted castle sleeps.

Their step-father, sir Vuylon, who did owe
A grudge unto them for their mother's sake,
and their lives his malice did bestow,
On whom the queen of Chance did pity take :
uring they shall by an English knight
red be unto their father's right.

Thus Fate decreed ; and those do strive in vain,
Whoe'er they be to alter Fate's decree :
unknown means our ends we oft attain,
And farthest ways to thought may nearest be,
then for to be just, without offence,
'ns punish evil, protect innocence.'

ow from what place these children came, I am as ig
t as they themselves, whose tender age was such a
them incapable of any knowledge, either of parent
untry : yet was I much revived by the writing, which
sed their restoration by an English knight, in which
oped my own was included ; wherefore ever since
carefully brought them up, and fostered them in the
nanner I could ; and now I hope is the time to com
, wherein what was promised by the queen of Chanc
e performed ; not doubting but that such magnanimou
tions as I see seated in your noble breast, joined with
cause, will make you courageous to perform the ad
re, and to free me from this tedious trouble and thral

David hearing the story with much admiration, re
ered how he and his brothers had freed their moth
he enchanted castle, as also of the knight, which
Vuylon had exposed these two children to the m
sea ; all which he related to the ancient gentl

and withal promised him his utmost endeavour for finishing the enchantment, and restoring him again to the island of Ancona.

And now was much mirth and joy on all sides: sir David was entertained in the hermit's cell, together with as many of the prime commanders as it would conveniently sustain the rest of the soldiers cut down boughs from trees, and therewith made them huts to shelter them from the heat of the sun, when his hot steeds from their nostrils vomit flame on the parched earth; sheep and goats they killed abundance, so that there was store of boiling, broiling, frying, roasting, stewing, and other ways of dressing dishes, to refresh their bodies, after their sore and bitter hunger sustained at sea. This continued for a week's space together but then sir David remembering his promise made to the aged hermit, he buckled on his armour, and putting himself into his ship-boat, rowed with two mariners, and guided by the old hermit, he undauntedly landed before the enchanted castle, and marched directly towards the gate thereof, whether no sooner he was come, but the dragon most fiercely issued out, when presently began betwixt them the most fierce encounter that ever was heard of: so that to describe it to the full I want the skill of Orpheus, that sweet Thracian singer, or the invention of Homer, in describing the battle of the Greeks and Trojans. The dragon most furiously assailed sir David, seeking to catch him in her paws, which he nimbly avoided, and lent the dragon many blows, when lifting up her head thought to throw the whole weight of her body upon sir David; which he perceiving, slipped aside, gave her a wound on the belly, wherein she was only penetrable, and made her give forth a hideous yell: which advantage sir David espying, he thrust his sword into her mouth, which she so strongly bit with her teeth, that had it not been made of the purest Lydian steel, it would have been in great danger of being bitten in two; so that sir David, to draw it out, was forced to use great strength but withal it so cut her tongue, that the poisonous blood came pouring forth of her mouth, which so enraged the dragon, that, turning her about, she gave him such a blow on her tail as made him to stagger, as if stunned: the dragon was ready to drop out of his hand; so that the hermit and the two mariners, who all this while sat by

to behold the combat, began to doubt of the success thereof. But sir David, recovering himself against she came to assault him again with her tail, taking his sword with both his hands, he struck such a stroke as cut off two yards in length of her tail. And now the dragon, being thus wounded, began to use her first play, and sought to seize upon sir David with her paws; but her strength was so enfeebled through the loss of so much blood, that her force availed her not. On the other side, sir David, gathering strength at the sight of her weakness, ran against her with all his might; and by main force tumbled her all along; and ere she could recover, thrust his sword into divers parts of her belly, which was as big as any tun, and in colour like to the burnished gold; whereout issued such abundance of poisoned filth, and withal stunk so abominably, as, not able to endure it, he retreated to the boat, who were ready to receive him; where they beheld how the ugly monster rolled about, and beat the earth with the remainder of her tail, until at last she died; when was heard a mighty clap of thunder, and immediately the castle vanished away.

No sooner had they beheld the castle vanished, but they put forth to land, where sir David on his knees gave thanks to the Immortal Powers for this victory; and then going up higher into the land, they came to a little village, the inhabitants whereof were greatly astonished, some of the younger sort thereof having never seen a man before in their lives, and those that were elder, in not many years before. By them they understood that the queen, wife to the aged hermit, was dead, and that her daughter, the beautiful Rosetta, did govern the island; whereupon they, determining to go to the young queen, sent the two mariners back for the chiefest of their company to go along with them. Now whilst they staid there, many of the country came to see them; some of the eldest of which, remembering their king, fell down at the aged hermit's feet, rejoicing to have seen that day they might behold again their sovereign. Then was great inquiry made for the rest of the men; some for their husbands, some for their brothers, and other relations: to whom the aged king Antenor, for such was his name, and by which title we shall now call him, could give no intelligence; for he could give no account of them at all. In mean time some of them had posted to the court, at

quainted the young queen where her father was ; who at first could not believe their reports, such an unlikelihood did the truth of the story carry with it ; but being confirmed by so many, at last she believed what she most desired to be true ; and taking with her some of the choicest of her maids, she hasted to him with all the speed she could. But it was a most rare sight to behold into what wonder and admiration they were both stricken at the first sight of each other ; for she having never seen a man before that she could remember, thought his long beard and other attire most strange to behold ; and he on the other side having not seen her in so many years, the remembrance of her was quite out of his memory. However, she having been instructed in the honour that children should do to their parents, humbled herself to him on her knees, whom he most lovingly embraced.

Much talk had they concerning the death of the queen, and what occurrences had passed in the mean space ; all which time sir David beheld the princess Rosetta with admiration ; so that love through his eyes stole into his heart, and there took a full possession : but having not an opportunity now to disclose it, and the queen inviting them to her palace, whilst they were preparing to set forwards, the rest of the ship's company came up to them, together with the two Thracian children, destined to destruction by sir Vuy-lon, and who were preserved by Antenor, as you heard before.

All the way as they went to the palace, they were entertained with great joy ; a troop of maidens, clothed all in white, going before them with timbrels in their hands, with which they played very melodiously, singing of songs, and answering one another in pleasant roundelays. The people, all the way as they passed, came flocking about them, the younger sort wondering at the men, as if they were monsters ; and the men wondering as much to behold in every place nothing but women. The queen Rosetta entertained sir David with very high respects, who returned her kindness with obliging civility. The chiefest commanders were accommodated with tents peculiar to themselves, and stored with delicious viands and wines. Nay, the very meanest soldiers were so well gratified and entertained, that they thought themselves very much obliged both to the queen and the rest of her subjects. In this condition we will

them for a while, to tell you what happened soon after in the island.

CHAP. XV.

CONQUERING love had so possessed the heart of sir David, that all sports and pastimes seemed tedious to him, and he gave himself over to melancholy, till such time as finding a fit opportunity, when Rosetta was alone, he brake his mind to her in this manner :

" Madam, I see so many perfections residing in you, that not to love you would argue a stupidity of knowledge, and obliges me to honour your excellent endowments to the utmost of my power ; for, believe me, madam, my desires flow from a sincere affection towards you ; that if you please to yield me your love, you shall find me both constant in affection towards you, and loyal, not to do any thing disagreeable to your will."

" Most courteous knight," replied the queen, " to whose valour we are so much indebted, for your suit in love I cannot promise you any thing in it, as not being at my own disposal, my father and country claiming a knowledge thereof before I give consent to a thing of such consequence ; yet as I would not have you hope too much, so I would not have you despair, since you shall not find me, who am most concerned in it, displeased at your suit. Account me not, dear sir, over fond in my expressions, since such high deservings cannot but attract a willing acceptance of that which is so virtuously offered."

Whilst they were thus discoursing, there came towards them a woman on horseback, who, by the haste she made, proclaimed that her errand was of great importance ; and so it proved ; for coming near to them, she cried out, " Arm, arm, with all the speed you can ; for enemies are upon our coast, who have already done much mischief, and if not prevented, are like to do much more." These enemies which thus molested this island, were the residue of the Pagan army, which had escaped from the battle fought again *them* by the Christians, and were conducted by the heroic Tartar, who had escaped from the sword of sir

as we told you before in the Seventh Chapter. These vagabond fugitives, being headed by this monster, as also by a sagittary, who came with the prince of Tripoly, having gotten some ships, intended to escape to Persia, but by a storm at sea were driven they knew not whither, amongst several islands, where they maintained themselves by robbing, killing, and other inhuman ways towards the inhabitants; who, joining together, set upon them, and by the slaughter of some of them forced the rest to put forth to sea again. After several turmoilings, they chanced to land on this island: upon which they no sooner had set foot, but they fell to their old trade of robbing and killing; so that the affrighted inhabitants ran from their presence, as the fearful sheep from before the devouring wolves.

Sir David, understanding of what had passed, commanded his men presently to arm; and taking a gentle farewell of Roseita and Antenor, he marched directly against the Pagans, being guided by the woman who brought the news. As he marched along, he was met by divers women, who all fled from the merciless hands of their enemies, praying for the good success of the English, on whose victorious arms depended all the hopes of their safety.

The Pagans, seeing none but women to oppose them, thought themselves secure, and therefore never minded their arms, but fell to eating, drinking, ravishing of women, and all manner of outrages that a barbarous nation could act; when sir David with his men set upon them, killing and destroying them at their pleasures. The horse-faced Tartar and the sagittary seeing this, betook them to their swift-paced heels, thinking to get away in their ship; but there was none to help them put forth to sea; so that, being pursued by a party of soldiers, they were both taken prisoners, and carried in triumph back to sir David, who, with the rest of the soldiers, had by that time wearied their arms and blunted their swords with the slaughter of those infidels, so that few or none of them were left remaining.

But now, all the amazement of each person was to behold the strange shapes of these monsters, resembling as much beasts as men: and therefore, the better to secure them, and that they might freely be beheld of the people, the soldiers made them a great wooden cage, which, running on wheels they drew about with them whithersoever they went.

In this manner they led them along until they came to the queen's court, where sir David and his men were entertained with unspeakable joy. And now did the queen Rosetta manifest her love by the kind reception she made sir David, which she expressed so openly, that not only her father, but many of the ladies that attended on her, took notice of it; love being of the nature of fire, which cannot be hid, unless it be deeply covered over with ashes of dissimulation. Yet this was the comfort of it, there was not any that thought but wished it so, which they outwardly declared by the great content they received at the mere report thereof: but when it was made known to king Antenor, he was overjoyed at the news, desiring it might be consummated as soon as possible.

And now all hands were preparing to do something worthy such a solemnity; some in making tents to feast in, some preparing choice viands to feast withal, others tuning their instruments against the day came: and because there were no men for the exercise of arms, either for justs or tournaments, as upon such occasions commonly used to be, it was concluded, for the divertisement of the spectators, that there should be a battle fought between the horse-faced Tartar and the sagittary; in order to which, a square place was railed in with ropes, with seats of curious workmanship for the gentlemen and ladies to sit and behold it.

All things being thus prepared, upon the prefixed day the bridegroom and bride were led in great state unto the temple, he attended with a choice band of English soldiers, and she waited on by a troop of beautiful ladies. After the priest had joined their hands in holy wedlock, they were conducted back in the same state as they went, all the people sending forth loud acclamations of joy. At their return to the palace, they feasted in most sumptuous manner, all the afternoon being spent in dancing, masking, and such-like revellings.

Next morning was designed for the combat betwixt the Tartar and sagittary; to behold which, Antenor, Rosetta, sir David, and all the chief of the English commanders, and the Ancona ladies, took their places on the stages provided for them. About nine o'clock the two combatants were brought forth; the Tartar had on a quilted jacker wrought full of eyelet holes, at each of which hung a need

fastened by thread; on his head, a cap made of tortoise-shells, and so interwoven with wire, that it was not penetrable; he was armed with an ebon javelin, headed with steel, yet something blunted, designed more for sport than hurt. The sagittary was a garment made of a panther's skin, so hard and tough that no sword could pierce it: his javelin was of Laconian steel, studded with ivory, with a head of burnished silver. He was the expectation of the spectators concerning the result of the combat; but they, knowing that their own ruin was intended for the mirth of others, resolved rather to give him a taste of the destruction of their enemies; and the sagittary, belying his name, leaped over the rails, in despite of all opposition, and ran with quicksilver, turning about as doth a wheel here and there, and here and yonder, and at last he was met by Sir David and the other men of war, who were of the monsters, thought it high time to beget out of the mirth, and thereupon, getting on horseback, made a dash at the sagittary; but their flight was so quick, that they could not be followed by the sagittary, who had been freed from the dregs of the sea, and was as nimble as fairy elves, so that in an instant they made each place they came at, and so that they might be followed by the sagittary, which every pursuers were of the sagittary, and could they not fasten on them. It happened at that very sea, that the sagittary, with his warlike Danes, had been plotting about on the sea, and relieving those Pagans had been plotting of such courtesies, promising to revenge the outrages which they made towards the coast. Great was the joy of the Danes to see one so valiant, and so informing the Danes, they resolved to have him at that time

English mastiff, and far swifter than an

This dog being fetched from the ship, and being fetched from the ship, until they came within view of the ship, still practising their old trade of missing let loose, ran with as nimble speed as a Parthian bow, or as if his flight were

And now the monsters were to seek in the dog, soon overtaking them, seized on the dog, soon overtaking them, seized on the dog, roared like a bull, striving (but in vain) to get himself of the dog.

When the horse-faced Tartar scudded away with his ill-driven javelin flies, or as a hawk pursue. Sir David, with some others, seizing on the dog, commanded him to be hanged upon the gallows, with sir Pandrasus, and those others who were mounted, they pursued after the Tartar; but by his fellow's harms, staid not in any place should not suddenly overtake him, never came to a rock near to the sea-side, in which

vault or cave, he crope therein, and so for a time.

After their hands, after much search made in the hands, David taking order for a watch to be laid on, that he might do no farther mischief, he came to the court, who went along with him, with several Danes of great rank and quality, most courteously received by queen Rosetta, herself the happiest woman, and most favoured who had sent her such a noble hero to her aid, doubly rescued her country from destruction.

Three days spent in feasting, and no news of the Tartar, it was judged by all that he had fled into the sea, and therefore they began to search for him. And as sir Pandrasus, with several Danish commanders, were there, it was known that sir David king of Ancona, and all those who were longed to it; which Antenor was the most famous seeing in sir David such excellent account.

For the solemnity being come, before the great show was presented, performed

three English knights, three Danish, and six Ancona la who in a kind of warlike dance seemed to contend knights amongst themselves, which of their ladies was beautiful ; and the ladies, which of their knights was valorous. This was done in a kind of a double mat dance, for every single one had two enemies. At last issued to them a shepherd and a nymph, who were to d all the controversy ; which they did in a dialogue s which this was the conclusion of every verse :

" Valour doth beauty honour and regard,
And beauty is to valour a reward."

Many other devices they had, with other stately pag and shows, as they went to be crowned, where, ascend scaffold prepared for that purpose, and sir David and Ro placed on two rich thrones, after some set speeches an remonies used, two boys in the shape of angels desce from the battlement, with each a crown in his hand, w they placed on the heads of sir David and Rosetta ; w was no sooner done, but the people gave a shout, cr " Long live David and Rosetta, king and queen of An with all the islands belonging thereto." Then did the t pets sound, and several sorts of instruments play ; w being finished they marched back again in great state the palace, where was provided a most sumptuous ban in which neither art nor cost was wanting to please the petite of each several guest. In the afternoon was a held betwixt an English knight and a Dane, which was formed with such valour and resolution, as gave grea tisfaction to the beholders, and gained great honou themselves.

And thus, sir David being crowned king, was fulfill third prophecy, which the fairy queen had predicted on being this which follows :

"The Muses' darling for true sapience,
In princes' courts this babe shall spend his days
King shall admire his learned eloquence,
And write in brazen books his endless praise
By Pallas' gift he shall achieve a crown,
Advance his fame, and lift him to renown."

of war. Here were we courteously entertained. The next day was held a solemn just, wherein the king and twelve others were challengers, against a prince of a bordering island and twelve of his partners. In these conflicts were broken betwixt the parties five hundred and eight spears. On the next day was kept a tournament for all persons to try their valour, which was done with great courage and magnanimity on both sides. This being done, they fought with much eagerness and courage at the barriers. And in these exercises they did commonly spend their time.

"After some communication had with the king, of our travels and adventures, he, knowing us to be soldiers, and that I was commander in chief, challenged me to just with him, and to that purpose furnished me with horse and arms. At these justs it chanced, by shivering of a spear, that one of the splinters entering the king's helmet, pierced his brain, so that he fell down presently dead. The nobles, seeing their king thus killed, were in a marvellous rage, and, vowing revenge, sought to lay hands upon me ; but I, perceiving their intentions, defended myself as well as I could : so that some blows began to be dealt amongst us ; when my men, seeing what danger I was in, armed themselves, and stoutly stood in my defence. And now much mischief might have ensued, had not one of the ancient noblemen stept in betwixt them and us, and desiring us to forbear until such time as he had spoken a few words, he then delivered himself in this manner :

"Let not, dear friends, sudden passion prevail over reason, as without causes thoroughly weighed, and mature deliberation taken, to engage in such a quarrel wherein the victor must needs suffer. Here is nothing of premeditated malice ; and shall we go about to murder those for doing that which they themselves wish had never been done ? Therefore, in seeking to do justice to the dead, let us not go about to do injury to the living ; but that, without any more mischief, we may argue the case by argument, rather than arms, since it is a well-known, approved maxim, "That where the sword bears sway, justice for that time hath no place."

"This proposition was well received on both parts, and the next day was the time appointed wherein all controversy should be decided ; which being come, and the matter at

gued, I was acquitted by most of those who were then present, as a thing only accidental to the exercise of arms. But whilst these things were arguing, in a large plain before the king's palace gate, which was the place where the accustomed jousts used to be held, there came a trumpeter, attended with two other persons clad in armour, one of them being of a gigantic stature, who declared that, hearing of the martial prowess of this king Belphegor (for so was he named), they came on purpose to try their manhood with him. The nobles with a sad countenance declared unto them the mischance which had befallen their king; however, they told them their challenge should be answered; and I requested I might have the honour to joust with him in the biggest armour; and one of the nobles, who was most eager in prosecuting me, undertook the other; and so we prepared for the encounter.

"I was mounted on the same horse, and in the same armour, wherewith I had jousted against the king; with which I entered the lists; wherein I had not been long, but my antagonist came, riding on an iron grey horse, of a marvellous great strength and bigness. His furniture was made into the fashions of the branches of a tree from which the leaves were falling, and so artificially were the leaves made, that, as the horse moved, it seemed indeed that the leaves wagged, as you may behold, when Zephyrus with a gentle breath plays with them. His armour was black, and in his shield he had for his device a phoenix rising out of her spicy nest, with these words; 'Virtue ever lives.'

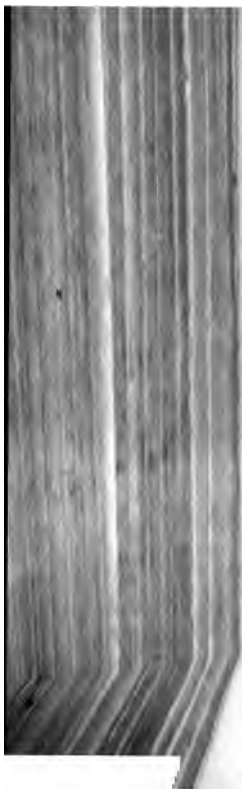
"At some distance from us did the nobleman and other champion also enter the list, well prepared to encounter each other. At the trumpet's sounding we set spurs to our horses, and with eager fury each one assailed his adversary. And here I must confess did I use my best endeavour for obtaining the victory, not only out of desire of glory to encounter with so potent an adversary, as also to regain the good opinion of the natives, which now I seemed to have lost. Whilst each of us strived for the palm of victory, and to purchase fame by our well-deservings, we more wearied ourselves than got any advantage of each other: and in this equal fight did we continue, until such time the parted day held an equal balance betwixt the forego and ensuing light, and that bright Phoebus had half

mounted to the highest story of his Olympic palace. And in this equal condition of fight we both parted; when I, greatly desiring to know who it was that had so valiantly encountered with me, he pulling off his helmet, to my great wonder I found him to be the giant Wonder, who came with us out of the land of Denmark; and his second a captain who came likewise along with us. Hereupon we most lovingly embraced each other.

“Now you must understand, that when we parted from the Seven Champions, as I told you before, we embarked in two ships; but it chanced that that ship wherein he was, in the night time running upon a rock, was split in pieces, most of them perishing in the sea; only he, with some few others, getting astride upon the mainmast, by the favourable working of the sea, were driven on shore in a small island near adjoining. The inhabitants thereof received them kindly, and furnished them with such necessaries as they wanted. Long had he not been there, but, hearing of the renown of king Belphegor aforesaid, he sold some jewels which he had reserved from the wreck of the sea, and with his companion putting themselves into armour, came to try their fortunes at the island of Barcona, and where it was my chance to encounter with him, as I have declared unto you.

“Here did we stay until the obsequies of the king were over, whose funeral was solemnized with all the rites that belong to martial discipline. Afterward we were feasted by several of the nobles. At one of which feasts a gentleman, there present, was declaring that in an island not far off was a fountain of pure wine, both delicious to the taste and extraordinarily wholesome to the body; about whose banks grew trees that bore fruit which healed all manner of sores and diseases whatsoever. This fountain was guarded by a giant, and a lion of a monstrous proportion; and for the more defence thereof, surrounded with a wall of such stupendous height, that it was impossible to climb over it: having no entrance but only a narrow wicket, which was so ordered by necromancy, that only two at a time should enter therein: for so it was declared by a tablet, which hung over the wicket, to this effect:

‘Two for to try their valour here may venture,
But a third person is forbid to enter.’



"Sir Wonder and I, having to undertake this enterprise ; and the company, they applauded tious. So the next day, being cording to what we desired, gu had given us the relation, we fountain ; and having read the side of the wicket a silver hose would have entrance ; which mouth, it gave forth a sound a gorge their fiery vomits, or that the water falls from the precipitately the wicket opened as we entered, but it shut again as entered, we heard the lion seem as for the noise thereof it might. Whereupon we prepared ourselves high time it was, for immediately the giant and lion came marching on a coat of mail of wonderful an oak-tree in his hand for a collar of brass, wherein the these lines :

' Who me doth overcome,
The conquest of the foun

" The lion came directly marched against sir Wonder ; a ble conflict on both sides ; for on the success we obtained, th on our courage. The lion, being to me, thinking with his paws but I nimbly avoiding his grasp blow against his ribs, which being no effect upon him, only made the giant, on the other side, came against sir Wonder, intending a separation betwixt his soul strike, sir Wonder gave him he had well near dropped the lion having missed his aim :

vered into a thousand splinters : whereupon sword, and the lion coming fiercely at me, I gave a blow on the fore-leg, as cut it well near half in the mean time the giant had so wounded sir he began to faint ; which I perceiving, thought to use my utmost endeavour ; and striking at all my might, it was my chance to cut him at the eye : whereupon he roared most horribly ing back, gave me opportunity to succour sir now was upon the point of falling, being dead, and having lost abundance of blood. Then the lion retreating towards the fountain, desired but I would hear no conditions, but only an absolution of himself to my mercy ; which at first I did ; whereupon he entered into a fresh combat receiving many blows on each side ; so that wearied, I resolved to make quick dispatch within compass of his club, closing with him, and hied down together, I falling uppermost, for as he tumbled down upon me, he would have well made me to pieces.

“ The great weight of the giant bruised him so that he was scarce able to rise, when I on my feet, presented my sword unto his throat :

banks thereof; which he had no sooner ~~reached~~ ^{seen} the giant Wonder's throat, but he presently ~~was~~ ^{perceived} the sovereign virtue thereof; and in a little space gave his feet; and by the direction of the giant we went to the fountain, where by the way we met with the ~~king~~ ^{king} seeing the giant without harm in our company, he favoured upon us. Now, when we were come to the fountain, and had tasted of the fruit, it seemed unto us we were as whole and sound as ever we were before fight.

"All this while did the giant with great seeming patience wait upon us, shewing us all the varieties that be in the place; but under these ashes of dissimulation lay hid a cankered heart, which burned with the fire of revenge. It now began to be the ebb of day, whereupon resolved to repose that night; and were conducted by the giant to a spacious chamber, wherein stood a stately bed; but, dreading the giant's perfidiousness, we slept not together, but one always stood upon his guard; who no doubt prevented him from farther mischief at that time; and therefore, what he could not do one way, he sought to do another; and knowing of a poisonous fruit, which was within six miles of the fountain, the nature of which was to kill them into a sleep.

such deep furrows in his flesh, that the blood sluiced from him as from a crack in a straight pipe of lead.

"Whilst we were thus fighting, the lion with like fierceness assailed sir Wonder, who was newly awaked from his sleep, hearing the clattering which the giant and I made with fighting. But the giant did not long endure my blows, but made towards the fountain, to have tasted some of the fruit, the virtue whereof he knew to be such, that it would have cured him of all his wounds in an instant. But ere he had gotten half way thither, I run him in at the back with my sword; whereupon, turning him towards me, he gave me such a blow on my wrist, which so numbed my hand, as my sword was ready to drop out of it; but I having the use of one hand as well as the other, quickly recovering my sword, gave him such a deep gash on the ham, as he came tumbling down like to a great timber log, enough to shake the ground and make an earthquake; when running my sword into his bowels, I left him, as I thought, for dead, and returned to the succour of sir Wonder; who by this time had overcome the lion, and laid him for dead, and was coming towards me; at our meeting we kindly embraced each other, thanking the divine Powers for this so notable a victory.

"Returning back towards the giant, we found he was not quite dead, who, before his expiring, confessed unto us his treason, that if we had eaten of the poisonous fruit, as soon as we had fallen asleep, he would have digged a deep pit, and therein have buried us alive, so near we were to the jaws of destruction.

"By this time the gentleman that conducted us to the island, attended with some few resolute soldiers, came (but not without much doubting) to see what was become of us, intending with their best aid to help us to the obtaining of the victory; but finding the work done to their hands, they rejoiced exceedingly at our good fortune.

"And now being thus happily met together, we resolved to try an experiment of the poisonous fruit upon three dogs which our gentleman conductor had brought with him; and in order thereunto, we gave one dog two apples, to the second three apples, and to the third four; when in an instant they all presently fell asleep; but we resolving to find out the effects were answerable to what the giant had

us, stayed to see what would be the event. Now it so happened that the first dog, which had eaten two apples, in six hours' time awaked, and as if suddenly raised from a trance, like to one frantic, ran away from us, and we could never see him after. The second dog, having lain about the space of seven hours, giving great groans, began to stir and tumble about, but came not to himself till about an hour after, still continuing very sick ; but we giving him one of the precious apples, he presently revived and became well ; but the third dog, who had taken four apples, never came to himself again : by which we experimented the nature of that poisonous fruit, thanking the Immortal Powers for our escaping so imminent a danger.

" This being done, we went all of us to the fountain, where we caroused of the wine very freely ; and soon after came to us divers of the nobles and knights from Barcona ; who beholding the bodies of the giant and lion, highly applauded our courage in the attempt, and with a general consent proffered us the government of the fountain, with all the island thereunto ; which sir Wonder freely accepted of ; but I, being desirous to return home, as I had faithfully promised to those of my followers which remained, having furnished myself with what necessaries I wanted, took ship, and, after many difficulties, arrived in this island."

CHAP. XVII.

SIR Pandrasus having finished his story, they all very much marvelled at the virtues of that rare fountain, king David resolving after some time to go and see it, with a desire also to visit his old friend sir Wonder ; but sir Pandrasus being desirous to return home, furnished himself with all necessaries thereunto, which were freely given him by king David and his queen Rosetta ; and so taking his solemn leave of them both, he with the rest of the Danes, took ship, and with a prosperous gale cut the briny face of Neptune, and not meeting with any adventures remarkable, they came to an island called Micomicon, where they landed ; and leavt some of the company to guard the ship, sir Pandrasus the rest marched up into the country, and came to a hill, which was beautified with many stately trees

curled tops seemed to brave the skies; at the foot of this mountain lay the body of a giant newly killed, of a marvellous size, his eyes being as big as foot-balls, his mouth six feet wide, his skull so large, that, being emptied, it would hold five pecks of wheat, his shin-bones six feet in length, his whole body full eight-and-twenty feet long. They very much marvelled at the vast proportion of this giant, but much more at the matchless strength of him that killed him; and being desirous to be farther informed, they saw a plain beaten path leading up to the top of the hill, by which they ascended, and found on the top thereof a castle of a curious building, beautified with all the cost and cunning that the height of fancy could express; and upon the front whereof was a large table of brass, wherein these lines were written :

“ Within this castle lives the scourge of kings,
The giant Briomart, of wond’rous might ;
That to his pow’r he doth subdue all things,
Whoever dares encounter him in fight :

As hundreds by their deaths have plain made known,
Who by his martial might have been o’erthrown.
Let none then dare to enter in this gate,
Lest for his folly he repent too late.”

Pandrasus, having read the writing, notwithstanding he saw the giant slain, yet not knowing what danger might ensue, commanded all his company to arm themselves before they entered into the castle ; which being done, himself went foremost with his sword drawn, when from the battlements a knight called to him to know what he was, and for what business he came thither. To whom Pandrasus made this answer : That he was of the country of Denmark, and being necessitated for provisions at sea, was come thither for succour. “ And that shall you have freely,” said the knight, “ please you to stay whilst we come down to you ;” when presently they were met by several persons unarmed, who with a smiling countenance came unto them ; two of which company chanced to be sir Thelmin Ireland, son to St. Patrick, and the valiant Welsh knight sir Owen of the Mountains, son to St. David ; who

of France, and sir Pedro of Spain, chanced on this island : and coming to the castle, having returning aforesaid, they resolved to encounter the giant after a long and tedious fight, valiantly performed on both sides, he was at last overcome and slain by the

This giant was of nature as cruel as those tigers which were nourished in the Hyrcanian wood, to whose lair he had set a lock to shut out all pity, delighting to drink his paddle in the blood of men ; so that the dread of him filled all the country round about, for whomsoever he encountered, that death was to them the least punishment. He kept only one old woman for his domestic, who was as cruel as deformed : and so deformed, that I will not describe the same. This deformed woman, who was old enough to proclaim her a witch, all the time of the war betwixt the giant, sir Owen, and sir Phelim, was saying the Devil's Pater-Noster for the good success of the king, but when she saw that he was slain, she exclaimed to heaven, and cursed all the infernal powers, that the ground might open and swallow them up, although she and herself were enveloped in their destruction ; nay, her devotion was so much, that she would have cast herself through the walls, and given her soul a loathed sacrifice, had she not been prevented by sir Phelim ; who, when he saw the giant fall, ran in at the gates, for which they should have been shut against them ; and ascending the castle, found this old witch ready to have executed upon herself ; but he seizing upon her, found in her pocket a great bunch of keys. And now sir Owen, seeing the giant quite dead, was also come up to the castle, where, by threats, and partly by force, they compelled the giant to open them the several rooms, that they might release the prisoners therein ; but to see what variety of torments this tyrant inflicted on those poor creatures, it were as good as a man to bless himself to behold it. In the first room which he opened, there lay four knights bound neck and heels together ; these were four brothers, sons to a countess named Clemander, who coming to revenge the death of the giant, who had ravished their sister, were taken for prisoners : having unbound them, and told them that the giant was killed, they were transported with joy. In the next room they entered, the

man loaden with irons of so vast a weight that he was not able to stand upright, and seemed to be only a living corpse ; with much ado they knocked the irons off his legs, who, whilst they were doing it, oftentimes swooned away, but being revived by some cordial spirits of rare waters which they had brought with them, they at last brought him to himself ; and demanding what he was, and what misfortunes brought him thither, after two or three deep-fetched sighs, he thus said :

" I am," said he, " one born a native of this country, my father a count thereof ; who in a quarrel having killed a peer of the realm, sought to fly into another land, but in his passage thither was drowned at sea ; which my mother hearing of, fell distracted ; and, to add to our miseries, the king seized upon his whole estate. But this was not all : for, as if Fate were resolved to use her utmost spite against me, my only sister, who was then upon her marriage, being thereby disappointed of her portion, desperately stabbed herself ; so that now all the happiness which remained to me was a security that I was so miserable as Fortune could not make me worse.

" Yet the king, commiserating my condition, took me to be one of the gentlemen of his bed-chamber, and withal allowed me a competent estate for my maintenance, so that my sorrows seemed in some part to be mitigated ; but, as if my heart were nought but a stage for tragedies, this serene sky did not last long, for I attending the king a hunting, he was on a sudden surprised by this giant, none but I standing to him, although followed by a great company ; the ugliness of his proportion so affrighting them, that they recommended the protection of their lives to their feet. And now the king and I, thus left to his mercy, nothing would redeem our lives but the delivering up this castle to him, which then was the royal mansion of his majesty ; and though this was done according to his desire, yet this perfidious lump of flesh retained us both prisoners ; which how he used the king is to me unknown ; but for myself, my miseries under him were so great, that Death should have been very welcome to have arrested my body, and laid me in the cold prison of the grave."

This so sorrowful relation wrought great compassion the hearts of sir Owen and sir Phelim, who with w

countenances commanded the old hag to shew them presently where the king was ; but she denying there was any such one there, they threatened her with words, and that not prevailing, they cut off one of her fingers, telling her they would cut her in pieces joint by joint, if she did not perform it ; whereupon she promised them that she would ; and leading them up to the top of the castle, as if he had been imprisoned in one of the garrets, she cast herself from the top of the battlements to the ground, dashing her brains out against the pavement, and so made an end of her damnable life. Sir Phelim and sir Owen taking the keys from this wretched corpse, opened many doors, and in every room they went to behold sad spectacles of the giant's cruelty ; at last they came to the place where the king lay, whom they found making his moan in this manner :

" O ye Immortal Powers, what have I deserved to have this punishment inflicted on me ? How is it that Death seizes on those who would willingly live, and flies from him who would court his embraces ? O that Atropos would cut in twain the thread of life, to put a period to my miseries ! But they are as inexorable as this monster of mankind, whose adamant heart will not hearken to my request. Come, gentle Death ! O come, come, for it is thou alone who canst ease my misery."

When they opened the door, he, seeing the keys in sir Owen's hand, thinking they were come to torment him afresh, with a wrathful countenance thus spake unto them :

" Monsters of nature ! whose wanton cruelty knows no end, and who please yourselves in making others to feel the effects of your tyranny, now satiate yourselves in cruelty ; for you shall not be readier to inflict than I to suffer what the utmost of your malice can lay upon me."

Whilst thus he was proceeding in his exclamation, the young man who was taken prisoner with him came towards him as fast as his trembling legs would carry him, and, falling on his knees, he said ; " Most gracious sovereign, blame not these matchless heroes, whose invincible manhood hath gained our freedom, and whose peerless prowess hath overcome our insulting enemy."

The king, seeing young Clodius (for so was the gentleman named), was in a strange kind of amaze, not thinking any human power possibly able to overcome the giant ; but being

by them assured that he was slain, to confirm their words, they carried him to a window out of which he might behold his dead carcase: and at that time it was when sir Pandrasus came unto them. Great was the joy amongst these valiant knights for their so happily meeting together; but being informed by the king that there were many more prisoners behind, they resolved not to take any repast until they had set them all at liberty; and so entering into several rooms, and setting free divers prisoners, they came at last to a room, wherein was enclosed a beautiful virgin, whom grief had almost made distracted; who at their entrance into the room took no notice of them, but like to an entranced soul stood as one with ghosts affrighted:

"The miseries," said the king, "that this virgin hath endured, might move a heart of stone to pity, and cause the most obdurate soul to lament. She is the only daughter of a wealthy knight, endued as you see with Nature's chiefest ornaments; so that, before grief had made a transmigration of her, the queen of love might have served as a foil unto her. It was her chance, a fatal chance, to fall in love with a young gentleman that waited on her father, one answerable to her in all respects, had his estate been equal with his parts; and he answering her love with like reciprocal affection. But as it is incident to lovers to meet with crosses, so did these at the very beginning thereof; for her father coming to have knowledge of it, this young gentleman, whose name was Matheo, was soon turned away, and forbid ever after from coming near unto the house, and she confined to a chamber without any other liberty; but as love will creep where it cannot go, so did he find means to pursue his suits in love unto her, and as he thought in a safe way, and that in this manner:

"There was growing, just by the chamber window where she lay, a stately tree, upon which in the dead of the night he used to ascend, and there had parley with his love. This they continued for some time, to their great content and satisfaction; but it so chanced upon a night he was espied by one of the servants, who immediately informed his master thereof; which when he heard he was so transported with rage, that taking a cross-bow, and aided with a glimmering light by Madam Cynthia, the pale-faced lady of the night, he sent a bullet into his belly, which wrought such effect

that, tumbling from off the tree, he only said, ' My dearest, I die for love of thee ; ' and presently expired.

“ But when the lady saw what had happened, she fared like unto mad Orestes ; impatience lowering in her face : so that had she not been prevented by a maid that came into the chamber at that present, she had by a knife given herself a period to the race of her loathed life ; but being hindered of her design, she fell into a swoon, as if her soul had made a total separation from her body. Lying in this trance, the maid who came to her ran and cried out for more help, but notwithstanding all the means they could use, it was long before her sullen soul would re-enter her body, or that any hopes of life were perceived ; yet could not all this mitigate the rage of her incensed father, who commanded she should be confined still to her chamber, and not any one suffered to remain with her ; wherefore in the night she uncorded the bed, and tying the line to a pillar of the window, by the help thereof she slid down to the ground, and wandering, she cared not whither, so she were out of the reach of her father's cruelty, she chanced to come near this castle, whom the giant espying, caught her flying from his loathed sight, and brought her into the castle, where ever since she hath remained in the condition which you see.”

CHAP. XVIII.

THE king having ended his discourse, it wrought great compassion in all them that heard it, especially sir Pandrasus, who much pitied her sad condition ; and therefore, to comfort her, he having brought a bottle of the healing wine from that precious fountain whereof sir Wonder was now governor, he gave her some part thereof to drink ; which she no sooner had received, but her spirits revived, and her colour came to her as if fresh roses budded in her cheeks ; and then telling her that now all danger was past, that the giant was killed, and she at freedom, joy began by little and little to enter in at the crannies of her heart. And now all parties being surrounded with joy, messengers were sent to all parts of the kingdom, to declare to them the joyful news of their king's delivery, whereupon, soon after a wonderful number of lords, knights, and gentlemen, came to congr

late their prince's freedom, and to express their joy for the death of the giant, whose dead body they beheld with great wonder and admiration. But in a few days it began to stink so abominably, that they were forced to bury it.

But should I go about to express the great joy of the commons for this wonderful victory, had I as many tongues as Argus had eyes, yet were I not able to express the same: the heavens were struck with the sound of the trembling bells, Mirth digged her pits in every cheek, Grief and Sorrow were buried, Care was cashiered, and every soul was cheered with gladness.

Amongst other news that came to the castle, one was, that the knight, father to the distressed lady, was newly dead, whereby she became heiress to his whole estate; who, having notice thereof, notwithstanding his great unkindness to her, yet did she make great lamentation for him, shewing therein the right nature of a dutiful child. After some few days passed, through the earnest solicitations of the king, sir Phelim, sir Owen of the Mountains, and sir Pandrasus, she was persuaded to cast her affections upon the young count that was her fellow-prisoner; in consideration whereof the king restored him to all his father's estate, and made him an earl.

The marriage was solemnized with great splendour: when on a sudden was a great uproar, and cry of the people, who came running towards the castle, as swiftly whirling as the whisking wind: for this giant Briomart had a brother named Curlo, who lived in an island hard by, where he used as much cruelty as his brother did in this: he, hearing of the slaughter of his brother Briomart, raised what force he could, and landing in the island, killed all that he could catch, sparing neither men, women, nor children. This being made known to these valiant knights, they armed themselves with all the speed they might, mustered what forces they could raise at present, and being prepared, they stayed near unto the castle, expecting the coming of the enemy, who with great pride and confidence came marching toward the castle, the giant Curlo at the head of them.

Sir Phelim, seeing the giant marching in this manner, with a strong pole-axe came up to him; betwixt whom began a most fierce encounter. In the mean time the two armies joined together, with as much rage and fury as was possi

ble, each striving to exceed the other who should slip Death's jaws the soonest, so that the field was strewn with dead carcasses, and mounds of slain bodies surrounded with moats of blood : sir Owen and sir Pandarus making haste to pass wheresoever they went, as if they altogether intended mankind's destruction. None were taken to mercy, but every one sacrificed to the sword.

Whilst they were thus in the heat of the fight, the king, with the new bridegroom-earl, came, with those whose desire of liberty and allegiance to their sovereign had brought to take up arms with him, and giving a furious onset to the adverse party, they were forced a little to retire : but the giant Carlo had so far prevailed against sir Phelim, that he was forced to recoil ; whereupon our new earl, to add to his honour, entered in the combat with the giant ; but, alas ! his strength was not answerable to his heart, having been so much enfeebled by his long imprisonment : so that, notwithstanding sir Phelim did all he could in his reason, yet was he slain by him ; which sir Owen of the Mountains perceiving, with great rage, guided by courage, and governed by discretion joined with a manly resolution, opposed himself against the giant, and so lustily laid about him, that in the end he brought him down headlong ; who in his fall made such a horrid loud noise as wounded the air with terror, like the roar of a whole herd of lions, enough almost to make an earthquake. But sir Owen, knowing the success of the battle depended upon the giant's life, nimbly leaped on him, and with his keen falchion cut off his head ; which when the rest of his soldiers perceived, they thought to save themselves by flight : but these valiant knights were so exasperated by the death of this new earl, that banishing all pity from their breasts, like enraged lions they fell upon them, and without all remorse never ceased till they left not one of them alive.

And now having obtained such an absolute victory, they returned back again in triumph, carrying the dead body of the earl to his newly married lady and now disconsolate widow. When she beheld the corpse she was like to one quite strayed from reason's centre, as Athamas and Ino when the snakes crawled in their bosoms, or like to a bull stung with hornets, or as raging Dido when Æneas left her. " Ah ! I," said she, " capable of more sorrow ! Can all the

pass of the light shew a more unhappy creature than I! Did I no sooner receive a glimpse of comfort, but on a sudden to be thrown down again into a dungeon of misery? Ah, my dear lord, since I could not live with thee, I will not live without thee!" and with that she would have struck a knife to her heart, had she not been prevented by those that stood by her. "And will you also," said she, "become my enemies? What injury have I done you, that ye deprive me of the only benefit I desire to enjoy?" And now again she would have killed herself, but was the second time prevented. But the king, sir Phelim, sir Owen, and sir Pandrasus, with much entreaty so persuaded her, that she engaged to them not to lay violent hands upon herself; and the better to divert her from any such thoughts, and to cheer up her heart, overladen with grief, the king made a most sumptuous banquet, to which were invited all the lords, knights, and chief captains then present; against which time divers pastimes were devised, and costly shows performed, with most excellent music, rare dancing, and other delights, to provoke her to mirth; but all was as water spilt on the ground: it took no impression upon her soul; such indelible characters of sorrow had grief engraven on her heart.

And now these warlike knights, being minded to go into their own countries, took their solemn leave of the king, who rewarded them with many rich gifts and presents, giving them many thanks for their valours shewed in his defence: so taking ship, they launched from shore; when soon the sails grew big-bellied with the wanton wind, and the ship glided safely on Neptune's briny face, capering for joy upon the silver waves, until such time they each of them arrived in their own countries; where they were received with much joy, and where we will leave them for the present, to relate what befel to sir David in going to see sir Wonder at the Fountain of Health.

CHAP. XIX.

THE valorous and renowned champion sir David, being now well settled in his kingdom of Ancona, as you heard in the Fifteenth Chapter, was very desirous to see sir Wonder, and to experiment the effects of the precious fountain, as sir Pandrasus had declared unto him: wherefore, selecting

choice number of approved soldiers, he having a prosperous wind, he in a few days fertile island: but, contrary to his expectations being received with great friendship, no sooner but a number of armed soldiers came to him, bidding him either to depart the land, arms into their hands, or else to abide what they compel him to. For so it was, that soon after of sir Pandrasus, those of the Warlike Island the rare virtues of the fountain, and the fruit the banks of it, resolved to become masters that purpose in friendly manner visited sir David to applaud his happy fortune in being possessed of so precious a jewel as was that fountain; they insinuate into his favour, that he trusted his secrets, which they wrought unto his ruin they locked him into an inner room, and servants by a party which they secured in a prison to that time while sir David landed had his prisoners.

But now was the time of their deliverance for sir David, understanding there was no other but force, setting his men in order, gave them as put them to the rout, the greatest part of them in the chase. The residue of them that escaped the fountain, raised all their whole force; wounded themselves, speedily marched against sir David now began a most terrible fight betwixt the cruel slaughter of men; that the earth was covered with bodies. Sir David with his keen falchion through his enemies, until he came unto the whom he encountered hand to hand; and afterwards exchanged betwixt them, slew him outright; the residue sought to save themselves by flight eagerly pursued, that very few of them escaped three persons reserved alive. And then giving thanks to the Immortal Powers for this great victory, the next day to the fountain, and released sir Wonderr his men from their captivity.

Great was the joy at this their meeting notwithstanding his vast strength, yet was he not so easily overcome, that he despaired of ever regaining his liberty.

berty, which being so unexpected, made him the highlier to prize it. Then did sir David wiith his soldiers drink of the wine of the fountain; when presently they felt the powerful virtue thereof, being in an instant as fresh and lively as when they first began the fight. Afterward sir Wonder banqueted them with the fruits of the trees that grew upon the banks thereof, which were of such various tastes, and yet all of them so delicious, as gave great satisfaction to the most indulging palate. But they were not only delightful to the taste, and pleasant to the appetite, but also of that superexcellent virtue, that whosoever tasted of them was immediately cured of all the hurts and wounds he had about him, were they never so deep and deadly.

That night they slept soundly, and the next morning went forth to behold the rarities of the country. In every place they came they heard the birds, the air's winged choristers, warbling forth their ditties most harmoniously, as if with their chirping they sung carols to the rosy morn, and with their music courted the sullen wood, and invited mortals to walk abroad.

Besides the singing-birds named before, there was an infinite number of partridges, pheasants, quails, and phoenixes, which are not to be found in other countries, were here very plentiful; all which were so tame, that you might take them up in your hands, and being killed, and held up against the sun, would be instantly roasted, needing no basting but their own fat; but in the eating they were so delicious, that the choicest viands, which your curious cooks with much art prepare, came far short of their goodness.

Being thus extraordinarily well satisfied in beholding the curiosities of this incomparable island, they drew down to the sea-side, where they sat beholding how the ocean's fry were playing on the briny face of Neptune; and casting their eyes a little farther, they beheld a boat come rowing towards them, wherein sat an old man, whose hairs did wear the sober hue of gray, and whose wrinkled countenance did seem to cast the account of many cares. They came rowing directly towards them; and being landed, the old gentleman desired to speak with the chiefest of their company; and being brought unto sir David, he spake to him in this manner:

"Most worthy knight, whose valiant acts are memorized

all the world over; let melting pity creep into your heart to give some comfort to my calamity. Know then, most worthy chieftain, that in my native country, being an island hard by, there liveth a cruel tyrant, one whose will is his law, and who seldom sleeps soundly unless he hath blood for his bolster, thinking nothing unlawful that makes for his advantage; and to that intent keeping a constant kennel of blood-hounds to accuse whom he pleaseth, and who are so desperately wicked for his purpose, that they will depose whatsoever he would have them. By these men was I accused to have conspired against his life, and though there were neither plain evidence, nor any circumstance conducive thereunto, yet being judge in his own cause, I was condemned, and presently had my estate seized on; which indeed was the main cause of my accusation.

"I was then blest with a beautiful daughter, named Tremelia, for whom this tyrant burned in lust, who took her from me, pretending to keep her as a pledge of my fidelity; but having her in his keeping, sought to deflower her; but she resisting his unchaste desires, and having given him some opprobrious words, he in a great rage struck her to the heart with his dagger. I having notice of what was passed, thought it high time to provide for myself; and daring trust nobody, I lay hid for three days and nights amongst bushes, thorns, and brakes, when, disguising myself, I went to a village hard by, where I heard of your notable achievements in conquering this island; hoping, according to your former favours to others in distress, that you will afford me some succour in redressing my wrongs."

Sir David hearing this sad relation of the ancient gentleman, was moved with great pity towards him, so that he vowed by the honour of knighthood, either to revenge him of the tyrant, or to lose his life in the attempt: and so giving the ancient gentleman some of the water of the fountain to drink, and some of the apples to eat, he was so refreshed, that he seemed to forget his former sorrows, and to have new life and vigour inspired into him. They therefore agreed to send for more succour to sir David's country, intending to stay there until their return; but in the meantime this ambitious tyrant, whose name was Almanzor, having heard how this island was conquered by a few persons, and of the rare qualities belonging thereunto, he thought in an



stant to surprise it; and to that purpose manned out what force he could make, and with great bravery sailed towards this fruitful island, having conquered it in conceit before he came thither. Sir David, seeing this fleet of ships, laid an ambush to surprise them, and upon their first landing seemed to fly, until he had brought them into the net prepared for them, when, turning head, he gave them such a brisk charge, as gave them a fatal rout. Almantor himself fought most valiantly, doing what in him lay to have obtained the victory; and as if he had a spirit that durst war against the Fates, seemed to dread no danger; but all his valour would not bear him out against sir David, who coming up to him with hardy blows, after a smart fight, took him prisoner. Few were saved alive besides; for the soldiers were so enraged against them, that all compassion was for the present wished their breasts.

The victory being thus obtained, they led Almantor towards the fountain, where first they refreshed themselves with some of those healing fruits, and afterward sat in judgment upon him; where was laid to his charge all the tyrannies, murders, and rapines, which he had committed; all which he could not excuse, nor very well deny, and therefore he was adjudged for his crimes to be put to death. His crimes were of too sanguine a dye to be forgiven, and all his sorrow only feigned: they therefore concluded he should be put to death, and gave him choice of eight sorts of ways whereby to die: viz. 1. to be hanged on a gibbet; 2. to be put into a sack, and thrown into the sea; 3. to have his head smitten off; 4. to be poisoned; 5. to be burned to death; 6. to be stung to death with snakes; 7. to be cast down headlong from a high tower; or, 8. to be shot to death with arrows.

"Sad is the choice," said the wretched Almantor, "choose which I will: for, 1. to be hanged on a gibbet, is to die the death of a dog; 2. to be put into a sack and drowned, is to be devoured by fishes, and want decent burial; 3. to have my head smitten off, is indeed the death of a nobleman, but which no nobleman would willingly have; 4. to be poisoned, is to be a stinking carcase before I am cold in my grave; 5. to be burned, is of all deaths the most cruel; 6. to be stung to death of snakes, is a painful lingering death; 7. to be cast from a high tower, uncertain death. W"

into his breast, so that in

Whilst this was doing,
sent for arrived in the isle
some few for the guardin
of the giant Wonder, he v
island where Almantor li
cient gentleman for his gu
ships wherein Almantor
espying, seeing their own
but when they perceived
arm themselves with all th
selves in a posture to resi
nothing daunted at their s
the resistance they could
made way for his soldiers
by his example, as soon r
mies. But now the fury
scorning to insult over a
to be sounded, and sent me
parley with them ; to wh
and to that purpose sent



OF CHRISTENDOM.

voice cried out, "Long live our lord Pandion" (for the ancient gentleman called); and thereupon they leave to acquaint the rest with their determination when they had done, there was a general acclamation shout of the people. And thereupon coming all to sir they submitted themselves, promising faithful obedience to the aged Pandion. And having settled him in the Almantor's place, he returned to the island of the fountain; where leaving a sufficient guard with sir he returned back to his own country, where he was welcome to queen Rosetta, and joyfully entertained the rest of his subjects.

CHAP. XX.

LONG had not sir David been in his kingdom of but there arrived a herald, who proclaimed solemnly to be held by the emperor of Constantinople in honour of his son's nuptials, who was contracted to the Trebizond's daughter, the beautiful Lucinda. They were proclaimed in all the kingdoms of the earth at the time appointed there arrived at his court approved knights that were then living: amongst them were St. George's three renowned sons, sir Guy, sir Richard, and sir David; the valiant sir Turpin from France, sir Pedro from Spain, sir Orlando from Italy, sir James from Scotland, sir Phelim from Ireland, and sir Owen from Wales. Being come to the emperor's palace, they were most kindly entertained; and because the justs lasted only nine days, he appointed each of them to be champion on his particular day.

But before the justs began, the prince Rosinda, son of the emperor, was with great magnificence married to the beautiful Lucinda. Great were the triumphs performed by pageants, fire-works, and other costly devices; and we shall pass over, and speak of the warlike acts performed by our nine renowned heroes.

On the first day of the justs entered sir Guy, of Sicily, mounted on a Barbary steed. His armour of colour of his horse, was a dark brown; and for on his shield was an anchor, with these words

spe. . . .
rosus, upon
nostrils. His armour
shield of laurel tree, with the
At the trumpet's sound they encountered
great skill and violence, that, breaking their
ters flew into the air. But at the third course and man
against him with such might, that both horse and man
to the ground. With like valour did he overcome two
five knights, and was with great triumph conducted
unto his lodging.

The next day sir Alexander entered the lists, as
challenger against all comers. His armour was red
for his device in his shield was an ox bleeding, with
words, "Such to opposers." The first that ran agai
was a Macedonian lord, named Lentulus, of giga
ture, and approved manhood; but by the val
Alexander he was overthrown, as also nineteen of
of prowess and fortitude.

The third day sir David appeared in the lists ch
against all opposers. His horse was of a ch
his armour azure; and on his shield was pr
sky, with these words, "Without clouds."
knight behaved himself so well that day,
to the ground thirty-four knights, to his gre
-d honour.

fourth day appeared for chie
famous sir Turpin of
his armour was
an ox

pon the sixth day, as sir Orlando of Italy entered the lists, there met him a squire, who spake to him in these words; "Sir knight, my master by me advises you to make the best defence you can, that by your stout resistance he may obtain the greater honour in your overthrow." To whom sir Orlando replied; "Go tell thy master I am prepared for him; and that it is not good to sell the lion's skin until he be dead." Accordingly hereunto encountering each other, they fought with so much skill and valour, that Mars might have been a spectator of their worthy achievements, being men of such prowess as not to know fear themselves, and yet to teach it to others that had to deal with them. Long time did Victory equally play upon their dancing banners; but at last Conquest displayed her silver wings on sir Orlando's head, and his antagonist's brags vanished in smoke, his body with his honour being laid in the dust. With the like success did he overcome eighteen knights that day, whereby he won the reputation of a most valiant knight.

On the seventh day the renowned king sir Ewin of Scotland was chief champion, who entered the lists with a Scottish galloway. His armour was black; as also his shield, with these letters in white, "Hoping for day." His success was such that he foiled no less than sixty knights, gaining to himself immortal fame by such their overthrow.

The eighth day was managed by sir Phelim of Ireland, as brave a knight as ever trod the field of Mars. He was mounted on an Irish hobby, decked with a plume of peacock's feathers: his armour so contrived, as if it had been made up of several pieces, yet all joined together in a loving confusedness. On his shield was pourtrayed a robin-red-breast, with these words, "Innocently harmless." He encountered that day with twenty-five knights, all whom he overcame.

On the ninth and last day there entered the lists that heroic undaunted knight sir Owen of the Mountains, mounted on a stately English palfrey. His armour was milk-white; his attiring else all cut in stars, which made the cloth of silver spangles each way seem to cast many aspects. In his shield was a sheep feeding in a pleasant field, with these words, "Without fear or envy." This valiant knight

their martial performances, gave un
and precious stones, each of them v
som, besides other rich presents fro
cess; and so taking their solemn lea
other high estates, with great honou
turned each to his own country.

THE END,

